

**ENGLISH**

**FOR FIRST-YEAR STUDENTS**

**BASIC COURSE**

**CHELYABINSK**

**2017**

УДК 42-8  
ББК 81.432 – 923  
Б 79

**Болина, М.В. АНГЛИЙСКИЙ ЯЗЫК. БАЗОВЫЙ КУРС [Текст]: учебное пособие /**  
М.В. Болина. – Челябинск: Изд-во Челяб. гос. пед. ун-та, 2017. – 268 с.

*ISBN 978-5-85716-914-8*

Данное учебное пособие предназначено для студентов-бакалавров I курса факультета иностранных языков, обучающихся по направлению «Педагогическое образование», профиль «Иностранный язык», и по направлению «Лингвистика», профиль «Перевод». Учебный материал I курса рассчитан на лиц, продолжающих изучать английский язык, однако предусматривает систематическое повторение основ грамматики и фонетики. В учебник включен материал второго семестра.

*ISBN 978-5-85716-914-8*

Рецензенты: Н.Е. Кунина, канд. филол. наук, доцент ЧГПУ  
К.Н. Волченкова, канд. пед. наук, доцент ЮУрГУ

© Болина М.В., 2016  
© Издательство Челябинского государственного педагогического университета, 2016

## Введение

Целью обучения английскому языку на первом курсе факультета иностранных языков является практическое овладение студентами основными видами речевой деятельности – аудированием, говорением, чтением и письмом в пределах грамматических и лексических тем, включенных в программу I курса. Требования к практическому владению студентами каждым видом речевой деятельности представлены в программе.

Учебное пособие «Английский язык. Базовый курс» является продолжением учебного пособия «Английский язык. Вводный курс». Практика устной речи охватывает 7 лексических тем: «Дом», «Еда», «Распорядок дня», «Учеба», «Покупки», «Город», «Погода». Каждая тема состоит из текста, тематического словаря и упражнений, позволяющих не только отрабатывать лексический материал, но также совершенствовать фонетические и грамматические навыки. Тексты учебника частично взяты из учебников, рекомендованных для вузов, частично являются адаптацией оригинальных источников.

Грамматические темы («Временные формы глагола в действительном и страдательном залоге», «Модальные глаголы», «Согласование времен», «Косвенная речь») выделены в отдельный раздел. Этот раздел включает не только грамматические правила и тренировочные упражнения, но и список неправильных глаголов, задания на коррекцию ошибок и лексико-грамматический материал для контрольного повторения.

В базовом курсе продолжается работа над произношением. Раздел «Фонетика» предлагает диалоги “Ship or Sheep” в качестве материала для корректировки и автоматизация произносительных навыков студентов.

Учебное пособие также содержит раздел самостоятельной работы, в который включены текстовые задания, задания по аудированию и видео, и приложения.

На каждый час аудиторного занятия приходится час самостоятельной работы студентов в лаборатории и дома.

## CONTENTS

### SPEECH PRACTICE

1. Home .....	5
2. Daily Programme .....	17
3. Meals .....	27
4. Study.....	39
5. Clothes & Shopping.....	50
6. Town .....	61
7. Weather .....	72

### GRAMMAR

1. Impersonal Sentences .....	83
2. Adjectives and Adverbs .....	88
3. The Past Simple Tense .....	95
4. The Present Perfect Tense .....	96
5. The Past the Future Perfect Tenses .....	101
6. The Past and the Future Continuous Tenses .....	104
7. The Perfect Continuous Tenses .....	109
8. Talking about Future .....	112
9. Modal Verbs .....	114
10. The Sequence of Tenses .....	120
11. Reported Speech .....	122
12. The Passive Voice .....	129
13. Irregular Verbs.....	133
14. Correction Work.....	142
15. Test Revision.....	148

### PHONETICS

1. English to Jazz.....	161
2. Ship or Sheep? .....	165

### INDEPENDENT WORK

1. Reading and Comprehension.....	174
2. Listening and Comprehension .....	187
3. Videotasks .....	217

### SUPPLEMENTS

1. Dictations .....	219
2. Songs .....	252

# SPEECH PRACTICE

## TOPIC 1. HOME

Read, translate and reproduce the text.

### Letter from Home

Mary dear,

It's less than a month that you're away from home but it seems ages. We miss you badly, so it's sweet of you to write often. We are all fairly well and pleased you are too, Dad and I are back to work after the holidays, Granny does most of the work about the house – just the usual run of things, as you can see. I can't say I see much of Lucy and Mike, but we speak much over the phone.

Their latest news and chief topic of conversation is their new flat, of course. They are moving somewhere around the end of the month. As you can imagine it's quite an event for them and they are, certainly, anxious. Their new apartment is in a block of flats, in a new district on the outskirts of the city. It's a pretty long way from the centre, but that doesn't matter much as there is an underground round the corner.

Lucy is a little upset that the flat is on the top floor of a twelve-storeyed house, but this can't be helped and, after all, there is a lift. As far as I know, it's a two-room flat with a bathroom, a lavatory, a spacious hall and a balcony. The kitchen is very comfortable, with an electric cooker and built-in furniture. There are also a few built-in wardrobes in the hall and the bedroom, which is very convenient, no doubt.

There are, certainly, all modern conveniences in the flat: electricity, central heating, hot and cold water supply. Hope to see it all for myself soon and write you more then. That's our news for the present. There is little else I can say, just that we are lucky with the weather. It's fairly warm and doesn't at all look like autumn. How are things with you? We all send you our love and kisses.

→Yours, Mum

### VOCABULARY

1. to have a brick / wooden house; country house; summer house; hotel; hostel; block; block of flats; high-rise building; to share a room / flat with; on the outskirts; in the suburbs.

house – частный дом; home – место, где кто-то живет;

cottage – небольшой, обычно двухэтажный, деревенский дом;

separate / adjoining rooms; living room; sitting room (BrE); lounge (BrE);

children's room; study; utility room;

ceiling; rubbish chute; stairs; staircase; ladder; landing; go upstairs / downstairs;

to be five minutes' walk from; to be a five-minute walk (ride, drive) from;

to have a southern / northern / eastern / western aspect; to overlook a street, yard etc;

ten-storey (= ten-storeyed) building; on the ground floor (BrE) / on the first floor (AmE);

British English	American English	Russian
Second floor = Third storey	Third floor = Third story	Третий этаж
First floor = Second storey	Second floor = Second story	Второй этаж
Ground floor First storey	First floor = First story	Первый этаж

**Note:**

1. Мы используем слово *storey*, а не *floor*, чтобы сказать, сколько этажей в здании.  
Мы чаще используем слово *floor*, чтобы сказать на каком этаже что-то расположено.  
*How many storeys does the block have? – It has 3 storeys.*  
*What floor is your flat on? – It's on the second floor.*

2. Мы обычно не говорим слово *house* в адресе.  
*What number do you live at? – I live at (number) 61 Oxford Street.*

2. to move house; to move in; to have (arrange) a housewarming;  
to have little (plenty of, a lot of) room; furniture; necessary things; to make housekeeping easy;

to be heated by a stove; to open (close) curtains; to raise (lower) blinds;  
to be covered with linoleum/ parquet/ laminate; to be whitewashed/ painted (blue)/ papered/ tiled

to help about the house; to find housework tiresome; to be (in) a mess; to be spick and span;  
to be in its place; to make the room cosy, comfortable, dark etc; to match; to go with;

comfortable – *комфортный*;  
convenient – *удобный для определенной цели*;  
nothing is more pleasant than to do smth.

3. suite of furniture; wall-unit with several sections; glass-fronted bookcase;  
chest; drawer; chest of drawers; cupboard – *шкаф*;  
sideboard – *длинный и низкий шкаф для посуды в столовой*;  
closet (AmE) – *встроенный шкаф, чулан, кладовка*;

single bed; double bed; twin beds; bunk beds; camp bed; bedspread; pillow; cushion;  
sofa – *диван*; sofa bed; settee – *диванчик*; couch – *кушетка*; divan – *тахта*;  
dining table; desk; bedside table; bedside cabinet; dressing table; mirror; vase;

armchair, stool; carpet; rug; plaid; door mat; bath mat;  
chandelier; wall lamp; standard lamp; desk lamp; candle; candlestick; fireplace; mantelpiece;

(desktop) computer; notebook / laptop; internet tablet; keyboard, touchpad, smartphone;  
headphones / earphones; loudspeakers / speakers; webcam; software, hardware;

sewing machine; food processor; dishwasher; oven; microwave (oven); refrigerator (=fridge);  
freezer; sink; wash basin; washing machine; bathroom accessories; towel; bath house.

**4. PREPOSITIONS**

1) Put the book **on** the table. The book is **on** the table. Take the book **off** / **from** the table.  
Put the book **into** (**in**) your bag. The book is **in** your bag. Take the book **out of** your bag.  
Give the book **to** him. (=Give him the book.) Give it **to** him. Take the book **from** him.

2) **Look at** the picture. Look **at** the blackboard. Look **at** me. Look (**at** yourself) **in** the mirror.  
I looked **into** the room. He looked **into** her eyes.  
**Open** your book **at** page 20. What is there **on** page 20?  
What is there **at the top** (**at the bottom**) **of** the page?

3) What can you see **in** the picture (photo)? – I can see a family.  
What is there **on** the picture (photo)? – It's my pen.

4) He lives **in** Oxford **Street**. His house is **at the beginning (at the end) of** the street.  
The school is **in** Lenin **Avenue**. The house is **in** Palace **Square**. It's **on** the Neva **Embankment**.

5) **On the right (on the left)** there's a bed.  
They drive **on the left (=on the left-hand side)**.

The bed is **to the right (to the left) of** the door.  
Turn **to the left (to the right)**.

The television is **in** the (right-hand) corner of the room.  
The public telephone is **at /on** the corner of the street.

6) There was a bench **between** these two pines. There was a house **among** the pines.  
We live **across** the street (**from you**). Our house is **opposite** yours.  
**Right opposite** the door is a large window.  
**In front of** the house there is a lawn. The garden is **behind** the house.

7) The photo is **above** (=над) the desk.  
The ball is **under** (=под) the desk. (обозначают вертикальное расположение)

The picture is **over** (=выше) the desk.  
The picture is **below** (=ниже) the lamp. (обозначают уровень)

8) He sat **at / near** the window. (около, недалеко)  
He sat **by / beside / next to** the window. (у, рядом с)  
He lives **far (away) from** London.

9) We had dinner **at** the cafe. He is **at** the cinema. They met **at** Judy's house. He is **at** university.  
(где вообще)  
It was very cosy **in** the cafe. There were a lot of people **in** the cinema.  
The rooms **in** Judy's house are small. Is he still **in** the university? (внутри помещения)

10) He **came to** the door. They stood **at the door**.  
They **knocked at /on** the door. There was a sign **on** the door.  
They came **into (in)** the room. They entered the room.  
They went **out of** the room. They left the room.

She went in. She is in.  
She went out. She is out.  
He went away. He is away. He is off.

### 5. Learn the proverbs and popular phrases. Use them in your conversation.

1. East or west, home is best.
2. Home, sweet home.
3. Home is where the heart is.
4. An Englishman's home is his castle.
5. A skeleton in the cupboard.
6. Better late than never.
7. Better safe than sorry.
8. The more you get, the more you want.
9. The best things in life are free.
10. The man travels the world in search of what he needs and returns home to find it.

## JAZZ CHANTS

### Learn the chants.

#### Warning

'Watch \out! (5)  
There's a `hole in the floor!  
'What?  
A \hole  
'Where?  
In the `floor  
A \hole in the floor?  
'Yes, a `hole in the floor  
A 'great 'big \hole in the floor  
'Well, 'I don't 'see any 'hole in the \floor  
'I, don't, see any \hole  
It's \there  
'Where?  
'Right `there  
'Right \here?  
'Yes, 'right \there  
'Are you \sure?  
\Sure, I am sure  
It's 'big as a \house  
\Big?  
It's \huge  
\Huge?  
It's \huge. A \huge hole. A \great .big .hole  
A 'great 'big \hole in the floor  
'I 'think you are \kidding, you are `teasing me  
'There's .no .hole in the ...

#### Late Again

'Are you \ready? 'Are you \ready?  
'Are you 'ready to \go?  
'Not \quite, 'not \quite  
'Just a \minute  
'Don't \rush me  
'Hurry \up, 'hurry \up, 'hurry \up, 'hurry \up!  
I'll be 'ready in a \minute  
in a \minute, in a \minute  
I 'can't 'find my \keys!  
I 'can't 'find my \keys!  
'Come -on, \.let's \.go!  
'Come -on, \.let's \.go!  
I 'can't 'find my \socks! I 'can't 'find my \socks!  
'Come \on, 'let's \go, 'let's \go, 'let's \go!  
I 'can't 'find my \shoes! I 'can't 'find my \shoes!  
'Come \on, 'let's \go, 'let's \go, 'let's \go!  
Your 'keys are in your \hand  
Your 'socks are in your \shoes  
Your 'shoes are on the \floor  
'Let's \go! 'Let's \go!

#### Easy Solutions

`Gee, I am \hungry  
'Have a `sandwich  
'Gee, I am \angry!  
'Calm \down  
'Gee, I am \sleepy  
'Take a `nap  
Gee, it's `chilly in \here  
'Put on a `sweater  
'Gee, it's `hot in \here  
'Open a \window  
I've 'got the `hiccups  
'Drink some `water  
My `nose itches  
'Scratch it  
My `feet hurt  
Sit \down for a while  
My `shoes are tight  
'Take them `off  
I have a \toothache  
'Go to the `dentist  
I have a `headache  
'Take some \aspirin  
I am \lonely  
'Call up a `friend  
I am `bored  
'Go to a `movie

### Read and translate the dialogue and learn it by heart.

#### Phoning a Flat-owner

**Rod:** He \llo. 'Is that 'Oxford 40414 ('four-o-'four-one- \four)?

**Mary:** 'Yes, it \is.

**Rod:** Erm ...I'm in'quiring about the \flat 'which was 'advertised in the 'local \paper.

**Mary:** 'Oh, \yes?

**Rod:** 'Wonder if you could \tell me, 'how 'much is the \rent a \month, please.

**Mary:** It's £ 112. (= a 'hundred and 'twelve \pounds)

**Rod:** 'I →see. 'Is it 'fairly `near the city \centre?

**Mary:** \Yes, it's 'only about a 'kilometre a \way.

**Rod:** I \see. 'Is it quite 'handy for the \shops?

**Mary:** \Yes, wi'thin a 'minute or 'two on \foot.

**Rod:** \Good. 'What about a \garden?

**Mary:** \Well, you 'have the 'use of the \garden.

**Rod:** I →see. And 'central' heating, \is there?

**Mary:** \Yes, \yes. 'Gas 'central \heating.

**Rod:** I \see. Erm... 'how 'many \rooms are .there, .please?



**Mary:** 'Well, there's 'one 'very 'large 'bed-`sitting , room, a 'kitchen and , bathroom and a 'small , hall.

**Rod:** I →see. →Erm... 'which , floor is it on?

**Mary:** On the , first floor.

**Rod:** Oh, , good. Erm... 'would it be , possible for me to , visit it tomorrow, 'say about 'five o' , clock?

**Mary:** , Yes, , certainly.

**Rod:** Oh , good. 'That's , fine. 'Could you just 'give me your , name, please?

**Mary:** , Yes. The →name is `Mary , Jones ( , Yes) and the ad`dress , is 'forty , one 'North Pa , rade.

**Rod:** 'Forty 'one 'North Pa→rade. , Fine. 'Thanks 'ever so , much. I'll 'see you to'morrow at 'five o' , clock then.

**Mary:** , Yes. (O , K?) , Good.

**Rod:** 'Bye- , bye.

**Mary:** , Bye.

## EXERCISES

**Ex. 1. Find English equivalents of the following words in the text "A Letter From Home".**

1. нам повезло с погодой; 2. они, конечно, волнуются; 3. всё как обычно; 4. двухкомнатная квартира; 5. кажется, прошла вечность; 6. мы много говорим по телефону; 7. на последнем этаже; 8. все современные удобства; 9. мы вернулись на работу после отпуска; 10. насколько я знаю; 11. надеюсь скоро увидеть всё сама; 12. это не имеет большого значения; 13. в новом районе; 14. центральное отопление; 15. мы очень по тебе скучаем; 16. совсем не похоже на осень; 17. Люси немного расстроена; 18. метро за углом; 19. прошло меньше месяца; 20. довольно далеко от центра; 21. просторная прихожая; 22. последние новости; 23. встроенная мебель; 24. ты вдали от дома; 25. большую часть работы по дому; 26. ничего нельзя сделать; 27. холодная и горячая вода; 28. двенадцатиэтажный дом; 29. вне сомнения; 30. на окраине города; 31. главная тема разговоров; 32. мало что могу ещё сказать; 33. где-то в конце месяца; 34. как ты можешь представить; 35. в конце концов, там есть лифт; 36. вот пока все наши новости; 37. для них это событие; 38. не могу сказать, что часто вижу Люси и Майка; 39. балкон.

**Ex. 2. Ask all kinds of questions about the text.**

**Ex. 3. Make up statements about the text and ask your seatmate to correct them if necessary.**

**Ex. 4. Complete the sentences in your own way.**

1. It's less than ... that ... 2. I miss ... badly. 3. ... doesn't at all look like ... 4. ... a pretty long way from ... 5. ... , no doubt. 6. ... back to ... after ... 7. ... a little upset that ... 8. ... somewhere around the end of the month. 9. ... which is very convenient. 10. ... but it doesn't matter much as ... 11. I hope to see ... for myself. 12. I can't say I see much of... 13. As far as I know ... 14. ... speak much over the phone. 15. ... but this can't be helped. 16. ... a ...-room flat with ... 17. The flat is on the ... of a ... 18. The latest news is ... 19. The kitchen is very comfortable with ... 20. ... but it seems ages. 21. The chief topic of ... conversation is ... 22. As you can imagine ... 23. ... round the corner.

**Ex. 5. Stress the words. Mind that in compound nouns the first element is stressed, while in compound adjectives and verbs both the elements are usually stressed. Read the words.**

Twelve-storeyed, reading room, built-in, groupmate, moved in, television set, armchair, two-room, housework, dining table, sewing machine, good-looking, right-hand, sofa bed, desk lamp, housekeeping, flowerbed, well-built, roommate; broad-shouldered, candlestick, utility room.

**Ex. 6. Read the words.**

**A.** ages, fairly, pleased, usual, imagine, pretty, spacious, comfortable, convenient, furniture, doubt, certainly, modern, supply, electricity, built-in, lavatory, cooker, underground, autumn.

**B.** cottage, separate, staircase, storey, southern, lounge, within, arrange, curtain, lower, house-keeping, parquet, housework, covered, tiresome, room, suite, suit, cupboard, cushion, glass-fronted, mirror, double, chandelier, sewing machine, accessories.

**Ex. 7. Answer the questions.**

**A.** 1. Do you live in a house or a flat? Are you living in a hostel now? 2. Do you have a country house? What is it like? Is it far from the town? 3. Have you ever lived in a hotel? 4. Is your flat big or small? 5. Does your flat have separate or adjoining rooms? 6. How many rooms are there in your flat? Do you have a utility room? 7. Do you have a room of your own or do you share a room with somebody? 8. Is the staircase clean in your block of flats? 9. Do you have a rubbish chute? 10. How many storeys are there in your block of flats? 11. How many flats are there on the landing? 12. What floor is your flat on? 13. Is there a lift? Do you use it? 14. What do you do if the lift is out of order? 15. What is there on the ground floor of your block of flats? 16. Do you live in the centre or on the outskirts of the town? 17. What street do you live in? 18. What number do you live at? 19. What aspect does your flat have? 20. What does it overlook? 21. How many windows does your flat have? 22. How far is the nearest bus, trolley-bus or tram stop? 23. Is there a yard at your block of flats? What is it like?

**B.** 1. Have you ever been to a housewarming? Who arranged it? 2. Is there a lot of room in your flat (in your country house)? 3. How much room is there in our classroom? 4. Do you like to have a lot of furniture in the flat? 5. Do you have any modern conveniences in your country house? Is it heated by a stove? 6. Do you like the way your flat or your house is planned? 7. Do you have a telephone in the flat? Where is it? 8. Do you have blinds or curtains in your flat? 9. What is the floor in your flat or house covered with? 10. Are the walls papered, painted or tiled? 11. What colour are the walls? 12. Is the ceiling whitewashed, painted or do you have a hung or casement ceiling in your flat? 13. What in your flat makes housekeeping easier? 14. Do you help your parents about the house? 15. Do you enjoy doing housework or do you find it tiresome? 16. Who does most of the housework in your family? 17. Do you mind the mess in the flat? 18. Is everything in its place in your flat? What is spick and span in it? 19. What makes your room cosy? 20. Do the curtains and carpets match the furniture? 21. Do you agree with the phrase: 'The house is made for the people, not the people for the house'. 22. Finish the sentence: Nothing is more pleasant for me than to ...

**C.** 1. Do you have suites of furniture in your flat or just separate pieces? 2. Do you have a wall unit? 3. Do you have books at home? Where do you keep them? 4. Where do you keep your clothes? 5. Do you have any built-in furniture? 6. Where do you do your homework? 7. Do your relatives have a chest or a chest of drawers? What do they keep there? 8. What do you sleep on? 9. Have you ever slept on a bunk bed or on a camp bed? 10. Do you prefer big or small pillows? 11. Do you have a sofa or a divan in the flat? 12. Are there any cushions in the flat? 13. Are there bedside tables or bedside cabinets? 14. Do you have a dressing table? 15. Do you have chairs or stools in the kitchen? 16. Are there any carpets or rugs in the flat? Where are they? 17. Do you have a door mat or a bath mat? 18. What kinds of lamps do you have in your flat? 19. Do you have candles and candlesticks at home? 20. Is there a fireplace in your house? Would you like to have it? 21. What usually stands on the mantelpiece? 22. Do you have flowers in vases or house-plants in your flat? 23. Do you have a desktop computer, a laptop or an internet tablet? 24. Do you prefer to watch films in the cinema, on TV, online or download them on your computer? 25. How can you decipher *sms* and *instant messaging*? 26. Do you have a sewing machine? 27. What useful devices do you have in your kitchen? 28. Where do you keep your bathroom accessories? 29. Do you have a hall in your flat? Is it spacious? 30. Do you go to a bathhouse? Why or why not? 31. Do you like your home? What would you like to change in it?

**Ex. 8. State the difference between the words. Translate the Russian words.**

Furniture / фурнитура; closet / клозет; chandelier / канделябр; stool / стул; player / плеер; standard lamp / стандартная лампа; cabinet / кабинет;

**Ex. 9. Fill in articles where necessary.**

1. We have ... three-room flat in ... centre of ... town. 2. There is ... electricity, ... gas, ... central heating, ... water supply and ... telephone in their country house. 3. ... flat is on ... fourth floor in ... nine-storey building in ... Market Street. 4. Does this building have ... lift? 5. ... sitting room is ... largest room in ... flat. 6. ... Mum does ... most of ... work about ... house. 7. There isn't much furniture here, only ... most necessary things. 8. ... garage is very spacious, there is ... lot of ... room in it. 9. ... flat is only ... three-minute walk from ... nearest bus stop and there is ... underground round ... corner. 10. There is ... hairdresser's on ... ground floor. 11. ... floor in ... lounge was covered with ... parquet. 12. All these kitchen appliances make ... housekeeping easier. 13. They have ... built-in furniture in ... flat. 14. Have you heard ... latest news? 15. Do you watch ... television ... lot? 16. We have ... big television of ... latest model. 17. ... Englishman's home is his castle. 18. ... more you get, ... more you want. 19. There are ... few colleges and ... university in ... this street. 20. He doesn't help about ... house, he finds ... housework very boring. 21. How much is ... rent ... month, please? 22. In ... middle of ... bedroom there was ... large double bed with ... beautiful bedspread on it. 23. It's ... pity you have no ... computer. 24. As ... matter of ... fact, ... house has all ... modern conveniences.

**Ex. 10. Fill in prepositions or adverbs if necessary.**

1. Let's take things .....the bags and boxes and put everything .....its place. 2. Who took my notebook ..... the desk? 3. Open your textbooks .....page 13 and look .....the picture. What can you see ..... the picture? 4. He lives .....no. 23. His house is .....the bottom of the street. 5. Take the cup ..... Mrs Briggs and pour some more tea .....it, please. 6. .... the middle ..... the room there is a dining table ..... four chairs ..... it. The television is .....the left-hand corner. .... the right ..... the television you can see a wall unit ..... three sections. There's also a sofa ..... the left. 7. He looked ..... her eyes and fell ..... love ..... her ..... first sight. 8. The flat is big enough ..... the three .....them. It's ..... the top floor .....a nine-storey building .....the outskirts .....the city. 9. The art gallery is ..... the Miass Embankment. 10. Whose glass is standing .....the picture? Take it .....! 11. The telephone box is ..... there ..... the corner ..... the street. But it's occupied, somebody is speaking .....the phone. 12. Who's standing ..... Ron and Mike? Is he a relative ..... yours? 13. Jane is somewhere ..... the guests. Walk ..... and you are sure to find her. 14. Do the Perrys live next door? – No, their house is right ..... ours, ..... the street .....us. 15. Whose portrait is there .....the wall..... your desk? 16.....both sides .....the coffee table are armchairs. 17. Wait .....me .....the corner .....this street. 18. The cottage isn't far away ..... London, it's ..... the suburbs, just .....half an hour's drive. 19. I'm looking ..... my pen. Haven't you seen it anywhere .....chance? – I found it .....the floor .....the desk and put it ..... the top drawer. 20. We were to meet .....Jim's place, but when I knocked ..... the door there was no answer. I stood .....the door ..... some time and then realized that I came an hour early. 21. I don't see much .....her, but we speak .....the phone .... time ...time. 22. Hello. Is Jane ...? – No, she's just gone .....23. We met .....the theatre. When we entered .....the building, we saw there were a lot .....people .....the theatre. Everybody was waiting .....the performance to begin.

**Ex. 11. Write British equivalents for these American words.**

Elevator, cozy, first story, center, floor lamp, favorite, gas stove, apartment, apartment house, fall, last name, lobby, mail box, rest room, sidewalk, subway, garbage can, antenna, duplex;

**Ex. 12. Choose the correct item.**

1. The soft armchairs, the cosy settee and the carpet on the floor make this room very (comfortable, convenient), but I'm afraid it's not very (comfortable, convenient) for studying. 2. Will it be (comfortable, convenient) to meet at five? 3. Is your timetable (comfortable, convenient)? 4. The lounge was richly furnished and very (comfortable, convenient). 5. An Englishman's (home, house) is his castle. 6. This (home, house) was built in the 19<sup>th</sup> century. 7. He has a flat in a new high-rise (house, home, building) not far from here. 8. The faculty (home, house, building) has thin walls that let the sound through. 9. What (house, home, -) number does he live at? 10. English people prefer (houses, homes, buildings, flats) to (houses, homes, buildings, flats). 11. They have a new (suit, suite) of furniture in the bedroom. 12. This tie doesn't go with your new (suit, suite) at all. 13. You should put on a formal (suit, suite) to be allowed to enter this restaurant. 14. I think their kitchen (suit, suite) is rather ugly. 15. How many (floors, storeys) are there in this block? 16. Why haven't you washed the (floor, storey) in the hall? 17. Tell the child some bedtime (story, storey), please. 18. It's a tall fourteen-(floor, storey) building in Lenin Avenue.

19. There are eight (desks, tables) in the classroom. 20. Sit down to (desk, table), please. The dinner is ready. 21. The round dining (desk, table) is in the middle of the room. 22. There was a big (desk, table) with many (draws, drawers) in the study. 23. Let's sit at the coffee (desk, table) in the corner. 24. Harry (draws, drawers) very well. 25. Mr Butler is not a bad (draw, drawer). 26. He lives in the university (hotel, hostel), doesn't he? 27. It was the famous '(Hotel, Hostel) California', the evergreen hit by *The Eagles*. 28. The rooms in the (Hotel, Hostel) Victoria are rather expensive. 29. She shares her room at the (hotel, hostel) with one of her groupmates. 30. A (certain, curtain) Doctor Redford wants to see you. 31. The (certain, curtain) on the window was white with pink flowers and green leaves. 32. There were a lot of (certain, curtain) calls after the performance. 33. I can't say for (certain, curtain) how much the redecoration will cost. 34. When the (certain, curtain) rose the actors were already on the stage. 35. Where is my favourite teddy (bare, bear, beer)? 36. His favourite (bare, bear, beer) is Guinness. 37. Is your granny a good (cook, cooker)? 38. We have installed a new electric (cook, cooker) in the kitchen. 39. Put the kettle on the (cook, cooker), please. 40. His wife (cooks, cookers) perfectly, doesn't she? 41. What a modern (cook, cooker)! Is it difficult to operate?

**Ex. 13. Fill in the gaps with prepositions.**

1) Put the book ... the table. The book is ... the table. Take the book ... / ... the table. Put the book ... your bag. The book is ... your bag. Take the book ... your bag. Give the book ... him. (=Give ... him the book.) Give it ... him. Take the book ... him.

2) **Look** ... the picture. Look ... the blackboard. Look ... me. Look (... yourself) ... the mirror. I looked ... the room. He looked ... her eyes. **Open** your book ... page 20. What is there ... page 20? What is ... **the top (... the bottom)** ... the page?

3) What can you see ... the picture (photo)? – I can see a room. What is there ... the picture (photo)? – It's my pen. (= Что лежит на картинке /фотографии?)

4) He lives ... **Oxford Street**. His house is ...**the beginning (... the end)** ... the street. The school is ... **Lenin Avenue**. The museum is ...**Palace Square**. This house is ... the Neva **Em-bankment**.

5) ... **the right (... the left)** there's a bed. They drive ... **the left** (= ... **the left-hand side**). The bed is ... **the right (... the left)** ... the door. Turn ... **the left (... the right)**. The television is ... the (right-hand) corner of the room. The public telephone is ... / ... the corner of the street.

6) There was a bench ... these two pines. There was a house ... (=среди) the pines. We live ... the street (... **you**). (=через улицу) Our house is ... (=напротив) yours. **Right** ... the door is a large window. ... (перед) the house there is a lawn. The garden is ... (=позади) the house.

7) The photo is ... (=над) the desk. The ball is ... (=под) the desk. The picture is ... (=выше) the desk. The picture is ... (=ниже) the lamp.

8) He sat ... / ... the window. (около, недалеко) He sat ... / ... / ... the window. (у, рядом с) He lives **far** ... London.

9) We had dinner ... the cafe. He is ... the cinema. They met ... Judy's house. He is ... university. (где вообще)

It was very cosy ... the cafe. There were a lot of people ... the cinema. The rooms ... Judy's house are small. Is he still ... the university? (внутри здания)

10) He **came** ... the door. They stood ... **the door**.

They **knocked** ... /... the door. There was a sign ... the door.

They came ... the room. They entered ... the room.

They went ... the room. They left ... the room.

#### Ex. 14. Translate into Russian.

1) Положите книгу **на** стол. Книга находится **на** столе. Возьмите книгу **со** (2в) стола. Положите книгу **в** портфель. Книга находится **в** вашем портфеле. Возьмите книгу **из** портфеля. Дайте ему книгу. (2 в) Дайте её (= книгу) ему. Возьмите книгу у него.

2) **Посмотрите** на картину. **Смотрите** на доску. **Смотрите** на меня. **Посмотрите** (на себя) **в** зеркало. Я **заглянул в** комнату. Он **посмотрел** ей в глаза. **Откройте** книгу **на** странице 20. Что находится **на** странице 20? Что находится **наверху** (**внизу**) страницы?

3) Что вы видите **на** картине? – Я вижу комнату. Что **на** картине? – Это моя ручка.

4) Он живет **на** Оксфордской улице. Его дом **в начале** (**в конце**) улицы. Школа находится **на проспекте** Ленина. Музей находится **на** Дворцовой площади. Этот дом находится **на** **Набережной** Невы.

5) **Справа** (**слева**) кровать. Они ездят **слева** (= по левой стороне). Кровать **направо** (**налево**) от двери. Поверни **налево** (направо). Телевизор **в** (правом) углу комнаты. Общественный телефон на (2в) углу улицы.

6) **Между** этими двумя соснами была скамейка. **Среди** сосен был дом. Мы живем **через** улицу (**от вас**). Наш дом **напротив** вашего. **Прямо напротив** двери большое окно. **Перед** домом лужайка. Сад **позади** дома.

7) Фотография **над** столом. Мяч находится **под** столом. Картина **выше** стола. Картина **ниже** лампы.

8) Он сидел **около, недалеко от** окна. (2в) Он сидел у **окна** /**рядом с** окном. (2в) Он живет **далеко от** Лондона.

9) Мы обедали **в** кафе. Он **в** кинотеатре. Они встретились **в** доме Джуди. Он **в** университете. (где вообще)

**В** кафе было уютно. В кинотеатре было много людей. Комнаты **в** доме Джуди маленькие. Он все еще **в** университете? (**в здании**)

**10) Он подошел к двери. Они стояли у двери. Они постучали в (2в) дверь. На двери была надпись. Они вошли в комнату. (2в) Они вышли из комнаты. (2в) Она вошла. Она внутри. Она вышла. (2в) Он ушел. Его нет. (2в)**

**Ex. 15. Translate into English.**

1. Какие новости? – Мой дядя купил дом в деревне. Это в сорока минутах езды от города. Это кирпичный двухэтажный дом со всеми удобствами. Там есть электричество, водопровод, центральное отопление и телефон. Окна выходят на озеро.

2. У неё квартира недалеко от центра города. Это трёхкомнатная полнометражная квартира с отдельными комнатами, просторным коридором, балконом и кладовкой. Она на втором этаже шестиэтажного дома на улице Кирова. Окна выходят на восток и на юг. Окна спальни выходят в тихий зелёный двор.

3. Моя племянница живёт в маленькой двухкомнатной квартирке на окраине города на последнем этаже двенадцатиэтажного здания. Она немного расстроена тем, что это далеко от центра и ей требуется полчаса, чтобы добраться до работы, но ничего не поделаешь.

4. Это библиотека. У стен стоят застеклённые книжные шкафы. В правом углу у окна – письменный стол с настольной лампой. Пол покрыт паркетом. Посередине комнаты лежит большой ковёр. По обе стороны камина стоят кресла. На каминной полке стоят часы. С потолка свешивается люстра. Красивые шторы на окнах и цветы в вазах делают комнату уютной. Нет ничего приятнее, чем сидеть в мягком кресле и читать интересную книгу.

5. Моя комната не очень большая, но обставлена так, как мне хочется. Слева – тахта с диванными подушками. В правом углу – стол, на нём – компьютер и принтер. Над ним несколько полок с книгами, остальные – в ящиках стола. Рядом с тахтой – встроенный шкаф, где я храню свою одежду. Пол покрыт ламинатом в тон к шторам на окнах.

6. Наша кухня довольно просторная. В ней – кухонный гарнитур, состоящий из стенки с кухонными столами и встроенной мойкой, обеденного стола и нескольких табуретов. В углу стоит высокий холодильник. Электроплита и стиральная машина встроены в стенку. Пол покрыт линолеумом. Всё блестит и сверкает. Микроволновка, посудомоечная машина, кухонный комбайн облегчают ведение хозяйства.

7. Я люблю бывать в доме у своей бабушки. У неё тихо и уютно. Деревянный пол покрыт половиками (long narrow mats). У неё есть сундук, где она хранит старые вещи и фото.

**Ex. 16. Read the text, compare Jane's kitchen with yours and speak about your favourite place in the flat.**

**Jane's Favourite Room**

My favourite room is our kitchen. Perhaps the kitchen is the most important room in many houses, but it is particularly so in our house because it's not only where we cook and eat but it's also the main meeting place for family and friends. I have so many happy memories of times we spent there: special occasions like making Christmas dinner; comforting cups of tea in the middle of the night in times of trouble; ordinary daily events such as making breakfast on dark, cold winter mornings for cross, sleepy children before sending them off to school, then sitting down to read a newspaper with a hot cup of coffee. Whenever we have a party, it always ends up with people gathering with their drinks to the kitchen and it becomes the fullest and noisiest room in the house.

So what does this special room look like? It's quite big, but not huge. It's big enough to have a good-sized rectangular table in the centre. There's a large window above the sink, which looks out onto two apple trees in the garden. The cooker is at one end; at the other end is a wall with a large notice-board, which tells the story of our lives, past, present and future, in words and pictures: a school photo of Megan and Kate, a postcard from Aunt Nancy in Australia, the menu from a Chinese restaurant, a wedding invitation for next Saturday. All our world is there for everyone to read!

The front door is seldom used in our house, only by strangers. All our friends use the back door, which means they come straight into the kitchen and join in whatever is happening there. The kettle goes on immediately and then we all sit round the table, drinking tea and chatting about everything. Without doubt some of the happiest times of my life have been spent in our kitchen.

**Ex. 17. Describe the room, compare it with the room of your own.**



easel ['i:zl] – мольберт; camera – фотоаппарат; brush – кисточка; half-eaten apple – недоеденное яблоко.

**Ex. 18. Discussion tasks**

1. How do you understand the saying *My home is my castle*? Can you say it about the place you live at? Why or why not?
2. Describe the house/flat of your dream.
3. Compare living on your own and sharing a flat with your parents.
4. Compare living on your own and sharing a flat with your friends.
5. What can you say for and against living in the hostel?
6. What can you say for and against living in the hotel?

**Ex. 19. Conversation tasks**

1. Try to persuade your groupmate who wants to live in the hostel that he/she should rent a flat.
2. Your groupmate wants to rent a flat, discuss the following advertisement together to decide whether it suits him/her or not.  
*A furnished flat to let. Two rooms, a kitchen and a bathroom. First floor. A balcony, no telephone. No children or pets. 23 Kirov St.*
3. Talk to the flat owner to find out the details about the flat you want to rent.
4. You want to sell a house or a flat. Try to persuade the customer to buy it showing him/her some pictures.
5. Look at the picture of the house or a flat and say whether you like it or not and why.
6. Look at the picture of a house or a flat and give compliments to its owner.
7. Show the picture of your room and discuss with your friend the ways to change it.
8. You are both invited to a housewarming party, discuss what present you should choose.

**Ex. 20. Listen to the dialogue, practise the reading and learn it.**

**Brutus Cray – the Greatest**

**Brutus Cray:** 'I'm the ,greatest!

**Reporter:** You `were the greatest, ,Brutus... but you're 'ten 'years `older than 'Joe ,Freezer.

**Brutus Cray:** 'Joe ,Freezer! I'm 'not a'fraid of 'Joe ,Freezer!

**Reporter:** ,Really?

**Brutus Cray:** ,Listen! I've 'beaten him ,twice, and I'm 'going to 'beat him a ,gain.

**Reporter:** 'Are you ,sure?

**Brutus Cray:** ´Sure? Of 'course I'm ,sure.

**Reporter:** 'Some 'people →say he's ,better than you.

**Brutus Cray:** 'Now, ,listen! I've 'beaten 'all the 'best ,boxers, and 'Joe 'Freezer's 'one of the ,worst!

**Reporter:** ,Yes, but he's 'better than he ~was.

**Brutus Cray:** ,Listen! I'm ,stronger, ,faster, ,fitter and 'more in ,telligent than him!

**Reporter:** ,Yes, but he 'K'O'ed 'Len ,Korton 'two ,months ago.

**Brutus Cray:** 'Len →Korton. 'I've 'K'O'ed him 'three ,times!

**Reporter:** 'O. ,K., 'O. ,K., ,Brutus. 'Are you 'going to re ,tire 'after this ,fight?

**Brutus Cray:** Re ,tire? ,No. I've been the 'champion for 'ten ,years ... and I'm 'going to ,stay the champion for a ,nother ten.

**Reporter:** 'Joe `Freezer .doesn't .think ,so!

**Brutus Cray:** `Joe ,Freezer? 'Joe 'Freezer's the 'ugliest 'man in the ,world... 'after to'night he's 'going to 'need a 'new ,face!





## TOPIC 2. DAILY PROGRAMME

Read, translate and reproduce the text.

### My Day

I've 'entered the 'Teachers' 'Training 'Institute of 'Foreign , Languages | and 'so my 'dream has 'come , true. 'Every 'day 'promises 'many 'interesting 'things to , learn, 'new 'people to , meet, 'concerts and 'films to en , joy. But it is 'no 'easy , matter | to 'cram 'everything into 'one , day | and the 'daily , programme | be'comes a 'question of 'winning or , losing. The 'wise , saying | ad , vises | to 'get up , early, "The 'more a 'man of ` wisdom → grows, the 'less of 'morning , sleep he knows."

So 'my day be'gins with the 'ringing of the a , alarm clock | at my , bedside | which , wakes me | as well as my , roommates | 'up at 'half 'past , six. 'Isn't it 'fun to 'jump out of 'bed with , noise | and , jokes, to 'do 'morning , exercises | to , music | with the 'window →open | and after , washing, 'cleaning our , teeth, 'doing our →hair, 'dressing and 'having , breakfast | to 'hurry to the 'institute?

We 'go there by , bus | and it 'takes us ↑forty , minutes | to , get there. 'As our , classes | be'gin at 'eight o' , clock, the , cloakroom | at , that time | is 'over'crowded with the , students | who 'try to a'rrive at the , institute | be'fore the , bell. 'After , classes | I 'go to the , snack bar | or can , teen | to 'have , dinner and 'then to the , library | and 'reading , room | for →books | or to the , language labora- tory | to 'work at my , sounds | and my , speech.

In the , evening | 'after a 'short 'quiet , rest | I 'do my , homework | and it 'takes `time, you , know. Be'fore I 'go to , bed | I can 'watch a 'T, V program, 'read a 'book for , pleasure, 'have a , walk | with my , friend | , chatting | about the 'latest , news. 'Once in , bed | the e'vents of the 'day 'pass in my 'mind's , eye | and I 'see that it's 'been a 'day of 'hard , work. But I `don't feel , sorry, be'cause I , know, "There is 'no 'royal , road | to , learning."

### VOCABULARY

1. to wake (up); to get up; an early bird; to get out of bed; to go to bed; to stay in bed; to make one's bed; to put smb to bed; to fall asleep; to take a nap; usually; as usual; than usual;

to have a bath / a shower; to dry with a towel; to do exercises; to take exercise; to do sports; to keep fit; to work out (in a gym); to go to a swimming pool, a skating rink; to jog;

to walk a dog; to stay indoors; to stay outdoors (=out-of-doors ); to go on foot; to go to the hairdresser's; at / for the weekend; to go out;

When did he go? – He left at the weekend. For how long did he go? – He went for the weekend.

to switch on / off (electrical things); to turn on / off / out (water, gas, electrical things);

### 2. Time

What's the time? What time is it? Could you tell me the time, please? What time did he come?

10 **a.m.** = short for Latin *ante meridiem* = before noon = 10 утра;

10 **p.m.** = short for Latin *post meridiem* = after noon = 10 вечера

It's ten o'clock sharp. It's half past ten.(=10:30) It's a quarter to ten. (=9:45)

It's ten (minutes) past nine. (=9:10) (можно опустить *minutes*, если их число делиться на 5)  
half an hour; an hour and a half;

*The plane arrives at twelve thirty-one (=12:31). He'll come on the nine fifteen train. (=9:15)*  
wrist watch; digital watch; clock; to be right / wrong / fast / slow; to be 5 minutes fast/slow;

to have free / spare time; to be short of time; to be pressed for time; to hurry; to be in a hurry;  
hurry up; to be on time; to be in time for; to be late for;

on time = в назначенное время;

in time = вовремя, без опоздания;

It's time to do smth. It's just the time to do smth.

### 3. Time prepositions

**at** three o'clock; at the same time; (at) any time; at noon; at midnight; at the moment; at Christmas;  
**BUT:** on Christmas Day; at the weekend; at the beginning / end of the year, month, week etc.

**on** Monday; on Monday morning; on weekdays; on my birthday; on the 3d of May;

**on** a sunny morning (*с описательным определением*) **BUT:** **in** the morning;

**in** 1) in a week; in three days; in two hundred years; } *через какое-то время в будущем;*

2) He learnt to drive in three weeks. } *за сколько времени?*

3) in the 19<sup>th</sup> century; in the past; in (the) future; in 1945; in June; in summer;

in the daytime; in the afternoon; **BUT:** next Monday; last June; this summer;

**by** 3 o'clock; by Monday; by next week;

**before** 3 o'clock; before Monday; before midnight; } *в любой момент до ...;*

**till = until** 3 o'clock; until Monday; till next week; } *в течение всего времени до ...;*

**after** 3 o'clock; after Monday; after midnight;

**from ... to (=till)** from 3 to 5; from early morning till late at night;

**between** three and five;

*Когда происходит?* **during** the day; during the winter; during the break; during the lecture;

*Сколько времени продолжается?* **for** a day; for two weeks (= for a fortnight); for thirty years;

### 4. Housework

housewife; host, hostess (*для гостей*); master (*хозяин для подчиненных*); owner (*владелец*);  
to be in disorder; to leave things lying around; to scatter;

to put in order; to do a flat; to tidy (up) a room; to be tidy (untidy);

to be particular about cleanliness; to do a big housecleaning; to do a spring cleaning;

to dust the furniture; to water house plants; to wash up; to wash the dishes; brush, to brush;

to shake; to beat carpets (with a carpet-beater); to vacuum; vacuum cleaner; to sweep; broom;

to do the washing; bed linen;

to do the ironing; to iron; ironing board;

to do the shopping; to go shopping;

to sew; to sew a button on; to make clothes; to knit; to mend; to redecorate;

to be out of order; to do repairs; to repair; to fix;

## JAZZ CHANTS

### WAKE UP, WAKE UP!

Wake up, wake up!  
*What ,time is it?*  
Wake up, wake up!  
*What ,time is it?*  
It's time to get up  
*What ,time is it?*  
It's time to get up  
*What ,time is it?*  
Come on, get up!  
*I don't ,want to get up*  
Come on, get up!  
*I don't ,want to get up*  
You ,have to get up  
*I don't ,want to get up*  
You ,must get up  
*I don't ,want to get up*  
You've ,got to get up  
*I don't ,want to get up*  
Come on, get up!  
*I don't ,want to get up*  
Get up, get up!  
You're gonna be ,late.  
*Late for `what?*  
Late for ,work  
*Late for ,work?*  
*It's ,Sunday!*

### OUCH! THAT HURTS

Ouch!  
*What's the matter?*  
I stubbed my toe  
*Oh, that hurts, that hurts*  
*I ,know that hurts*  
Ouch!  
*What's the matter?*  
I bit my tongue  
*Oh, that hurts, that hurts*  
*I ,know that hurts*  
Ouch!  
*What's the matter?*  
I've got a cramp in my foot  
*Oh, that hurts, that hurts*  
*I ,know that hurts*  
Ouch! Ouch!  
*What's the matter ,now?*  
I bumped into the table  
Tripped on the stairs  
Slipped on the carpet  
Fell over the chairs  
*Gee, you are `clumsy to, day!*

### MEET ME IN THE MORNING

Meet me in the morning  
Meet me at noon  
Meet me in September  
Or the middle of June  
Meet me at midnight  
Meet me in the hall  
Meet me in the summer  
Meet me in the fall  
Meet me in the evening  
Meet me at eight  
I'll meet you any time you want  
But, ,please, don't be late.

### A BAD DAY

I overslept and missed my train  
Slipped on the sidewalk in the pouring rain  
Sprained my ankle, skinned my knees  
Broke my glasses, lost my keys  
Got stuck in the elevator, it wouldn't go  
Kicked it twice and stubbed my toe  
Bought a pen that didn't write  
Took it back and had a fight  
Went home angry, locked the door  
Crawled into bed, couldn't take any more

## EXERCISES

### Ex. 1. Find English equivalents for the following words and phrases in the text.

1) это требует времени; 2) звонок будильника; 3) моя мечта сбылась; 4) чистка зубов; 5) делать утреннюю зарядку; 6) разговаривая о последних новостях; 7) я поступила в педагогический институт; 8) мудрое изречение; 9) нет лёгких путей в учении; 10) читать книгу для удовольствия; 11) режим дня; 12) встречаться с новыми людьми; 13) переполнен; 14) после небольшого спокойного отдыха; 15) мысленно проходят предо мной; 16) закусочная, буфет; 17) наслаждаться концертами и фильмами; 18) спешить в институт; 19) но мне не жаль; 20) под музыку; 21) оказавшись в постели; 22) с шумом и шутками; 23) гардероб; 24) нам требуется сорок минут, чтобы добраться туда; 25) события дня; 26) работать над звуками и речью; 27) я делаю домашнюю работу; 28) это нелёгкое дело; 29) будит меня и моих подруг; 30) чем мудрее становится человек, тем меньше он спит по утрам; 31) перед тем, как лечь спать; 32) вместить всё в один день; 33) я вижу, что это был тяжёлый день; 34) вопрос выигрыша или проигрыша; 35) после уроков; 36) разве не весело? 37) советует вставать рано; 38) спрыгивать с кровати; 39) с открытым окном; 40) приехать в институт до звонка; 41) смотреть телепрограмму; 42) иностранные языки; 43) гулять с друзьями; 44) библиотека и читальный зал; 45) в это время; 46) уроки начинаются в семь.

### 2. Ask and answer all kinds of questions about the text.

**Ex. 3. Correct the statements about the text if necessary.**

1. The wise saying advises to sleep late. 2. It takes her much time to do her homework. 3. It's not difficult to have time for everything during the day. 4. Once in bed she falls asleep at once. 5. She studies foreign languages. 6. Her roommates wake her up with noise and jokes at half past six. 7. After classes she goes shopping. 8. She turns on music when she does her morning exercises. 9. She thinks it's fun to jump on her bed. 10. She rests a little before doing her homework. 11. She has a busy and interesting life. 12. It takes her less than half an hour to get to the institute. 13. At nine o'clock the cloakroom is overcrowded. 14. Before going to bed she goes to the lab to work at her sounds and her speech. 15. In the evening she phones her parents to chat about the latest news. 16. Her life is rather hard. 17. She is disappointed in student life. 18. Her lifestyle makes a daily programme a very important thing. 19. They often open the window in the morning. 20. She usually dines at home. 21. She can watch TV all day long. 22. She knows that learning is not an easy thing. 23. Their classes begin at half past eight. 24. She usually reads her textbook before going to bed.

**Ex. 4. Complete the sentences in your own way.**

1. I've entered ... 2. Our classes begin at ... 3. After classes ... 4. It's no easy matter to ... 5. My day begins with ... 6. Isn't it fun to ... ? 7. ... and it takes time, you know. 8. Once in bed ... 9. It takes me ... to .... 10. After a short rest ... 11. Before I go to bed ... 12. I have a walk with ... chatting about ... 13. ... and so ... dream has come true. 14. The cloakroom at ... is ... 15. ... before the bell. 16. ... but I don't feel sorry because ... 17. ... pass in my mind's eye.

**Ex. 5. Answer the questions.**

1. How long does it take you to get out of bed in the morning? 2. How long did it take you to get ready to leave your home today? 3. How much time does it take you to do your English homework? 4. How much time did it take you to do your English homework at school? 5. How long does it take your seatmate to get to the university? 6. How long did it take you to get to school? 7. How long will it take you to get to the university on foot? 8. How much time does it take your mother to get to her work? 9. How long will it take you to learn the text "My Day"? 10. How long does it take you to have a bath? 11. How long does it take you to do your room? 12. How long has it taken you to do this exercise?

**Ex. 6. Answer the questions.**

**A.** 1. What time do you usually wake up on weekdays? Are you an early bird? 2. Who wakes you up? 3. Did you wake up as usual today? 4. Do you wake up later than usual at weekends? When? 5. How do you get out of bed? 6. Do you have time to make your bed in the morning? 7. How did your mother put you to bed when you were small? Did she sing you lullabies or tell fairy tales? 8. Is it an easy matter for you to get up early? 9. When do you go to bed for the night? 10. Do you fall asleep quickly? 11. Do you take a nap in the daytime? 12. Do you stay in bed when you are ill? 13. Do you prefer to take a bath or a shower? 14. Do you take any exercise? 15. Do you do your exercises in the morning? 16. Do you have a dog? Who walks it? 17. Do you prefer to stay indoors or outdoors at weekends? 18. Do you like to go out? When do you usually go out? 19. Do you go anywhere on foot? Do you enjoy it? 20. Do you like to go to the country? What do you usually do there? 21. Where are you going next weekend? 22. Do you always remember to switch off electrical things and to turn out the light when you leave home? 23. Do you turn on music or TV when you do your homework?

**B.** 1. What's the time by your watch? 2. Is your watch right? 3. What kind of watch do you have? 4. How many clocks do you have at home? 5. What time do your classes begin? When do they finish? 6. When did this lesson begin? When will it finish? 7. Are you often short of time? 8. When are you especially pressed for time? 9. Are you in a hurry now? 10. Are you always on time? Do you think it's important to be on time? 11. If you leave your home at eight, will you be in time for classes? 12. What do you say when you are late? 13. Is it time for the bell? 14. Is it time to go to the canteen? 15. Is it about time to begin the next part of the exercise?

**C.** 1. Where will you be at six o'clock? 2. When will you have lunch? 3. Where will you be at the same time tomorrow? 4. What can you do any time? 5. What are you going to do at midnight? 6. Where will you be at the beginning of the next month? 7. Where will you be in an hour? 8. In what time will the lesson finish? 9. In what time will it get dark? 10. In what time will you see your best friend? 11. In what time can you make breakfast? 12. In what time did you learn to ride a bike? 13. What century were you born in? 14. Are you interested in the past? 15. Do you know what is waiting for you in the future? Would you like to know? 16. When were you born? 17. What did you do last summer? 18. What are you going to do late in the evening? 19. What are you going to do next Monday? 20. Will you finish your homework by eight o'clock? 21. Will this term finish next week? 22. Will you be in the university after five o'clock today? 23. Were you in bed before midnight yesterday? 24. Till when will you be at home tomorrow morning? 25. Till when can your friends phone you? 26. What did you do from nine to eleven p.m. yesterday? 27. Where will you be from two to three tomorrow? 28. What do you usually do during a lecture? 29. Who will you see during the next break? 30. How long have you been learning English?

**D.** 1. Who keeps house in your family? 2. Do you like to keep to the house? 3. Do you like to be a host (or a hostess) or do you prefer to be a guest? 4. Is it difficult to be a dog's master? 5. Are you the owner of anything? 6. Do you often put your room in order? 7. What is out of order in your flat? 8. Are you tidy? 9. Is your mother particular about cleanliness? 10. How often do you do a big housecleaning? 11. What jobs does your big housecleaning include? 12. How often do you water your houseplants? 13. Who usually washes up after meals? 14. Why do Americans wash up before meals? 15. How do you clean your carpets and rugs? 16. Do you sweep or wash the floor in your flat? 17. How can you use a toothbrush, a hairbrush, a paintbrush and a broom? 18. What did Harry Potter use a broom for? 19. Do you do your own washing? 20. Do you like to iron? Do you use an ironing board? 21. Can you cook? Do you often do the cooking? Do you enjoy it? 22. Do you use a cooker or a microwave to warm up meals? 23. Who is the first to get up in your family? 24. Who makes breakfast for you? 25. Do you have a water filter, use tap water or buy bottled water? 26. Do you like to go shopping? 27. Can you sew? 28. Can anybody knit in your family?

**Ex. 7. Say in words.**

1) He woke up at 7:14. 2) The alarm clock went off at 6:30. 3) Jean left home at 9:45, she wanted to take the 10:25 train. 4) The classes were over at 3:50. 5) We are to meet at 7:30 at the entrance to the cinema. 6) Jim promised to call for me at 5:20 sharp. 7) I must be ready by 8:55. 8) The bell goes at 9:15. 9) The ghost appeared at 12 p.m. 10) The cannon fires at 12 a.m. every day. 11) The film begins at 10:45. 12) Look at the watch – it's 12:03 already. – Your watch is 5 minutes fast. It's only 11:58 now. 13) He turned off the light at 1:41. 14) Dinner will be at 2:30. 15) It's 4:33 now. 16) I'll come by the 5:39 plane. 17) Harry appeared at 8:11 sharp.

**Ex. 8. Fill in articles if necessary.**

1. ...sooner ... better. 2. ... time is ... money. 3. After ... classes I usually go to ... canteen or ... snack bar to have ... lunch. 4. He has ... bad cold and ... Doctor Jones advised him to keep to ... house. 5. ... granny keeps ... house in our family, she does ... most of ... housework. 6. In ... evening after ... short quiet rest I do ... homework and it takes ... time, you know. 7. It's just ... time to begin ... lesson. 8. At ten o'clock on ... warm September evening he walked slowly down ... street. 9. ... day was hot and muggy. 10. It was ... cold autumn morning. 11. In ... morning she went ... shopping. 12. It was almost ... noon. 13. He made his speech ... yesterday ... morning. 14. It was ... late evening when ... train arrived at ... station. 15. ... night passed quietly. 16. ... doorbell rang late at ... night. 17. He works from ... morning till ... night. 18. Wendy came on ... 10:45 train. 19. We got back to ... hotel when ... twilight was falling. 20. I paid ... visit to them on ... clear, cold February afternoon. 21. Is he still in ... bed? – No, he has got up and gone for ... ride. 22. I always try to come to ... university before ... bell. 23. He likes ... tidiness, but finds ... housework rather tiresome. 24. It's ... fun to do ... sports to ... rock music. 25. It's ... pity to go to ... bed so early. 26. I have to be ... first to get up, to make ... breakfast. 27. She takes ... nap in ... daytime.

28. If nobody wakes her up in ... morning she'll sleep till ... noon. 29. Who will do ... shopping today? – I must, but I hate to go ... shopping in such ... rainy weather.

**Ex. 9. Fill in prepositions or adverbs if necessary.**

1. He woke ..... early ..... usual and now he's doing his morning exercises ..... music ..... the window open. 2. He arrived ..... the meeting ..... time, ..... half ..... seven. 3. When I woke ..... yesterday I saw that I had overslept and was late ..... classes, so I jumped ... .. bed and ran ..... the bathroom. 4. She gets ..... work ..... tram, but ... fine weather she goes ..... foot ..... times. 5. He was born ..... the 30<sup>th</sup> ..... November ..... 1982. 6. It's a pleasure to go ..... a walk ..... a sunny morning like that. 7. Danny went ..... bed long ..... midnight yesterday and felt sleepy ..... the daytime. 8. If you want to speak ... .. English well, you should work ..... it ..... every day. 9. Once ..... bed the events ..... the day pass ..... my mind's eye and I can't fall asleep ..... a long time. 10. When I'm pressed ..... time I take a taxi. 11. .... lunch she washed ....., rubbed her hands ..... the towel and left ..... the kitchen. 12. We'll go ..... the country ..... the weekend and stay there ..... Thursday. 13. Will you finish to tidy ..... your room ..... the time the film begins? 14. Could you switch ..... the radio, please, I have a headache. 15. Does the eight o'clock train come ..... time? 16. Will Dad be ..... time ..... the football match ..... Brazil? 17. My niece will come ..... age ..... two weeks' time. 18. Can your husband sew a button .....? 19. The lift is ..... order again, we'll have to go ..... upstairs ..... foot. 20. Please come ..... any time you want, I always wait ..... you. 21. Hurry .....! Otherwise you'll be late ..... work. 22. He leaves ..... his things lying ..... 23. Look ..... this mess! You aren't very particular ..... cleanliness. 24. Did you beat the carpet ..... a carpet beater or vacuum it ..... the new vacuum cleaner? 25. He works ..... early morning ..... six o'clock ..... the evening. 26. Have you seen the film '..... Sunset ..... Sunrise'? 27. Is Maggy ...? – No, she has gone ..... the hairdresser's ..... the corner. She'll be back ..... half ..... an hour. Will you wait ..... her?

**Ex. 10. Complete the sentences with *do* or *make* in a proper tense. Mind: *do* usually relates to actions or performing, while *make* usually relates to causing, creating or constructing.**

1. If you ..... something to eat, I'll be glad to ..... the washing up. 2. They ..... the shopping on the way home, so June could ..... her favourite salad. 3. I ..... her eat her dinner before she ..... her homework. 4. He ..... his best to answer the questions, but he ..... some mistakes. 5. We can't ..... without a fridge in summer. 6. .... me a favour, don't ..... a fool of me. 7. You are late again. Please, don't ..... a habit of it. 8. Did he ..... the repairs? Can we ..... exercises to music now? 9. Don't ..... faces at people, Johnny, it's impolite. 10. We ..... acquaintance in London last year. 11. Have you ..... up your mind where to go for your winter holidays? 12. I don't want to ..... anything with this man. He has ..... too much harm to my family. 13. If you ..... a fire, I'll ..... the soup for dinner. 14. I really don't know what to ..... with my son. He ..... friends with the wrong sort of people. 15. He is always ..... fun of me. 16. Did he ..... much money there? 17. .... love, not war, as hippies used to say. 18. Can he really ..... this job? – He can if he ..... an effort. 19. Have you ..... your bed yet? – I'll ..... it now. 20. Haste ..... waste, you know. 21. What does he ..... for his living? – He ..... music. 22. He is ..... some progress in English, isn't he?

**Ex. 11. Make sentences according to the model.**

*Model: Tom is going by taxi. (Bill) – And so is Bill.*

1. They had coffee for breakfast. (I) 2. George has lunch in this cafe. (Martin) 3. Mary's taking photographs. (Mike) 4. They are looking for a flat (we) 5. Jane made six mistakes. (you) 6. Jack must go. (his wife) 7. Emily offered to help. (Jean) 8. Brian has just got home. (I) 9. I'm tired of this. (we all) 10. Pete has made good progress in English. (his seatmate) 11. I quite agree with you. (my friend) 12. We are preparing for the test (the other students) 13. I'm helping mother about the house. (my brother). 14. I enjoy reading. (my father) 15. She is leaving for a holiday. (we) 16. I've packed my things. (Fred) 17. My cousin likes to play chess. (his parents) 18. My grandparents have a house in the country. (hers) 19. I hope to see you again. (Jake)

*Model 2: Jack didn't understand it. (Tom) - Neither did Tom.*

1. We haven't had breakfast yet. (the others)
2. George wasn't late. (his friend)
3. Paul didn't get any sleep last night. (his Mum)
4. Ann doesn't believe you. (her sister)
5. They don't know the way. (he)
6. Mary won't write letters. (Lucy)
7. She isn't going anywhere. (I)
8. He wasn't making a noise. (the children)
9. He won't be ready by six. (we)
10. Peter hasn't done his homework. (his brother)
11. He didn't explain it. (anyone else)
12. Nick hasn't started work yet. (Harry)
13. Ann isn't here today. (her niece)
14. Vegetables won't grow there. (flowers)
15. She wasn't late. (we)

**Ex. 12. Make up sentences according to the model.**

**Model:** a) I am watching TV. (Mary)

**So is Mary.**

b) Bill doesn't have lunch at home. (they)

**Neither do they.**

1. I wake up at six o'clock. (my mother)
2. John is still in bed. (his parents)
3. He is never late for his classes. (I)
4. Yesterday I got up later than usual. (they)
5. His grandfather doesn't take a nap after lunch. (mine)
6. He is falling asleep. (his brother)
7. She has a shower before going to bed. (we)
8. Mike didn't stay indoors at the weekend. (his family)
9. He will walk his dog when he comes home. (his friend)
10. She won't do the ironing today. (I)
11. They are going to have a big housecleaning on Saturday. (we)
12. He is pressed for time. (I)
13. He isn't beating carpets in the yard. (his neighbour)
14. Granny knits well. (Mother)
15. We shall go to the country. (our neighbours)
16. Our vacuum cleaner is out of order. (hers)
17. I never leave my things lying around. (my daughter)
18. Their food processor is of the latest model. (ours)
19. They aren't very particular about cleanliness. (their daughter-in law)
20. They do the spring cleaning every year. (their uncle)

**Ex. 13. Complete the dialogue with phrases beginning with *So* and *Neither*.**

A I am on holiday next month.

B .....

A I need a change

B Oh, ..... I am tired of the same office and the same people every day.

A Where are you going?

B Spain.

A Oh, I went there last year.

B ..... We always go to Spain, but we never go to Costa Brava.

A No, ..... There are too many English people there.

B Where exactly are you going?

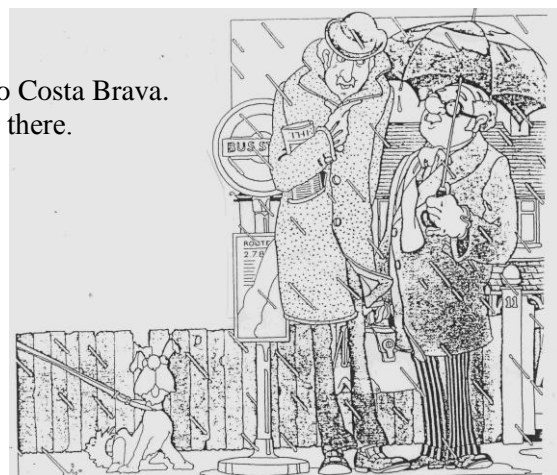
A San Pedro ... it's a little village on the north coast.

B ..... and we are going there this year, too.

A ... not to Hotel del Sol?

B Yes. Why?

A Well, I'll see you. I'm staying there too!



**Ex. 14. Translate into English.**

А 1. Её мечта сбылась: на следующей неделе она едет в Париж. Она возвращается в конце августа, через два месяца. 2. Нелегко вместить всё в один день: учёбу, спорт, работу по дому, развлечения. 3. Моя соседка по комнате ранняя пташка, а мне требуется, по крайней мере, полчаса, чтобы выбраться из постели. 4. Мы делаем генеральную уборку раз в две недели по субботам, и, знаете, это требует времени. 5. Под какую музыку ты делаешь зарядку? 6. Она поступила в университет и теперь ей приходится вставать в половине седьмого по будням, чтобы приехать до звонка. Ей требуется час, чтобы умыться, одеться, причесаться, сделать макияж и позавтракать. 7. Сколько времени? – Без четверти восемь по моим часам, но я не уверен, что они идут правильно. Мне кажется, они отстают на пять минут. 8. Каждое утро после зарядки, он принимает холодный душ, а перед тем, как лечь спать, тёплую ванну.

**В** 1. Кто ведёт хозяйство в вашей семье? – Бабушка. Ей уже за шестьдесят, но она полна энергии. Она готовит, стирает, гладит и вяжет. Конечно, мы все помогаем ей по дому. Мы делаем уборку, ходим в магазин. Моя младшая сестра вытирает пыль, поливает цветы, моет посуду. Я чищу ковры пылесосом, подметаю и мою пол. 2. Ты уже постирала постельное бельё? 3. Где гладильная доска? Мне нужно погладить платье. 4. Моя соседка очень заботится о чистоте. У неё в доме всё блестит и сверкает. Она делает уборку каждый день и вся семья ей помогает. 5. Дом выглядит великолепно! Вы сделали ремонт? – Да, мы покрасили его, наклеили новые обои и застелили пол линолеумом. 6. Родители уехали загород на выходные. – А ты почему сидишь дома в такое солнечное утро? Пойди погуляй с собакой. 7. Выключи музыку и включи телевизор, пожалуйста. Уже без двух минут девять. Кино начинается через семь минут. 8. Что случилось? – Я плохо себя чувствую. – Вздремни после обеда, а вечером сходи погулять. Ты поздно ложишься и мало бываешь на воздухе.

### **Ex. 15. Discussion tasks**

1. Describe your usual weekday. How is it different from the one you had at school?
2. Describe one of the weekends which was unusual or different from others.
3. Do you think both men and women should do jobs about the house? Should there be differences in the housework for men and women? Would you like to be a housewife/ househusband?
4. How do you solve such problems as lack of time?
5. Do you think you have enough physical activity during the day? What does lack of movement do to your body?
6. How much sleep do you need to feel well? What does lack of sleep do to your brain?
7. What do you do to overcome stress? Can people live without stress?
8. Is it important for you to keep fit? What is the best way of keeping fit for you?
9. Are you satisfied with your way of life? Why or why not? Would you like to change it? How?
10. Comment on the phrase: *Life is what happens to you when you are busy making other plans.*

### **Ex. 16. Conversation tasks**

1. Your friend complains he/she doesn't look /feel very well. You discuss the ways of keeping fit: doing morning exercises, having PE lessons, going to the gym, dancing, walking, swimming, skating, yoga etc.
2. Your friend doesn't like his/her way of life but doesn't want to change it. Persuade him/her to do something (join the gym, go everywhere on foot etc.) to make his /her life more healthy.
3. Confess what bad habits you have and ask your friend to advise you how to get rid of them.
4. Share your favourite ways to relax and to overcome stress.
5. Your friend invites you to go somewhere (to the club, to the stadium etc.). Explain why you won't join him/her.
6. Your friend is late again and you are annoyed with it. He apologizes. Accept his apology and discuss the problem of being late.

**THE TROUBLE IS,  
YOU THINK YOU HAVE TIME.**

**- BUDDHA**



**Ex. 17. Listen to the dialogues and learn them by heart.**

**Dialogue 1. AN INTERVIEW (32)**

Robin Knight, the television reporter, is interviewing the Duchess of Wessex for the programme "The English At Home".

**Robin** `Now, Duchess... 'tell us about an `ordinary `day in your `life.

**Duchess** `Well, I 'wake up at' seven o' `clock...

**Robin** `Really? 'Do you 'get up `then?

**Duchess** 'No, of `course I .don't get .up at that .time. I have 'breakfast in `bed | and I 'read 'The `Times'.

**Robin** 'What 'time `do you get up?

**Duchess** I 'get up at `ten.

**Robin** 'What do you 'do `then?

**Duchess** I 'read my `letters | and dic'tate the re'plies to my `secretary.

**Robin** ...and `then?

**Duchess** At e'leven I 'walk in the 'garden with `Philip.

**Robin** `Oh? 'Who's `Philip?

**Duchess** `Philip's | my `dog.

**Robin** 'What 'time do you 'have `lunch?

**Duchess** I have 'lunch at 'twelve- `thirty.

**Robin** And `after lunch?

**Duchess** 'Oh, I `rest until 'six o' `clock.

**Robin** And at `six? 'What do you 'do at `six?

**Duchess** I 'dress for `dinner. 'We have 'dinner at `eight o'clock.

**Robin** 'What 'time do you 'go to `bed?

**Duchess** `Well, I have a 'bath at 'nine- `thirty, and I 'go to 'bed at `ten.

**Robin** `Thank you, Duchess... you 'certainly have a 'busy and 'interesting `life!

LEARN from yesterday,  
LIVE for today,  
HOPE for tomorrow.



At the end of the day, the only questions I will ask myself are ...  
Did I love enough?  
Did I laugh enough?  
Did I make a difference?

## Dialogue 2. A CALL FROM HOME (66)

### KANSAS



**Mrs Colt** He ,llo. 'Elmer? . 'Is that ' you?

**Elmer** , Yes, Momma.

**Mrs Colt** 'Where are you `now, , Elmer?

**Elmer** I've 'just ar'rived in , Prague, Momma.

**Mrs Colt** You' haven't 'sent me any  
`postcards , yet.

**Elmer** 'Yes, I , have . . . I've 'sent 'one from  
↑every , city.

**Mrs Colt** 'Have you 'been to , Paris yet, Elmer?

**Elmer** 'Yes, I , have.

**Mrs Colt** 'Have you 'been to , Vienna yet?

**Elmer** 'No, I , haven't. We' re 'going to  
'Vienna to ,morrow.

**Mrs Colt** , Elmer! 'Are 'you still , there?

**Elmer** , Yes, Momma

**Mrs Colt** 'How 'many 'countries have you  
'seen `now, , Elmer?

**Elmer** 'Well, 'this is the 'eighth →day, so I've  
a'already →seen | 'eight , countries.

**Mrs Colt** 'Have you 'spent much , money, Elmer?

**Elmer** , Yes, Momma, I've 'bought a 'lot of  
, souvenirs... and I 'want to 'buy some , more.  
'Can you 'send me a 'thousand , dollars?

**Mrs Colt** All , right, Elmer.

**Mrs Colt** 'Elmer, 'are 'you 'listening to , me?

**Elmer** `Yes, , Momma.

**Mrs Colt** 'Have you 'taken 'many , photographs, Elmer?

**Elmer** , Yes, Momma, I've 'taken a , lot.

**Mrs Colt** 'Have you 'met any 'nice , girls yet, Elmer?

**Elmer** 'Oh, , yes, Momma . . . there's a 'girl from , Texas on the , tour.  
'We've 'done `everything together.

**Mrs Colt** , Elmer! 'Elmer! 'Are 'you 'still `there, , Elmer?

### PRAGUE



## TOPIC 3. MEALS

Read, translate and reproduce the text.

### English Meals

An 'Englishman's 'day be\_gins | when he 'sits 'down to 'table to 'have his 'favourite , breakfast | of , fruit juice, 'cereal and , milk, 'toast and , marmalade, 'tea or , coffee.

A'round about '11 in the , morning | 'those who , work | 'have their 'tea or , coffee break. They 'never 'call it a , meal, of course. 'Most 'shops and 'offices `don't .close for the .lunch , break. 'Staff 'breaks are , staggered | 'so that a 'skeleton staff is on , duty. 'Office , workers, , shop assistants, , teachers , etc, 'take , sandwiches, 'use the can'teen or re\_fectory facilities, 'buy from a 'nearby 'fast food , outlet, 'sandwich , bar | and , so on.

'Most , Englishmen | 'like what they 'call 'good plain food. They 'must be 'able to , recognize 'what they are , eating. But 'Great 'Britain is 'now a 'multi'ethnic so\_cietiy | and the 'average 'English , family | has a 'taste for 'foreign , foods. , Frozen (or 'chilled) , meals and 'pre\_packs | are 'used by 'those who have 'no , time | or 'incl\_i\_nation | to 'cook them , selves.

'Those who 'eat at , home | 'usually 'call their 'midday 'meal , dinner, and 'make it the , chief one of the , day. It 'often con\_sists of 'two or 'three , courses. The 'main dish 'usually in'cludes , meat of some kind: | , steak, , chops, , roast-beef or , chicken | and , vegetables: | po\_tatoes, , peas, , beans, , cabbage, or , cauliflower. But it can 'also be 'anything , else | from an 'Indian , curry dish | to I'talian 'pizza and , salad.

'Then the 'table is , cleared | and the , dessert (or , pudding) is 'brought , in. 'This may be 'anything from 'ice-cream to , fruit: | , apples, , pears, , oranges, , plums and , nuts. 'Some people 'like to finish their , meal | with 'cheese and 'plain , biscuits. 'Coffee or , tea | 'usually , follows. 'If the `first | or , starter course is served | it is 'not 'always , soup – 'sometimes , fruit juice | or 'half a , grapefruit | or , melon – there are 'many 'starters to , choose , from.

The 'famous 'English 'afternoon , tea | is 'taken at '3 or , 4 | if the 'main meal is to , follow. If the 'main 'meal is 'eaten at mid\_day, a 'more sub\_stantial tea is served – , sandwiches, 'scrambled 'egg on , toast, , salad, or a 'kind of 'fish type , snack | at a'bout '5 o' , clock. 'People who , work | en'joy 'teatime at , weekends, but on `week\_days | they 'have just an'other , coffee break | at , this time. 'Supper is a'bout '9 p. , m. | and 'usually a 'very , light one, just 'tea and , biscuits, perhaps.

The 'busy 'working , mother | will 'also 'make 'use of the 'various 'fast , food outlets – the 'Indian and Chi'nese , takeaways, the , pizza parlours | where 'various I'talian , food is bought | 'ready-cooked. 'Many of 'these , places | have a de\_livery service | and 'all that the 'customer 'needs , do | is 'pick up the , telephone, 'order the , meal | and '30 'minutes , later | it's de\_livered to the , door.

The 'way of 'life has 'altered dra\_matically | in the 'last '30 'years or , so. 'Healthy , eating | is a , phrase | that has be'come a , byword. At 'any 'given , moment, 'probably 150 per , cent | of the 'British , public, 'men and , women, are , dieting | to 'lose , weight.

### VOCABULARY

#### 1. Cooking

to do the cooking, to cook, to boil; to fry; to cut; to bake, to make breakfast,

to put a kettle on, to make tea; teapot, coffee pot; to pour,

plate, glass, saucer, fork, spoon, knife, pan, frying pan;

meat, sausage, cheese; hamburger, fish, soup;

vegetable, potato, cucumber, tomato, chips, salad;

fruit, apple; orange; lemon; banana; berry, nut; mushroom;

porridge, macaroni, sour cream, ice cream, yoghurt/yogurt, butter; oil;

bread, bun, biscuit, cookie, cake, pancake, pie, sandwich; a bar of chocolate, jam, sweet, honey;

salt, sugar, spice, pepper, beer, wine, fizzy water /drinks; juice, coffee, champagne;

tasty, tasteless, delicious, sweet, sour, bitter; juicy;

to have smth for lunch, for the first (second) course, for dessert,  
 to lay (=set) the table, to sit down to table, to be (sit) at table, to clear the table,  
 to have a bite (=snack), to be thirsty (hungry), to eat in (out), to prefer meat to fish,  
 to be a heavy (light) eater, to have a sweet tooth;  
 to be on a diet; to keep to a diet;  
 self-service canteen, cafe, restaurant; to be on the menu;

**Note:** мы можем употреблять слово *table* без артикля, когда речь идет о еде.  
*Let's sit down to table.* (to eat) *They are at table already.* (= They are eating already)  
**But:** *They are sitting at the table and playing cards.*

## 2. Phrases

Have some more cake (another piece of cake). – No more, thanks. I'm quite full.  
 Pass me the salt, please. Here is the pepper. Here it is. Here are the spoons. Here they are.  
 Here you are. It smells nice. It makes my mouth water. The soup lacks salt.  
 What do you say to a glass of wine? It is out of the question. You are sure to like it.  
 Have a nice meal! Bon appétit! [ˌbɒn ap'e'ti:]

## 3. Learn the proverbs. Explain what they mean.

1. An early bird catches the worm. 2. As you make your bed, so you must lie on it. 3. Old habits die hard. 4. Time flies. 5. Time flies when you are having fun. 6. Time and tide wait for no man. 7. Time is a great healer. 8. Time is money. 9. An apple a day keeps the doctor away. 10. It's no use crying over spilt milk. 11. Man doesn't live by bread alone. 12. One man's meat is another man's poison. 13. You can't make an omelette without breaking eggs. 14. Tastes differ.

## JAZZ CHANTS

### MORE BAD LUCK

The bread was stale  
 It was four days old  
 The milk was sour  
 The coffee was cold.  
 The butter was rancid  
 The steak was tough.  
 The service was dreadful,  
 The waiter was rough.  
 My bill was huge  
 His tip was small.  
 I'm sorry I went to that place at all.

### ON A DIET

First she gave up smoking  
 Then she gave up gin  
 Then she gave up chocolate cake  
 She wanted to be thin  
 Then she gave up breakfast  
 Then she gave up lunch  
 On lazy Sunday mornings  
 She even gave up brunch  
 No matter what she gave up  
 Her skirts were very tight  
 Cause she ate †twelve cans of tuna fish  
 For dinner every night.

## MAJOR DECISIONS

How do you like your coffee?	– Black, black.	, Scrambled, with , bacon?	– I don't care.
How do you like your tea?	– With lemon, please.	`Over , easy?	– I don't care
How do you like your steak?	–Medium rare.	, Soft-boiled, , hard-boiled?	– I don't care.
How do you like your eggs?	– I don't care.	How about an , omelet?	– I don't care
Sunny side , up?	– I don't care.	, Come on, , tell me. This isn't , fair.	
Poached on , toast?	– I don't care.	– I told you the , truth. I really don't , care.	

## LIMERICKS

**Limericks** belong to **nonsense verse**, a kind of humorous poetry, which amuses by deliberately using strange, non-existent words and illogical ideas. Its masters in English are Edward Lear and Lewis Carroll.

There was an Old Person of Dean,  
Who dined on one pea and one bean;  
For he said, "More than that  
Would make me too fat",  
That cautious Old Person of Dean.

There was an Old Man of Peru  
Who dreamt he was eating his shoe.  
He awoke in the night  
In a terrible fright  
And found it was perfectly true!

There was a Young Lady of Lynn,  
Who was so uncommonly thin,  
That when she essayed  
To drink lemonade,  
She slipped through the straw and fell in.

There was a Young Man of Bengal,  
Who was asked to a fancy-dress ball.  
He murmured, "I'll risk it  
And go as a biscuit",  
But a dog ate him up in the hall.

There was once an Old Man of Rhine,  
Who was asked at what hour he'd dine.  
He replied, "At eleven,  
One, two, three and seven,  
Not to mention a quarter to nine".

There was once an Old Man of Crew,  
Who found a mouse in his stew.  
Said the waiter, "Don't shout  
And don't wave it about,  
Or the others will want the one too".

There was once a lady from Niger  
Who smiled as she rode on a tiger.  
Once they came from a ride  
With the lady inside  
And the smile on the face of the tiger

## RHYMES

An accident happened to my brother Jim  
Somebody threw a tomato at him  
Tomatoes are juicy, they can't hurt the skin  
But that one was specially packed in a tin.

☞ There was an old woman  
Who lived in a shoe.  
She had so many children  
She didn't know what to do.  
She made them some broth  
Without any bread,  
And whipped them all soundly  
And sent them to bed.



### Ex. 1. Find English equivalents for the following words and phrases in the text *English Meals*.

1) образ жизни; 2) замороженная или охлажденная еда; 3) похудеть; 4) он садится за стол; 5) хорошая простая еда; 6) потом убирают со стола; 7) в перерыв на обед; 8) многонациональное общество; 9) его любимый завтрак; 10) перерыв для чая или кофе; 11) служба доставки; 12) полуфабрикаты; 13) обслуживающий персонал обедает в разное время; 14) возможности, средства обслуживания; 15) сильно изменился; 16) более существенный, питательный; 17) пиццерии; 18) клиент; 19) день англичанина начинается 20) стало часто употребляемой фразой; 21) первое блюдо; 22) заведение, торгующее готовой едой на вынос; 23) взять телефонную трубку; 24) доставляется к двери; 25) средняя английская семья; 26) есть множество первых блюд на выбор; 27) занятая работающая мама; 28) они должны понимать, что они едят; 29) в середине дня; 30) заказать еду; 31) сидят на диете.

**Ex. 2. Ask and answer all kinds of questions about the text.**

**Ex. 3. Answer the questions.**

1. How is your breakfast different from a typical English breakfast? 2. How do English shops and offices manage to work without lunch breaks? 3. What is “good plain food”? 4. Why can Great Britain be called a multiethnic society? 5. What foreign food do you like? 6. What is the main meal of the day in Britain? When does it take place? 7. When do you have your main meal? 8. When do Englishmen eat fruit (unlike Russians)? 9. What do you usually begin and finish your dinner with? 10. What is your favourite soup: cabbage soup, beetroot soup, pea soup, fish soup, vegetable soup? 11. What is a take-away? Have ever bought something from it? 12. Have you ever used a delivery service? Why or why not?

**Ex. 4. Answer the questions using the vocabulary.**

1. Who does the cooking in your family? 2. Can you cook? What can you cook? 3. Have you ever baked a cake? 4. Have you ever cut yourself while cooking? 5. Are you a heavy or a light eater? 6. How do you make your tea? 7. What is there in your kitchen cupboard? 8. Do you ever use a saucer? 9. What do you use a pan, a frying pan for? 10. What is the difference between a kettle and a teapot? 11. What do you eat with mayonnaise or ketchup? 12. Do you like hamburgers? 13. Do you often eat vegetables? 14. Do you like salads? What do Englishmen call a Russian salad? 15. How do you like your potatoes: boiled, mashed, fried or baked? 16. Do you like potato chips? Are they healthy? 17. Do you ever have cereal for breakfast? 18. What do you eat when you want to have a snack? 19. What country do macaroni come from? 20. What do you eat with sour cream? 21. What do you prefer for dessert: ice-cream, fruit, chocolate, jam, sweets, honey? 22. Do you like yogurt? 23. Do you ever eat bread and butter? 24. What kind of bread do you like: white, brown, rye, or whole wheat? 25. What do you eat pancakes with? 26. What do you like pies with? 27. Do you like spicy and salty food? Do you put pepper in your food? 28. How many spoonfuls of sugar do you put in your tea or coffee? 29. What nuts do you prefer: walnuts, peanuts or almonds? 30. Do you drink beer, sweet or dry wine? 31. When do you drink champagne? 32. Do you often have fizzy drinks? 33. Do you like sour fruit like grapefruit or lemon? 34. Do you ever eat tasteless food? Where or when? Why? 35. Who usually lays and clears the table in your family? 36. Do your family members ever sit down to table together? 37. Do you prefer to eat alone or in the company? 38. What do you talk about when you are sitting at table? 39. Do you prefer to eat in or out? 40. Where do you prefer to eat out: in a self-service canteen, in a cafe, in a restaurant? 41. What is on the menu in our canteen today? 42. Are you thirsty now? Are you hungry? What would you like to eat or drink now? 43. What is called “junk food” in English? Give examples.

**Ex. 5. Choose the suitable word.**

1. Would you like a fish sandwich or a (meet, meat, mete) sandwich? 2. Have they caught the (serial, cereal, series) killer at the end of the film? 3. The butter has a strange (beater, bitter, bitten) smell, I'm afraid it's rancid. 4. The juice (tastes, tests, tasty) delicious. 5. The Sahara (Desert, Dessert) is in the north of Africa. 6. For breakfast, I prefer (coffee, café) to tea. 7. The (soap, soup) is tasteless, let's add salt and (pepper, paper, puppy) to it. 8. Her favourite breakfast is (serial, cereal, series) and milk. 9. Where is the frying (pan, pen, penny, pin)? I want to fry some mushrooms and potatoes. 10. Let's have some fruit for (desert, dessert), shall we? 11. Have you (sat, set, sit, seat) the table yet? 12. Let's (meet, meat, mete) in our favourite (coffee, café) tonight. 13. Sweet-sour cranberry (sauce, source, saucer) is a popular treat at Thanksgiving. 14. Look! The guests have already (sat, sat down) to table. 15. Have they (sat, set, sit, seat) a date for the wedding? 16. Do you have a spare (pan, pen)? I want to write a note. 17. This (serial, cereal, series) drama is popular with housewives. 18. Dad is reading his morning (paper, pepper, puppy) in the dining-room. 19. The Internet is the most important (sauce, source, saucer) of information now. 20. Where is Danny's teddy (beer, bear, bare)? 21. Annie (lay, laid, lied, led) the table last time. 22. Wash your hands with hot water and (soap, soup), please. 23. Have you ever seen a flying (sauce, source, saucer)? 24. The pupils are sitting at their desks and writing a (taste, test, tasty).

**Ex. 6. Fill in articles if necessary.**

1. We'd like ... coffee and two teas. 2. What ... sweet apples! What ... huge sandwich! What ... tasteless porridge! 3. Give me ... glass of ... tomato juice, please. 4. What did you have for ... lunch? 5. They had ... light supper. 6. ... breakfast was ... cereal and ... milk. 7. She doesn't add ... sugar to ... coffee. 8. On ... weekdays they have ... tea at five in ... afternoon. 9. ... British are ... greatest tea lovers in ... Europe. 10. Here is ... pepper. Here is ... bread. Here are ... napkins. 11. It was ... delicious dinner. ... dessert was especially good. 12. Are you on .... diet? 13. She prefers .... pears to ... apples. 14. Sausage is out of ... question. 15. It's time to sit down to ... table. What's for ... first course today? 16. Will you lay ... table, please? 17. After ... dinner sleep ... while, after ... supper walk ... mile.

**Ex. 7. Translate into English.**

1. Чайник на плите. Чашки, блюда и маленькие ложки в шкафу. Печенье, сахар и заварочный чайник на столе. Варенье и лимоны в холодильнике. Пора пить чай. Если хочешь, можешь сделать себе бутерброды с колбасой или сыром. 2. Я накрываю на стол, помоги мне, пожалуйста. Порежь хлеб и вынь салфетки (napkins) из верхнего ящика шкафа. 3. Где подсолнечное масло? Я хочу поджарить картошку. - Вот оно. Убавь газ, а то сожжёшь её, и не забудь посолить. 4. Что у нас на обед? - На первое овощной суп, на второе жареная рыба с картошкой. - А на десерт? - Шоколадные конфеты и фрукты. - Просто слюнки текут. 5. Передайте, пожалуйста, соль и перец. Я люблю острую пищу. - Вот, пожалуйста. 6. Мясо безвкусное, в нём не хватает специй. Хлеб чёрствый (stale), а соус (sauce) слишком кислый. А вот яблоки просто восхитительные: сладкие и сочные. 7. Я очень хочу пить. Что ты скажешь насчёт кока колы? - О газированной воде не может быть и речи. Я возьму стаканчик апельсинового сока или минеральной воды. 8. Поторопись. Все уже сели за стол. - Я не голоден. Я перекусил час назад. 9. Брайан мало ест. Он не ест гамбургеры, пиццу, хот доги и другую вредную пищу. - Он вегетарианец (vegetarian)? - Нет, он ест мясо, но не каждый день, в основном он ест рыбу, морепродукты (seafood), овощи, фрукты, макароны. 10. Убери со стола, пожалуйста, и поставь чайник, а я вымою посуду. 11. Угощайтесь тортом. Он с орехами и фруктами. - Очень вкусно. Дадите рецепт (recipe)? Я люблю сладкое. - Конечно. Возьмите ещё шоколадного мороженого. Вам наверняка понравится. - Спасибо, больше не надо. Я наелся. 15. Я купила курицу (chicken), пару килограммов картошки, молока и сметаны. Почисти (peel) картошку, пожалуйста. Мы пожарим курицу со сметаной и специями в духовке.

**Usage Note 1. Look at the meaning of the words free, spare, extra, vacant.**

**Free** – свободный.

- |                            |   |
|----------------------------|---|
| 1) вольный, независимый;   | <i>You are <u>free</u> to decide what to do. Feel <u>free</u> to ask questions.</i> |
| 2) бесплатный;             | <i>Soft drinks are <u>free</u> but you'll have to pay for the beer.</i>             |
| 3) находящийся на свободе; | <i>Tomorrow they'll leave the prison and become <u>free</u> people.</i>             |
| 4) незанятый;              | <i>Are you <u>free</u> next weekend? How did you spend your <u>free</u> time?</i>   |
| 5) неиспользуемый.         | <i>The telephone is <u>free</u>, you may use it.</i>                                |

**Spare** – запасной; резервный; лишний, свободный, дополнительный.

*We have a spare key to this door. What do you do in your spare time?*

**Extra** – добавочный, дополнительный. *I asked for an extra day to finish the work.*

**Vacant** – незаполненный; пустой; незанятый, свободный.

*Only a few apartments were still vacant. Is this seat vacant?*

**Ex. 8. Complete the sentences with free, spare, extra, vacant.**

1. This room is ..... You can sleep here. 2. The best things in life are ..... 3. Could you give me a ..... pen? Mine doesn't write. 4. We should do something to avoid ..... expenses. 5. We must buy some ..... parts to repair your bike. 6. This chewing gum is sugar.....

7. I'm very sorry but we don't have any ..... positions at the moment. 8. She's very busy. She hasn't got a moment to ..... 9. They take ..... charge for this service. 10. Feel ..... to eat anything you'll find in the fridge. 11. I will have to work ..... hours this week. 12. Guess what! I have a ..... pass to the concert! 13. Have you got some alcohol ..... tonic, please? 14. He didn't answer, just looked at us with a ..... smile.

**Usage Note 2. Look at the English equivalents of «ещё».**

1). **still** – всё ещё, по-прежнему;

*He is still sleeping. He still isn't at home.*

2). **yet, so far** – пока ещё, пока что, ещё не;

*He is too young yet to get married. They haven't come yet. They haven't come so far.*

3). **else** – после вопросительных слов; после неопределённых и отрицательных местоимений.

*What else have you seen there? Ask somebody else.*

4). **other** – другой; **another** – ещё один;

*What other English books have you read? May I take another piece of cake?*

5). **more, again** – дополнительно;

*Give me some more apples. Take three more spoons. There are still more. He ate more and more. She became even more beautiful. Read it once more. Read it (once) again. Take as much juice (as many apples) again. He called her again and again.*

6). **only** – ещё только; **as early as** – так давно как;

*It's only 10 o'clock. I only saw him yesterday. We met as early as 1995.*

7). **What now? What else?** - Что ещё? **What next! Indeed!** – Вот ещё!

8). **I should think so!** – Ещё бы! **And how!** – Ещё как!

9). **... like you!** – а ещё ...; *Are you crying? A big boy like you!*

**Ex. 9. Put in the English equivalents of ещё into the sentences.**

1. We haven't beaten the carpets ..... 2. Granny is ..... knitting the sweater. 3. What ..... shall I do to tidy up the room? 4. What ..... clothes are there to iron? 5. Wait a minute, I'll sew ..... button on. 6. – Mom, give me some ..... Christmas cake. – Here you are. Anything .....? 7. Is he ..... in bed? It's time to get up. 8. Can't you water these houseplants? A big girl .....! 9. It isn't time to go to bed ..... . It's ..... early. 10. When ..... will you do a big house-cleaning? 11. – Their flat is always tidy. – ... ..... Mrs. Clark is so particular about cleanliness! 12. – Are you ..... doing the washing? – Yes, I am. I haven't finished it..... 13. – Your son is very tidy. – ..... ! He always leaves his things lying around! 14. I haven't been to this supermarket ..... Is it ..... open? 15. What ..... dishes shall I wash? Are there any .....? 16. How ..... can you polish this wall-unit? 17. If you repaper the bedroom it will look ..... more beautiful. 18. If he takes more exercise he'll become ..... more athletic. 19. We redecorated the house ..... 1991. Now it needs repainting. 20. Iron this shirt ....., please. Put some .....water into the iron. 21. – He is late for his classes again! – .....! He is such a heavy sleeper! 22. I think she is ....at the hairdresser's. Why ..... hasn't she phoned us ....?

**Ex. 10. Translate into English.**

1. Я ещё не устал. Давай сделаем ещё одно упражнение. 2. Он ещё не вернулся, он ещё в университете. 3. Я получил ещё два письма от него. 4. Что ещё он сделал по дому? 5. Спроси кого-нибудь ещё. 6. Она всё ещё спит? Пора её будить. 7. Я прибрал свою комнату ещё



вчера. 8. Какие ещё новости он вам рассказал? 9. Мы познакомились ещё прошлым летом. 10. – Давай устроим генеральную уборку. – Вот ещё! 11. Прочитай текст ещё раз. 12. Он ещё слишком маленький, чтобы ему путешествовать одному. 13. Он ещё не лёг спать, он ещё работает. 14. Какие ещё песни он пел? 15. Мы стучали ещё и ещё, но никто не открыл. 16. Почему ты меня будишь так рано? Ещё только семь часов! 17. – Он в прекрасной форме. – Ещё бы! Он много занимается спортом. 18. Завтра будет ещё теплее. 19. Ты ещё не выгуливал собаку сегодня. 20. Ты опять зовёшь маму? А ещё такая большая девочка!

### Ex. 11. Discussion tasks

1. Comment on the phrase *We are what we eat*.
2. Comment on the phrase *A moment on the lips, a lifetime on the hips*.
3. What can you say for and against our faculty canteen?
4. What do you think of dieting? When can dieting be useful?
5. Why do people become vegetarians? Discuss pluses and minuses of being a vegetarian.
6. Give examples of *healthy food, natural food, junk food*.
7. What traditional food of English-speaking countries would you like to try?
8. What exotic dishes have you tried or would like to try?

### Ex. 12. Conversation tasks

1. You are going to celebrate a holiday with groupmates. Discuss the menu and what food to buy.
2. Try to persuade your friend to become a vegetarian.
3. You don't want to celebrate your birthday at home. Discuss the place where to celebrate it (some café, restaurant, club etc.)
4. Look at the menus and choose the food to your liking. Order the food.
5. You want to cook something yourself. Ask your friend to share some recipe with you and instructions you should follow.
6. Your friend asks you to come with him/her to the faculty canteen. Explain why you won't do it.



**Ex. 14 Listen to the dialogues and learn them by heart.**

**Dialogue 1. AT LUNCH (9)**

Although the correct name for the midday meal is lunch, many English families call it 'dinner'.

- 1
- A You 'must have some 'more chicken.
- B `No, thanks. I'm sup'posed to be slimming
- A 'Can't I tempt you?
- B Well, 'maybe I 'could manage a 'very small piece.
- 2
- A 'Wouldn't you 'like to 'finish 'up the omelette?
- B 'No, `really, thank you. I just 'couldn't 'eat any more.
- A `Come on now. Surely you can manage it.
- B 'No, 'thank you, really. I 'must have 'put on pounds as it is.
- 3
- A A'nother 'piece of 'meat pie?
- B 'No, 'thanks, really. 'I'm on a diet.
- A `Please do. You've 'hardly 'eaten anything.
- B It's de'licious, but I 'don't 'think I ought to.
- 4
- A `Do have the .rest of the .mashed po' tato.
- B 'No, thank you. I've 'had 'too 'much al' ready.
- A Just take it to 'please me.
- B 'O' K, but 'only a small piece or I 'shan't have 'room for any pudding.

**Dialogue 2. TEA-TIME (10)**

Tea is the number one drink in Britain and the average person has about four cups of tea a day. In times of disaster or tragedy 'a nice cup of tea' is offered as a kind of universal cure.

- 1
- A 'Would you 'care for a 'cup of tea?
- B 'Only if `you're having one.
- A 'Do you 'take 'milk and sugar?
- B A 'dash of milk and 'two `lumps, please.
- 2
- A I ex'pect you could 'do with a 'cup of tea, couldn't you?
- B I'd 'rather 'have a 'cup of coffee, if you `don't mind.
- A 'Milk and `sugar?
- B A 'milky one wi'thout `sugar, please.
- 3
- A 'How about a 'nice 'cup of tea before you .go?
- B Yes, I'd love one.
- A 'How do you like it?
- B A strong one with 'three `spoons for me, please.
- 4
- A 'Would you 'like a 'cup of tea?
- B 'Only if it's 'not 'too much trouble.
- A 'Do you 'like it with 'milk and sugar?
- B 'Not 'too 'much milk and 'just 'half a `spoonful, please.

## ADDITIONAL TEXTS

### TEXT 1. THE PERFECT FLATMATE

**Read and translate the text and do the task.**

When I was 21, I came to live in London. I shared a damp basement flat with a beautiful ex-art student from Brighton. Her name was Sam. She had long brown hair and a slim figure that I was madly jealous of. She ate three chocolate bars for breakfast every morning.

I used to lie in bed looking at her eating and getting dressed, wondering how she could possibly consume so much sugar without losing her teeth, her figure or her complexion. She'd put on her make up in under a minute, throw on whatever clothes happened to be lying around the room, and rush off to work looking like a model on the cover of a fashion magazine. Like me, she was just an art teacher in a secondary school.

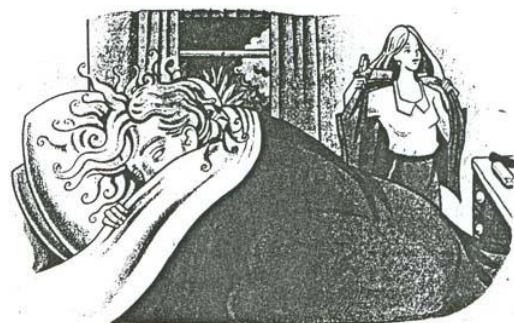
I, on the other hand, used to put on weight if I even smiled at a bar of chocolate. I'd already lost several upper teeth, my face was spotty and I looked like a heavy-weight boxer whatever I wore. My morning reaction to Sam was always the same. I'd shut my eyes, pull the blankets over my head and force myself back to sleep. I knew that I really ought to get up too, and make use of the early start to have a shower, iron my blouse, polish my shoes, paint my nails and eat something for breakfast.

But I have never been what you'd call a morning person. The teaching job I was doing at the time was the only period of my life, thank goodness, that I've had to be anywhere by 8.30 a.m. Anyway, I needed a few extra comforting dreams after the shock of seeing Sam looking so beautiful. Going back to sleep to shut everything out and using my bed as a favourite means of retreat, became an addiction – my worst habit.

Of course, I overslept and was late for work every single day of the week. Eventually I was told if things didn't improve I might be given the sack. So I gave up my job and got married instead. I blame it all on Sam and her beauty.

**1. Mark the sentences as true, false or not given in the text.**

1. The girls shared a two-room flat in the basement.
2. Sam didn't do anything to look attractive.
3. Sam worked as a model in a fashion magazine.
4. The narrator went to sleep again because she was shocked by Sam's behaviour.
5. The narrator's worst habit was that she tried to hide from her problems
6. She stopped working as a teacher because she was fired.
7. "The Perfect Flatmate" means Sam was an ideal flatmate.



### TEXT 2. EXAM FITNESS

**Read and translate the text and do the tasks.**

Research has shown that success in exams depends on physical as well as intellectual fitness, and while there is no substitute for studying, keeping yourself in good physical shape will help you to make the most of what you learnt.

Many people believe that there are two kinds of students: the fit, sun-tanned type with bulging muscles and a low IQ, and the weak, pasty academics, who wear thick glasses and pass all their exams. The implication is that students are either intellectual or physical, which is not in fact the case. Recent studies have found that students who take regular exercise generally do better at school than those who don't.

For example, twenty minutes of aerobic exercise will immediately bring about an improved performance in IQ tests, a reduction in stress, improved levels of alertness and concentration, faster, clearer, more creative thinking, an improvement in your memory.

So, try to do some aerobic exercise at least three times a week. But remember, as exercise peps you up, it's better not to do it near bedtime. It could cause insomnia. And on the exam day, exercise before your exam starts, preferably outdoors.

Our bodies and minds are programmed to run to a particular schedule and our mental and physical abilities change dramatically during the day. For example, concentration, memory and the ability to work with our hands, all reach a peak in the afternoon, and fall to a low in the middle of the night. Our body clocks are set and kept in sync by daylight which also keeps us alert. Confusing your body clock will make you less alert and less effective. Lack of sleep will not stop a surgeon from operating successfully or a pilot from landing a jet, but it will affect a student's ability to read a book and remember things well.

#### **Some points to remember:**

- If you have to get someone to wake you up every morning, you are not getting enough sleep.
- You should sleep at regular times so as not to confuse your body clock.
- You must get enough daylight. Study in a well-lit room, preferably near the window.
- The best times to study are between 9 and 12 noon, and late afternoon between 4 and 6.
- The worst times are after lunch, because your body clock goes into a dip between 1 and 3 p.m., and also late at night. Studying at night will disrupt your body clock.
- A short nap in the afternoon will help you study and could result in an improved performance.

#### **Final Points**

- Don't study more than four or five hours a day on top of your school or other work.
- Whatever you tell yourself or other people, studying with the TV or radio on adversely affects your ability to absorb what you're trying to learn. The same goes for any background music which competes for your attention. Choose music you find pleasant, not incredible.
- Study with a friend – it helps you to feel you aren't suffering alone.

#### **Mark the sentences as true, false or not given in the text.**

1. The author doubts that all the students can be divided into intellectual or physical types.
2. Physical exercise always causes insomnia.
3. Daylight makes us awake and active.
4. Students who take regular exercise are more popular with their classmates.
5. Studying at night reduces stress.
6. Taking a nap in the afternoon can do you good.
7. It's better to do some creative work after 11 p.m.
8. Twenty minutes of aerobic exercise a day will give you bulging muscles.

### **TEXT 3. HEALTHY EATING**

#### **Easy tips for planning a healthy diet & sticking to it**

#### **Read and translate the text and comment on it.**

Healthy eating is not about strict diets, staying unrealistically thin, or depriving yourself of the foods you love. Rather, it's about feeling great, having more energy, stabilizing your mood, and keeping yourself as healthy as possible – all of which can be achieved by learning some nutrition basics and using them in a way that works for you.

#### **Healthy eating tip 1: Set yourself up for success**

To set yourself up for success, think about planning a healthy diet as a number of small, manageable steps rather than one big dramatic change.

**Healthy eating tip 2: Think of water and exercise as food groups in your diet.**

Water helps flush our systems of waste products and toxins; lack of it causes tiredness, low energy, and headaches.

Find something active that you like to do and add it to your day. The benefits of lifelong exercise are abundant and regular exercise may even motivate you to make healthy food choices a habit.

**Healthy eating tip 3: Moderation is a key**

How much is a moderate amount? The goal of healthy eating is to develop a diet that you can maintain for life, not just a few weeks or months, or until you've hit your ideal weight. We all need a balance of carbohydrates, protein, fat, fiber, vitamins, and minerals to sustain a healthy body.

Use smaller plates, think about serving sizes in realistic terms, and start small. Your serving of meat, fish, or chicken should be the size of a deck of cards, and half a cup of mashed potato, rice, or pasta is about the size of a traditional light bulb.

**Healthy eating tip 4: It's not just what you eat, it's how you eat**

Take time to chew your food and enjoy mealtimes. Chew your food slowly, savoring every bite. Listen to your body. Ask yourself if you are really hungry, or have a glass of water to see if you are thirsty instead of hungry. During a meal, stop eating before you feel full. It actually takes a few minutes for your brain to tell your body that it has had enough food, so eat slowly.

*Eating in front of the TV or computer often leads to mindless overeating.*

Eat breakfast, and eat smaller meals throughout the day. A healthy breakfast can jumpstart your metabolism, and eating small, healthy meals throughout the day (rather than the standard three large meals) keeps your energy up and your metabolism going. Avoid eating at night. Try to eat dinner earlier in the day and then fast for 14-16 hours until breakfast the next morning. Eat only when you're most active and give your digestive system a long break each day.

**Healthy eating tip 5: Fill up on colorful fruits and vegetables**

Try to eat a rainbow of fruits and vegetables every day and with every meal – the brighter the better. Colorful, deeply colored fruits and vegetables contain higher concentrations of vitamins, minerals, and antioxidants – and different colors provide different benefits, so eat a variety.

*It's important to get vitamins from food – not pills.*

**Healthy eating tip 6: Eat more healthy carbs and whole grains**

Choose healthy carbohydrates and fiber sources, especially whole grains, for long lasting energy. Experiment with different grains to find your favorites. Avoid refined foods such as breads, pastas, and breakfast cereals that are not whole grain.

**Healthy eating tip 7: Enjoy healthy fats & avoid unhealthy fats**

Good sources of healthy fat are needed to nourish your brain, heart, and cells, as well as your hair, skin, and nails. Foods rich in certain omega-3 fats are particularly important.

Add olive oil, nuts (like almonds, hazelnuts) and seeds to your healthy diet. Healthy fats are found in fatty fish such as salmon, herring, anchovies, sardines. Other sources are unheated sunflower seeds, corn, soybean, walnuts.

Reduce or eliminate from your diet red meat and whole milk dairy products, *trans fats*, found in some margarines, crackers, candies, cookies, snack foods, fried foods, baked goods and other processed foods.

**Healthy eating tip 8: Don't forget about protein**

Protein gives us the energy to get up and go – and keep going. Lack of protein in our diet can slow growth, reduce muscle mass, lower immunity, and weaken the heart and respiratory system.

Try different types of protein. Whether or not you are a vegetarian, try different protein sources – such as beans, nuts, seeds, peas and soy products. Avoid salted or sugary nuts and refried beans.

### Healthy eating tip 9: Limit sugar and salt

Sugar causes energy ups and downs and can add to health and weight problems. Unfortunately, reducing the amount of candy, cakes, and desserts we eat is only part of the solution. Often you may not even be aware of the amount of sugar you're consuming each day. Large amounts of sugar can be hidden in foods such as bread, canned soups and vegetables, fast food and ketchup.

Avoid sugary drinks. One small bottle of fizzy drink has about 10 teaspoons of sugar in it, more than the daily recommended limit! Eat naturally sweet food such as fruit, peppers, or natural peanut butter to satisfy your sweet tooth.

### Sing the song.

### JUNK FOOD

Junk food, junk food  
That's all my brother eats  
Burgers, chips and a fizzy drink  
And then a bag of sweets

He doesn't like chicken  
And he doesn't like peas  
He thinks lettuce is disgusting  
And he's not fond of cheese

He won't eat tomatoes  
And he won't eat rice  
Salad makes him say things  
That aren't very nice

Junk food, junk food  
That's all my brother eats  
Burgers, chips and a fizzy drink  
And then a bag of sweets

He doesn't like potatoes  
He never eats beans  
He really hates cabbage  
And mushrooms make him scream

He can't stand apples  
He doesn't like plums  
The only fruit he ever has  
Is strawberry chewing gum!

Junk food, junk food  
That's all my brother eats  
Burgers, chips and a fizzy drink  
And then a bag of sweets



## TOPIC 4. STUDY

Read, translate and reproduce the text.

### LEARNING A FOREIGN LANGUAGE

'Why do 'people 'learn 'foreign 'languages? They 'do it | for communi'cation or 'business, they 'want to 'read | 'foreign 'books | in the o'iginal | for 'pleasure | or to im'prove their pro'fessional 'skills. 'Learning 'foreign 'languages | 'helps the 'student | to under'stand 'other 'peoples, their 'culture | and 'ways of 'life. It de'velops perso,nality, 'broadens the 'outlook | and per'fects the 'student's 'knowledge | of 'his or 'her | 'own 'mother 'tongue.

'Learning 'English | or 'any 'other 'foreign 'language| 'takes a 'lot of 'time and 'effort. It in'volves 'hard 'work | and a 'lot of 'memori'zation, but can 'also be a 'lot of 'fun. Pro'nunci'ation | is a 'weak 'point of all be'ginners. There's 'often some 'palatali'zation | or de'voicing of 'consonants or the 'wrong articu'lation of 'vowels. To pro'nonce the 'sounds dis'tinctly and 'beautifully | 'students should 'listen to a 'great 'number of 'tapes, 'imitating the 'native 'speakers | and 'learning 'passages | by 'heart.

'Sometimes pho'netics 'comes 'easy, but 'students have 'problems with 'spelling | or 'grammar. 'Learning 'grammar 'rules, 'doing 'exercises | and 'writing 'frequent 'tests, may 'seem con'fusing and 'boring, but there are 'poems, 'songs, 'acting | and 'games | which can 'help 'students | to 'get 'rid of their mis'takes | in the 'shortest 'possible 'time.

'Good 'speech habits | are 'very im'portant 'too. To de'velop 'them | 'one should 'use 'every 'chance to 'speak English. At 'first be'ginners may 'feel em'barrassed | or 'tongue-tied, but 'then they'll be'come 'more and 'more 'confident | and 'happy | to be 'able to ex'press themselves | in a'nother 'tongue.

Of 'course there are 'students and 'students. 'Some are 'both 'capable and 'diligent. They 'hang on the 'teacher's 'every 'word, 'take 'notes of 'everything, that may be'come 'useful | and 'sit up 'late to pre'pare for their 'classes. They 'never 'stay a'way from 'classes | without a 'good 'excuse | and 'try 'not to 'lag be'hind the 'group.

'Others 'aren't so 'bright and 'hardworking. 'Sometimes they are 'too 'lazy | and 'slap-dash | to pre'pare 'properly; they 'miss 'lectures, 'cut 'classes in 'English | and 'work by 'fits and 'starts.

'But | "no 'pains, 'no 'gains" | and it's 'only 'natural | you must 'work 'hard | to 'make 'progress in 'English, 'master the 'language | and be'come a 'true pro'fessional.

### VOCABULARY

1. to learn; to study; to find out; to get to know;

to go to school; to be at university; to do (take) a subject; to leave (finish) school;

fresher; first-year student, in the first year, junior student; senior student;

to graduate from; graduate; postgraduate; term paper; graduation thesis (theses); to get a diploma;

principal; dean; deputy dean; dean's office; monitor; group register; list of (students);

to mark the attendance; on (according to) the timetable; student's record book; library card;

exercise book; rough copy (rough essay); note; doctor's note;

holiday; holidays; to be on holiday; vacation;

term; semester (AmE); academic year; school year; examination period; entrance exams;

to have a lesson (a class, an exam) **in** English, to have a lecture (a seminar) **on** Psychology;

to take a preliminary course; to do research work.

2. to take a (final) test in a subject (on Lesson 10, on articles); to take one's exam;

to pass one's exam; to give (get) a pass in; to fail (an exam) in a subject;

to fail to do smth; *My memory (nerve, courage etc) failed me.*

to re-sit an exam (BrE); to repeat a year; to rely on one's memory;

to give, take a tutorial; to take (have) extra classes; spare (pen, time);  
to lag behind (the group) in a subject; to catch up with the group; to help smb with smth;  
in class; to stay after classes; to be at home in grammar; to speak fluently; to lack fluency;  
to do (get on) well in English; to be good at; to understand; to realise.

3. to prepare for; to get ready for; to read for; to look up the word in the dictionary;  
to repeat; to revise; to review; to go over again; to brush up on; to look through;  
practice; to practise; to work on/at; to translate from Russian into English; in translation; in writing;  
in written form; orally; homework; to mark (to correct); to underline;  
to get (give) an excellent (a good, satisfactory, bad) mark;  
to get (give) a five / "five"; to get (give) a mark in a subject / for a test, dictation, essay;  
to make a bad (serious, careless) mistake; a slip of the tongue; a slip of the pen; a misprint.

#### 4. Translate and explain the proverbs. Find Russian equivalents. Learn and use them.

1. Live and learn. 2. It's never too late to learn. 3. Little knowledge is a dangerous thing.  
4. To know everything is to know nothing. 5. Soon learnt, soon forgotten. 6. Practice makes perfect.  
7. Never put off till tomorrow what you can do today. 8. Lost time cannot be found again.  
9. Beggars can't be choosers. 10. You can take the horse to the water, but you cannot make him drink.  
11. All work and no play makes Jack a dull boy.

#### Usage Note 1: know, get to know, find out, learn, study.

1. **know** – знать;

*I've known Jack for fourteen years. She knows how to use a computer.*

2. **get to know** – узнать (особенно случайно); **find out** – выяснить;

*I use my dictionary to find out the correct pronunciation. During the visit we got to know something about the American way of life. I got to know her many years ago.*

3. **learn** – узнать (книжн.); учить, выучить, научиться (особенно практически);

*We learnt the news. I'm trying to learn the new words. He learnt to drive last year.*

4. **study** – учить, учиться (в школе, колледже или университете); изучать;

*Gina is studying engineering at London University. He studies to be a lawyer.*

*He studied the behaviour of monkeys in the wild. I haven't studied these papers yet.*

#### Usage Note 2: holiday, holidays, vacation.

1. **holiday** – праздник;

*The 4<sup>th</sup> of July is an American national holiday. Halloween is not a public holiday in the UK.*

2. **holiday (holidays)** – каникулы, отпуск (брит.); (амер. = vacation);

*The school holiday (holidays) started on Wednesday. She has been on holiday for three weeks.*

*They are away on holiday. They went to the Mediterranean for their holiday.*

3. **vacation** – студенческие каникулы.

*They are on vacation for the next two weeks.*

#### Usage Note 3: repeat, revise, review, brush up, go over again.

1. **repeat** – повторить в неизменном виде, сделать еще раз;

*He repeated his question. If you fail the test you'll have to repeat it. Repeat the words after me.*

2. **revise / review** – повторять, перечитывать учебный материал;

*He won't go with us, he's revising before the exams.*

*Review the words, please, we are going to have a dictation.*



4. **brush up (on smth)** – освежать в памяти, совершенствовать;  
*Brush up on your dialogues and reproduce them.*

5. **go over** – перечитывать.  
*Maybe if I go over these documents I'll understand what they mean.*

### **5. Classroom English**

**I.** Let's get down to business (work). OK, why don't we get started?

How is the homework? Any problems?

Let's take a look at it together and see if we can figure it out. What do you have for number 1?

Does everyone agree? Don't all answer at once, one at a time, please. Answer in turn, will you?  
That'll do. OK, let's move on now. Let's put this away. Let's work on this reading now.

What's the English for «декан»? What's the Russian for “dean”?

Can I say (=put) it like this? How do you spell this word? Will you say it again, please?

Shall I read (begin / answer the questions)?

**II.** Put up (put down) your hands. Follow in your books. Look at your books.

Split (=divide) into pairs. Act out the dialogue. Act (read) the part of Mike. Change your parts.

Put some feeling into it. Keep close to the text. Reproduce the text. Retell the text. Recite the poem.

Ask questions **to** the sentence. Ask questions **on /about** the text, passage, paragraph.

Come to the front. Come to the blackboard. Step (move) to one side.

Clean the blackboard. Rub off (out) this word from the blackboard.

I'll give you out some worksheets now. Write down the date, please.

Leave a margin on the left-hand side. Number your sentences, please.

Your time is up. Don't forget to put your names on your papers and give them to me.

Hand in your tests, please. Collect the papers.

**III.** Is it clear? Is everybody ready? Has everyone finished? Are you through with it?

Let's settle down now. Let's quiet down now. Quiet!

Don't cheat. Don't tell him the answer. Don't help him. Do it by yourself (on your own).

Don't go so fast. Take your time. Listen carefully. Speak up. Mind your pronunciation, please.

That's a good point. That's a good way to answer the question.

Nice try, but I think there's a better answer. I know it's hard work but you are making progress.

I'll help you but it's your responsibility. You've got to keep on trying.

How long is it before the bell? The bell has gone. Just a minute! Hold on!

Let's call it quits for today. Let's call it a day.

### **MEMORY WORK**

#### **The More You Study ...**

The more you study, the more you know.

The more you know, the more you forget.

The more you forget, the less you know.

The less you know, the less you forget.

The less you forget, the more you know.

Why study?

#### **Positive Thinking**

The little boy, who says, “I'll try,”

Will climb the mountaintop.

The little boy, who says, “I can't,”

Will at the bottom stop.

## EXERCISES

### Ex. 1. Find English equivalents of the following words and phrases in the text.

1. слабое место всех начинающих; 2. это развивает личность; 3. требует много времени и усилий; 4. пропускать лекции; 5. заучивание грамматических правил; 6. выразить свои мысли на другом языке; 7. в самое короткое время; 8. делать успехи в английском языке; 9. способные и трудолюбивые; 10. заучивание отрывков наизусть; 11. для общения или бизнеса; 12. чтобы произносить звуки чётко и красиво; 13. без труда не вытащишь рыбку из пруда; 14. чувствовать себя смущённым и косноязычным; 15. овладеть языком; 16. расширяет кругозор; 17. оно предполагает тяжёлый труд; 18. частые контрольные; 19. палатализация или оглушение согласных; 20. кажется трудным и скучным; 21. избавиться от ошибок; 22. запоминание; 23. понимать другие народы; 24. легко даётся; 25. следует слушать большое количество плёнок; 26. совершенствует знания студентов; 27. становятся более уверенными и счастливыми; 28. неправильная артикуляция гласных; 29. хорошие разговорные навыки; 30. ловят каждое слово учителя; 31. отсутствуют на занятиях без уважительной причины; 32. слишком ленивые и безответственные; 33. засиживаются допоздна, чтобы подготовиться к занятиям; 34. читать иностранные книги в оригинале; 35. их культуру и образ жизни; 36. подражая носителям языка; 37. следует использовать любую возможность поговорить на английском языке; 38. конечно, студенты бывают разные; 39. у студентов проблемы с правописанием или грамматикой; 40. произношение; 41. также может быть весело; 42. всё записывают; 43. стать настоящими профессионалами; 44. чтобы их развить; 45. стараются не отстать от группы; 46. улучшить свои профессиональные навыки; 47. работают урывками; 48. это только естественно; 49. родной язык; 50. прогуливают занятия.

### Ex. 2. Ask all kinds of questions about the text.

### Ex. 3. Correct the statements on the text if necessary.

1. People learn foreign languages to read books in translation. 2. To develop good speech habits you should write frequent tests. 3. Missing lectures develops personality and broadens the outlook. 4. To pronounce your sounds distinctly and beautifully you should mind your articulation and avoid palatalization and devoicing of consonants. 5. Learning grammar rules is always a lot of fun. 6. Students feel embarrassed when they are able to express themselves in another tongue. 7. Diligent students often stay away from classes without a good excuse, they sit up late playing cards and drinking beer. 8. Doing a lot of exercises and writing tests can help students to get rid of their grammar mistakes in the shortest possible time. 9. Knowing alphabet by heart is a weak point of all beginners. 10. It's only natural you must work by fits and starts to master the language. 11. Students should never imitate native speakers, but develop their own way of speaking. 12. Learning languages always comes easy. 13. There are different kinds of students. 14. It takes a lot of time and effort to become a professional. 15. If you hang on the teacher's every word and take notes of everything that may become useful, you are sure to lag behind the group. 16. No brains, no gains.

### Ex. 4. Complete the sentences in your own way.

1. Why do people ...? 2. ... develops personality and broadens the outlook . 3. ... should use every chance to ... 4. ... confusing and boring. 5. ... can be a lot of fun. 6. ... takes a lot of time and effort. 7. ... in the shortest possible time. 8. ... to get rid of ... 9. I feel tongue-tied when ... 10. ... sit up late to ... 11. ... lag behind ... 12. It's only natural ... 13. ... involves a lot of ... 14. I think ... is ... weak point, while ... is ... strong point. 15. At first ... 16. ... without a good excuse. 17. ... happy to be able to ... 18. Sometimes ... too lazy to ... 19. ... to make progress in ... 20. ... for communication.

### Ex. 5. Insert *learn, teach, study, find out* in the required form.

1. Nick's got a bad mark today. Yesterday he stayed away from classes and (not) .....the homework. 2. He ..... his dog to do tricks. 3. Live and ..... 4. Let's go to the timetable and .....if we'll have a lecture on History tomorrow. 5. It takes time to .....how to do things properly. 6. Let's .....the map and find the shortest way.

7. We ..... many interesting things at the lecture on Psychology. 8. – Excuse me, may I see the dean? – Wait a minute, I'll ..... 9. Knitting can ..... your patience. 10. Frank is quick to ..... 11. The clerk ..... our papers carefully. 12. What second language are you going to .....in the third year? 13. He used the Internet to ..... more about the Irish and Scottish culture and traditions. 14. He can .....your son how to play chess. 15. We haven't yet ..... if they arrived safely. 16. Life .....him not to trust the first impression. 17. He is too lazy to .....properly. 18. Her dream was to .....to play the violin. 19. .... the rule thoroughly, ask questions if you have any and then .....the rule by heart. 20. .... the time, please.

**Ex. 6. Answer the questions.**

**A.** 1. What year do you study in? Are you a fresher? 2. What school did you go to? 3. What subjects do you take at university? 4. What language did you learn at school? 5. Did you take a preliminary course before entering the university? 6. When did you leave school? 7. When will you graduate from the university? 8. What must you present at your final exams? 9. What will you get after graduating? 10. Do you plan to become a postgraduate? 11. Have you ever talked to the principal? 12. Have you ever been to the dean's office? What did you go there for? 13. Who marks the attendance of students? 14. What must a monitor do? 15. What information is there in your group register? 16. What classes do you have today according to your timetable? What did you have yesterday? What classes do you have tomorrow? 17. When do you need your student's record book? 18. When do you use a rough copy? 19. What must you bring if you've stayed away from classes? 20. When does the academic year begin? When does it end? 21. How many terms do you have? 22. When do you have examination periods? 23. When do you have vacations? How long do they last? 24. How many holidays did you have at school? 25. Would you like to do any research work?

**B.** 1. How many final tests did you take during your first examination period? In what subjects? 2. What exams did you take? 3. Did you pass all your exams? 4. Do you know anybody who failed at the exams (in some subjects) during the winter examination period and had to re-sit them? 5. Was it easy for you to pass winter exams? 6. Do you think your summer examination period will be more difficult? 7. Can you repeat a year at our university? 8. Do you rely on your memory? Has your memory or your nerve ever failed you? 9. When must your teacher give you a tutorial? Did you take any tutorials before your winter exams? 10. Have you ever taken extra classes? What for? 11. Do you have a spare pen, exercise book, rubber? 12. Do you have a lot of spare time? Why or why not? 13. Have you or any of your group-mates ever lagged behind the group? Why? 14. What should you do to catch up with the group? 15. Do you help your group-mates when they have problems? 16. Do you ever stay in the university after classes? What for? 17. Do you speak English fluently or do you lack fluency in your speech? 18. What are you or your groupmates at home in? 19. What are you or your friends good at? (in general)

**C.** 1. How much time does it take you to prepare for your English lesson? 2. How long does it take you to get ready to leave your home in the morning? 3. Did you have to read much for your seminars on History? Did you read very carefully or just look through the necessary literature? 4. What do you do when you come across an unfamiliar word in the English text? 5. Do you repeat texts after the speaker many times when you learn them? 6. How do you revise for your grammar tests? 7. Does your teacher give you time to review the rules or brush up on your dialogues before answering in class? 8. What do you do if you haven't understood the text after reading it? 9. What is the best way to practise your English vocabulary? 10. How do you work on your phonetics? 11. Which, do you think, is more useful: to translate from Russian into English or vice versa? 12. Is it more interesting for you to read English books in translation or in the original? Which is easier? 13. Do you do many exercises in written form? Are you doing this exercise in writing or orally? 14. Is your homework usually big? 15. How do your teachers mark your written work: do they correct your mistakes or do they tick (✓) or underline your mistakes? 16. Do you usually make bad or careless mistakes in your tests? 17. Do you often have slips of the tongue or of the pen?

**Ex. 7. Paraphrase using the vocabulary.**

**A** 1. David is a student. 2. Eddy got a bad mark at his exam. 3. She speaks very slowly. 4. Sam couldn't remember some dates at his History exam. 5. She had to take her exam in Linguistics for the second time. 6. He's been ill and now he doesn't know many things that his groupmates know. Now he will have to work hard to be as good as the rest of the group. 7. Meg didn't attend her English classes last week. 8. He has grammar at his fingertips. 9. Bob doesn't believe that he is able to remember anything properly. 10. Cathy tried to find the meaning of this word in the dictionary. 11. He has no problems with his spelling. 12. We don't have classes for two weeks at the end of January. 13. Emily is good at French. 14. They listen to the teacher very carefully. 15. Ray doesn't work systematically. 16. Mary has difficulties when she tries to speak English. 17. Write these exercises, please. 18. Kevin got good marks at his winter exams.

**B** 1. What does this word mean in Russian? 2. Have you finished your homework yet? 3. Speak louder. 4. Answer one after another, please. 5. Don't hurry. 6. Look into your books while your groupmates are reading the text. 7. Let's begin to work. 8. Give me your tests, please. 9. How much time is left before the bell? 10. Must I begin to read? 11. Will you repeat, please? 12. You may stop here. 13. Reproduce the text in details. 14. How shall I write this word? 15. Don't look into your seatmate's test. 16. Reproduce this poem, please

**Ex. 8. Use the proper article if necessary.**

1. ....seminar will begin at .....half past eight. 2. My friend Lily is .....monitor of our group. 3. Tomorrow we are having .....class in ....Phonetics. 4. Do you like .....Spanish? Would you like to study .....Spanish language in .....third year? 5. Do .....exercise in .....written form. 6. We were to read .....text five on .....page twenty-one. 7. – Where will you have .....lunch? – At .... university canteen. 8. Some students feel ill at ease when they speak at ..... blackboard, in front of .....class. 9. I've been looking for .....dictionary everywhere, but can't find it. 10. Do you find ..... timetable convenient? 11. Do you always have .....time for ...relaxation after..... classes? 12. – Are you through? – Not yet. I didn't think.....essay would take so much time. 13. Ann forgot .....simplest things at her exam. I guess it's ..... result of .....sleepless night. 14. Where are you going for .....vacation? 15. – What mark did you get for ..... test? – I got .....four. 16. You study too much. You should have .....fun from .....time to .....time. 17. – Is your father still on ..... holiday? – No, he's back to ..... work already. 18. Go to ..... front, please, clean ..... blackboard and write ...exercise twelve. 19. Ask ... questions on ... text three. 20. Phil will have to re-sit .... oral test in .... Phonetics .... next Monday.

**Ex. 9. Choose the right preposition or adverb.**

1. Jim is good (at, in, of) memorizing foreign words. 2. Can you help me (at, with, to) this problem? 3. I wasn't present (at, in, on) the lesson because I mixed up the timetable. 4. We have lectures (on, in, at) Linguistics twice a week. 5. My brother is (in, on, at) his fourth year (at, of, on) the university. 6. None of us got good marks (at, for, in) this translation. 7. I've been revising (to, for, at) the test (for, since, in) morning. 8. Mike's lagged (up, down, behind) the group. 9. He did well (at, in, through) all his exams. 10. Why were you absent (in, at, from) the lesson yesterday? 11. I took four tests (at, in, of) different subjects, but I got through. 12. Do you rely (at, on, for) your memory? 13. Follow (at, in, through) your books. 14. Do it (by, for, on) yourself. 15. How long is it (for, since, before) the bell? 16. Is he good (in, at, on) Psychology? 17. Have you found (off, out, in) what lessons (on, according to, affording to) the timetable we have today? 18. We had a test (in, on, at) articles yesterday. 19. Don't answer all (at, on, for) once, one (at, in, for) a time, please. 20. If you don't know the word, look it (for, at, up) (in, on, at) the dictionary. 21. Chris does well (on, at, in) French, doesn't he? 22. Let's stay (after, before, at) classes. 23. Shall I translate (for, from, of) Russian (to, in, into) English to practise (in, at, -) the English vocabulary? 24. Answer (in, on, at) turn, will you? 25. If you want the teacher to ask you put (up, down, away) your hand. 26. Are you (up, down, through) with your homework? 27. I don't hear you, speak (up, down, to), please. 28. Ask questions (to, on, for) sentence three and (to, on, for) the whole text. 29. Brush (up, down, through) (at, on, in) the poem. 30. Let's listen (to, on, -) the radio, shall we?

**Ex. 10. Translate into English. Use the notes to the vocabulary.**

1. Дома повторите грамматические правила. Завтра у вас контрольная работа. 2. Вы выяснили, какие занятия у нас в понедельник? 3. Майк узнал, что его друг поступил в университет. 4. – Я не могу выучить этот текст. – Давай повторим его снова. 5. Повторите свой вопрос, пожалуйста. Я не расслышал. 6. В колледже Джуди узнала много нового и интересного. 7. Повтори свой телефон, пожалуйста, я запишу его в блокнот. 8. Я знаю её двоюродного брата уже 7 лет. 9. Мы узнали об этом вчера. 10. Просмотрите свои записи перед тем, как ответить на мои вопросы. 11. Мы ещё не изучили все документы и не можем сказать вам ничего определённого. 12. Если ты не сдашь этот экзамен в третий раз, тебе придётся повторить год. 13. Он будет изучать лингвистику на втором курсе. 14. Ты умеешь водить машину?

**Ex. 11. Translate into English.**

**A.** 1. Мой дедушка – пожилой человек и не всегда может полагаться на свою память. 2. Сэм работал урывками, пропустил много занятий без уважительной причины и отстал от группы. Теперь ему придётся много заниматься и ходить на дополнительные занятия, чтобы сдать все зачёты и экзамены. 3. Если ты поможешь Кейт с грамматикой, возможно, она догонит группу и хорошо напишет тест. 4. Он говорит так быстро и нечётко, что мы ничего не можем понять. 5. Фонетика – её слабое место. Ей нужно слушать английскую речь и учить стихи, тексты и диалоги, подражая носителям языка. 6. У него в тесте нет грубых ошибок, только опiski и ошибки по невнимательности. 7. Он ходил на подготовительные курсы в начале июля? – Да, это помогло ему подготовиться к экзаменам. 8. Моя старшая сестра училась в педагогическом университете на факультете иностранных языков и закончила его в прошлом году. 9. Учительская работа требует много времени и усилий, не так ли? 10. Когда пойдешь на экзамен, не забудь взять зачетную книжку. 11. Какие новые предметы вы изучаете во втором семестре? 12. Что у нас по расписанию? – Сегодня у нас два занятия по английскому и лекция по истории. Завтра лекция по экологии, семинар по русскому и физкультура.

**B.** 1. На нашем факультете есть вечернее отделение. Занятия там начинаются в половине шестого. 2. Поездки за границу расширяют кругозор и помогают понять образ жизни других народов. 3. Переведите упражнение с русского на английский язык. Если вы встретите незнакомые слова, посмотрите их в словаре. Сделайте упражнение письменно, не торопитесь и следите за правописанием. 4. У него большие успехи в испанском языке. У него прекрасное произношение, в грамматике он как у себя дома. Он почти не делает ошибок, но ему не хватает беглости в речи. Он использует любую возможность попрактиковаться в испанском. 5. Она могла получить пятёрку на экзамене по французскому, но её подвела память. 6. Знание языков развивает личность. 7. Все студенты вашей группы сдавали экзамен вчера? – Да, но не все сдали. Мой сосед по парте провалился и ему придётся пересдавать его через неделю. – Не удивительно. Он слишком ленивый и безответственный, чтобы хорошо учиться. 8. Староста ушла в деканат за журналом. 9. Когда у нас будет следующая сессия? – Она начнется в середине июня и продлится до начала июля. Потом у нас будут каникулы. 10. Мне надо исправить ошибки в диктанте. А ты что получил за диктант?

**C.** 1. Студенты открыли тетради, начертили поля, написали число и начали делать задание. Они задавали вопросы к тексту. Учитель попросил нумеровать вопросы и не задавать несколько вопросов к одному предложению. Через полчаса прозвенел звонок и учитель собрал тетради. 2. – Мне пересказывать текст? – Да, и следи за произношением и интонацией, пожалуйста. 3. Ну что ж, давайте начнем. Давайте посмотрим на вопросы на странице 21. Как ты ответила на первый вопрос, Джилл? Все согласны? Неплохая попытка, но, мне кажется, можно ответить лучше. Вот это хорошо. Давайте пойдём дальше. 4. Это ясно? Все готовы? Успокойтесь, пожалуйста. Как домашнее задание? Есть проблемы? Тише. Давайте посмотрим вместе и попробуем разобраться. 5. Я знаю, это трудно, но у вас уже есть успехи. Я помогу вам, но ответственность лежит на вас. 6. Хорошо. На этом закончим. Минутку! Подождите! Не забудьте подписать работы и сдать их мне. До понедельника. Хороших вам выходных. Берегите себя.

### Ex. 12. Act out the role-play.

Divide into two parts. Half of the group will be heads of different educational institutions. The other half will be applicants choosing the best way of learning languages.

The heads of schools, colleges or universities present them to the public speaking about: the name of the establishment, where it is situated, how much the fee is, what subjects the students study, what methods of teaching are used, what working and living conditions the students have, who can enter etc.

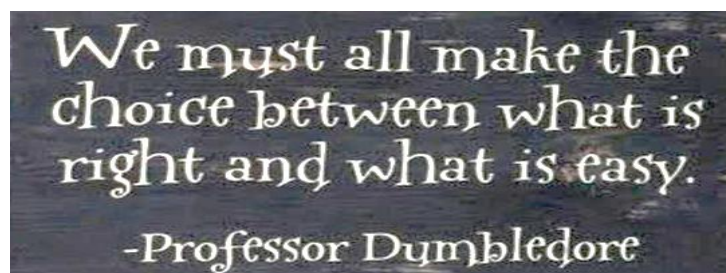
The applicants walk about, listen, ask questions and decide where they would like to study.

### Ex. 13. Discussion tasks

1. All university exams should be written, it would be less stressful for students.
2. We'd better study in the second shift.
3. Students shouldn't have any homework.
4. What is the best way of learning foreign languages?
5. Compare school and university studying.
6. Compare the professions of a teacher and an interpreter.

### Ex. 14. Conversation tasks

1. Discuss your student life problems. Talk about your progress in studies, your work and living conditions, relations with your classmates, your free time etc.
2. You've lagged behind the group. Ask your groupmate to help you.
3. You aren't satisfied with your curriculum, discuss what would you like to change in it.
4. Your friend is afraid to speak English to foreigners. Give him some advice.
5. The dean has told that all the students of the faculty should wear uniforms. You express your opinion about it.



## ADDITIONAL TEXTS

### Read and translate the text.

#### TEXT 1. OUR UNIVERSITY

The Chelyabinsk State Pedagogical University is one of the oldest educational establishments in the city. It was founded in 1935 and is famous for its high academic standards. Every year hundreds of young men and women enter different faculties of the university. There are about three and a half thousand full-time students at the university. In addition there are part-time students who study by correspondence.

The faculty of Foreign Languages has three departments: English, French and German. The course runs for five years. Those who wish to enter, hand in their applications at the end of June or at the beginning of July. The applicants may take a preliminary course at the university to get a better command of the subjects and to revise them thoroughly before their entrance exams. Those who do well in the exams become students.

As our students come from all parts of the region, the university provides accommodation for the majority of them. Those who aren't satisfied with the living conditions at the hostel have to rent rooms.

The academic staff of the faculty, with the dean at the head, consists of professors, lecturers and assistants. They deliver lectures and hold seminars on different subjects. The courses are continually being updated so the students have a chance to receive the most up-to-date knowledge and acquire near-native competence in the language.

The students take exams twice a year. If they get good marks in the subjects and pass their exams they get grants. If they fail their exams they may be expelled from the university. After each set of examinations the students have a vacation.

The major subject in the curriculum of the English department is the English Language, of course. Then some students must take a second language: French or German. The allied subjects are: Linguistics, Lexicology, History of English, Stylistics, English and American Literature, Methods of Teaching, Country Studies and others. Apart from them the students follow courses in Psychology, Pedagogics, History and so on. Sport is also compulsory for all university students. In addition to compulsory courses students can choose some optional courses from a number of options available.

All the students try their hand at research work. Every year they write term papers in different subject areas and present their final paper at the graduation exams.

The faculty studies in the first shift. It has a language laboratory with audio-visual equipment, a computer classroom and a library with a reading room and a reference room. The library is well-stocked with a wide range of literature to meet the needs of students and to support the teaching and research. Times of opening are convenient for everybody wishing to borrow books for studies or for pleasure.

People say, "All work and no play makes Jack a dull boy", so the students take part in various celebrations, contests, sport competitions, shows and theatrical performances. All this makes student life exciting and unforgettable.

#### Task 1. Correct the statements on the text if necessary.

1. The faculty of Foreign Languages has English, German, French and Latin departments.
2. The university is famous for its beautiful building.
3. It trains both full-time and part-time students.
4. All the students of the university get grants.
5. They have vacations twice a year.
6. The allied subjects are: Psychology, Pedagogics, History.
7. The course of studying lasts more than four years.
8. All the applicants must take a preliminary course before the entrance exams.
9. At the end of each semester students take exams and this makes student life exciting and unforgettable.
10. The major subject in the curriculum of the English department is Linguistics.
11. Sport is optional for all university students.
12. All the applicants try their hand at research work.
13. Our students only come from Chelyabinsk.
14. All the subjects in the curriculum are compulsory.
15. If the students take part in various celebrations, performances and competitions they may be expelled from the university.
16. The university was founded in 1835.

## Task 2. Reproduce some parts of the text.

1. пробовать силы в исследовательской работе; 2. родственные предметы; 3. три отделения; 4. с деканом во главе; 5. учебное заведение; 6. вступительные экзамены; 7. абитуриенты; 8. ЧГПУ был основан; 9. учебный план; 10. в дополнение к обязательным предметам; 11. волнующая и незабываемая; 12. факультет иностранных языков; 13. известен высоким уровнем преподавания; 14. дважды в год; 15. приобрести языковую компетентность близкую к уровню носителей языка; 16. выбрать факультативные курсы из числа имеющихся; 17. дипломная работа; 18. подавать заявления; 19. общежитие; 20. мешай дело с бездельем – проживёшь век с весельем; 21. поступать на различные факультеты университета; 22. курсы постоянно обновляются; 23. читать лекции; 24. в первую смену; 25. могут быть отчислены из университета; 26. библиотека хорошо укомплектована разнообразной литературой; 27. получают стипендию; 28. кроме них студенты слушают курсы; 29. хорошо сдают экзамены; 30. проводят семинары по различным предметам; 31. сдавать экзамены; 32. сдать экзамены; 33. студенты дневного отделения; 34. тщательно повторить их; 35. курс обучения длится 5 лет; 36. заниматься на подготовительных курсах; 37. время работы удобно для всех; 38. удовлетворить запросы; 39. выпускные экзамены; 40. в конце июня или в начале июля; 41. основной предмет; 42. имеют возможность получить самые современные знания; 43. улучшить знания по предметам; 44. со всей области; 45. принимают участие в различных праздниках, конкурсах, спортивных соревнованиях, шоу и театральных постановках;

## TEXT 2. PROS AND CONS OF USING THE INTERNET

**Read the text and say what you think of the advantages and disadvantages of the Internet.**

Advertisements for the Internet promise you a world of information, entertainment, on-line shopping and e-mail services. However the real world of the Internet may not be as perfect as the advertisements suggest.

Using the Internet offers many advantages. For example, all the latest information is available to you, in your home, at any hour of the day or night. It's much faster and easier to surf the net in search of information from all over the world than to travel to libraries in dozens of countries. Also, on-line shopping makes it possible to search through catalogues to find exactly what you want at the best price, saving both time and money. By joining a newsgroup or chat group, you can share your hobbies and special interests, and perhaps make friends all over the world. Finally, e-mail is popular because it's faster than sending a letter and cheaper than a telephone conversation.

On the other hand, the Internet has several disadvantages. Firstly, with so much information available, finding what you want can take you hours. Multimedia web pages with photographs, music and video are attractive, but there's too much advertising instead of real information. As for Internet friendships, sitting at home in front of a computer making 'chat friends' is not the same as actually meeting people.

In conclusion, the Internet obviously has both good and bad points. Fortunately, the system is improving all the time, and any problems which still exist can be solved. Whether we like it or not, the Internet is here to stay, so we have to make the best possible use of it.



**Professor:** Gentlemen, order!

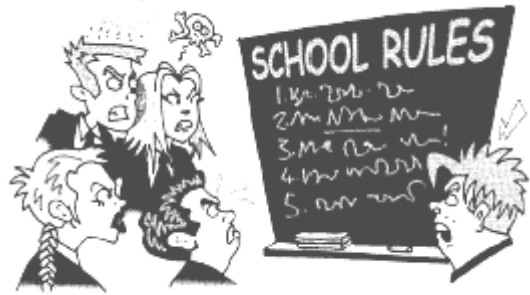
**Students:** Beer!



Sing the song.

## SCHOOL RULES BLUES

Don't play in the classroom  
Don't stand on the chairs  
Don't draw on the blackboard  
Don't run down the stairs  
Remember your homework  
Please stand up straight  
Always be punctual  
Never be late



Have you heard the news  
We've got the blues  
The school rules blues  
Come and join the queue  
We've got the blues  
The school rules blues



We mustn't be naughty  
We mustn't be rude  
We mustn't drop litter  
We mustn't be crude  
We must keep our uniforms tidy and neat  
We mustn't wear earrings  
We mustn't eat sweets



Have you heard the news  
We've got the blues  
The school rules blues  
Come and join the queue  
We've got the blues  
The school rules blues

Always be courteous kind and polite  
Try not to argue  
Don't ever fight  
Don't listen to music  
Don't dance in the hall  
Don't sing in the classroom  
Don't have fun at all!



Have you heard the news  
We've got the blues  
The school rules blues  
Come and join the queue  
We've got the blues  
The school rules blues



## TOPIC 5. CLOTHES & SHOPPING

Read, translate and reproduce the text.

### WINTER COLLECTION

'Ladies and gentlemen, we are 'proud to pre'sent 'this 'year's 'winter co,llection. 'First, you will 'see our `daywear co,llection, 'all 'shown 'off by our 'gorgeous `models.

'First on the 'catwalk is `Steve, 'wearing a 'classic- ,cut, 'two-'piece 'black 'woollen `suit. 'Steve 'wears it with 'black `shoes | and a 'plain 'white `shirt. The 'red and 'white 'spotted `braces | and the 'lively 'coloured `tie | 'brighten up the `suit | and 'make it 'more `interesting. `Thanks, `Steve.

'Dressed in 'comfortable `clothes, 'Helen intro'duces our 'women's `casual wear collection. 'Helen is 'wearing a 'pair of `blue jeans | and a 'black 'polo-neck `jumper. The 'cowgirl 'style 'brown `jacket | and the 'knee-high 'brown `boots | 'add `style. 'Helen has 'thrown a 'jumper over her `shoulders | and 'added a 'hat and a `belt | with a 'silver `buckle | to the `outfit. She has 'also 'tied a `scarf | round her `waist | to com'plete the `look. `Thanks, Helen.

'What about `men's casual wear? →Well, 'colour is `everything this season. 'Chris is 'wearing 'bright 'red `jeans | with a 'black 'leather `jacket. He has 'chosen to com'bine these with a 'comfortable 'pair of 'black `trainers | 'rather than 'heavy `boots. A 'checked 'shirt com'pletes the `outfit. A 'smart and 'trendy `look | to 'brighten 'up 'dark 'winter `days. `Thanks, `Chris.

'Dressed with 'classic `elegance, 'Kate is 'wearing a 'white 'two-'piece `suit. The 'skirt is `short and is 'worn with a 'matching 'long-'sleeved `jacket. The 'jacket has a 'tie 'fastening at 'one `side. She is 'wearing `high- ,heeled, `silver, 'sling-back `shoes | which 'perfectly `complement | this 'beautiful `outfit. `Thank you, `Kate.

### VOCABULARY

1. shop; store; drugstore; chemist's (shop); pharmacy; stationery shop; food shop; (on a) newsstand; market; supermarket; boutique; shopping; to go shopping; to do the shopping; to fit; to suit; to become; to be becoming to; to go together; to match; to have on; to be dressed in; to dress; to get dressed; to put on; to take off; to try on; fitting room; to be well / badly dressed; to afford to do smth; to pay for; to ask for; to wrap up;

at the cash desk; to pay in cash, by credit card; to pay back; to lend; to buy on credit / at a discount; change; to change; small change; to spend money on; to buy smth at a low, high, reasonable price; to run out of; to stand in a queue for; to jump a queue; to weigh; weight; to be in fashion /out of fashion; to come into (go out of) fashion; (un)fashionable; old-fashioned; fashion show; to be in (great) demand; a good selection of; to have good / bad taste in clothes;

#### Usage Note 1: shop, store, drugstore, chemist's; pharmacy.

1. В британском английском **shop** – любой магазин; **store** – большой магазин.

*The shops in town close at 5.30. Have you been to this new department store in Oxford Street?*

Для американцев **store** – любой магазин, а **shop** – маленький специализированный магазин.

*There's the shoe store we've been looking for. He works at the candle shop across the street.*

2. **Coffee shop** – недорогая кофейня (амер.), кафетерий (брит.)

*Let's go to a coffee shop to have a bite and talk things over.*

4. **Drugstore** – магазин в Америке, где можно купить простые лекарства и косметические товары, обычно с буфетом, где можно, например, выпить кофе и съесть мороженое.

5. Аптека - это **chemist's** (брит.) или **pharmacy** (амер).

*John has gone to the chemist's for some aspirin. There's an all-night pharmacy nearby.*

**Usage Note 2: fit, suit, become, be becoming to, match, go together / with.**

1) **to fit** (smb) – подходить по размеру, **to fit (smb) like a glove** – идеально подходить;  
*A size 44 dress should fit. You can't put those shelves in there, they won't fit.*

2) **to suit** (smb) – 1) подходить, 2) идти, быть к лицу;  
*Such a job would suit me perfectly. Will ten o'clock suit you?*  
*Casual clothes really don't suit her. A green dress won't suit me. That new haircut suits you.*

3) **to be becoming** (to smb) - идти, быть к лицу; **to become** (книжн.) – подходить;  
*This summer hat is very becoming to you.*  
*This sort of behaviour hardly becomes a person in your position.*

4) Мы употребляем **to match, go together** и **go with** чтобы сказать, что что-то подходит друг другу, сочетается по цвету, стилю, форме или составляет пару.  
*These gloves match / go with your handbag. These gloves and your handbag go together.*

2. ladies' wear, women's clothes; men's wear, men's clothes; casual (everyday) clothes; evening (party, best) clothes; close-fitting, loose-fitting clothes; underwear (undies); (short) fur coat; sheepskin coat (jacket); quilted coat / jacket; dress; sundress; blouse; skirt; fancy dress; costume; trouser suit; two-piece suit, three-piece suit; waistcoat; tracksuit; bathing suit; shorts; dungarees; cardigan; jumper; sweater; dressing gown, T-shirt; apron; nightdress (=nightgown); pyjamas; leggings; tights / pantyhose; stockings; socks;

3. beret; knitted hat, fur hat; kerchief; shawl; glove; mitten; handkerchief; footwear; ladies' boots; men's boots; high-heeled, low-heeled, flat-heeled shoes; court shoes; sandals; slippers; rubber boots; with a rounded, square, tapered toe; umbrella; handbag; purse; wallet; shopping bag; vanity case; cosmetics; lipstick; perfume; jewellery; chain; ring; earrings; gold / golden; silver; precious stones; in the shape of;

4. collar; neck; belt; button; ribbon; bow; bow tie; pocket; hood; to be trimmed with; wool; cotton; denim; silk; velvet; corduroy; suede; leather; to be made of (from, out of); striped; polka-dot; flowered; patterned; shade; lilac; violet; beige; cream; navy; bright; pastel.  
*A blue colour doesn't suit her. Blue doesn't suit her. The blue (colour) of this blouse is awful.*

**Phrases:** What size shoes do you wear? I wear size 36 shoes. This is a size 46 pullover. This way, please. How much is it? What does it cost? What's the price of it? What make is it? What is it made of? Does it wash well? Does it wear well? You'd better try it on.

**EXERCISES**

**Ex. 1. Find English equivalents of the following words and phrases in the text.**

1. одетая с классической элегантностью; 2. показанная нашими великолепными моделями; 3. на высоком каблуке; 4. комфортная одежда; 5. серебряная пряжка; 6. первый на подиуме; 7. клетчатая рубашка; 8. подтяжки в красно-белый горошек; 9. элегантный и стильный вид; 10. накинула джемпер на плечи; 11. которые превосходно дополняют этот красивый наряд; 12. чёрная водолазка; 13. как насчёт мужской повседневной одежды; 14. простая белая рубашка; 15. она повязала шарф вокруг талии; 16. классически скроенный; 17. пара чёрных кроссовок; 18. пиджак с длинными рукавами в тон; 19. чтобы скрасить тёмные зимние дни; 20. чёрный шерстяной костюм из двух предметов; 21. тяжёлые ботинки; 22. коричневый пиджак в ковбойском стиле; 23. яркий цветной галстук; 24. пара синих джинсов; 25. делает его интереснее; 26. чёрный кожаный пиджак; 27. коричневые сапоги до колен; 28. юбка короткая; 29. Хелен представляет; 30. застежка в виде завязки с одной стороны; 31. цвет – это всё в этом сезоне; 32. босоножки;

**Ex. 2. Ask all kinds of questions on the text.**

**Ex. 3. Answer the questions using the vocabulary.**

1. What do they sell in a drugstore, at a chemist's, at a stationery shop, at a newsstand? 2. What is a boutique? 3. Do you like to go shopping? 4. Where do you prefer to do the shopping? 5. Do you know what suits you most? 6. Name some things that are really becoming to you. 7. Is it important for you that your clothes should go together? What matches in your clothes? 8. Do all your clothes fit you? 9. What do you have on today? 10. How were you dressed yesterday? 11. What do you do in the cloakroom? 12. What do you do in the fitting room? 13. When do you change your clothes? 14. Is it important to be well dressed? Why or why not? 15. Can you afford to dress the way you like? What can't you afford (to buy)? 16. Where do you pay for your shopping? How do you pay: in cash or by credit card? 17. Do you ever lend money? Do you ever borrow money? Do you always pay back? 18. Have you ever bought anything on credit? 19. Do you have any small change? How much? 20. Can you change a five hundred note now? What can you change it for? 21. Do you ever say, "Keep the change"? What does it mean? 22. What do you spend most of your money on? 23. Do you mind the price of what you buy? Do you buy anything at a high price? 24. What have you run out of? Where can you buy it? 25. Do you like to stand in a queue? Have you ever jumped a queue? 26. How much do you weigh? Are you satisfied with your weight? Do you want to slim or to put on some weight? 27. What's the difference between *to slim* and *to lose weight*? 28. What's in fashion now? What is in great demand? What is definitely out of fashion? 29. Are you fashionable? Are you fashion conscious? 30. Who is a "fashion victim"? 31. Do you think you have good taste in clothes?

**Ex. 4. Match the words.**

tight, knee-length, short-sleeved, baggy, platform, leather, denim, cotton, open-necked, flat;

a skirt

a shirt

shoes

trousers

**Ex. 5. Fill in the blanks with one of the following verbs.**

*to become, to be becoming to, to match, to go with, to suit, to go together, to fit;*

1. She has a kind of gift for clothes. Everything she wears ..... her without fail. 2. Janet got her kerchief from the handbag, settled it on her head, then tied it below her chin. I thought kerchiefs were very .....to her. 3. The old woman looked suspiciously at the girls around her. She thought trousers did not .....the occasion at all. 4. I'm cold. Bring me something to ..... my dress. 5. A woman should wear the length that ..... her own proportions, don't you think? 6. A dark woollen suit .....her like a glove. 7. Do you think this green scarf will .....my new coat? 8. He was dressed in very correct shooting clothes which nevertheless were not ..... to him. 9. She wore a grey hand-knitted cardigan and a grey tweed skirt which ..... very well. 10. In her scarlet jeans and white sweater she looked curiously young. Although the clothes didn't .....the occasion, they were ..... 11. You should put on black gloves to ..... your bag and shoes. 12. The dress doesn't .....her. It's tight in the waist. 13. She was wearing a brown dress with a hat and gloves to ..... 14. This long skirt doesn't ..... me. I should shorten it. 15. I think this formal jacket and jeans don't ..... at all.

**Ex. 6. Complete the following dialogues with these words:**

*fashionable, worn-out (=изношенный), smart, scruffy (=поношенный), casual, dress well;*

1. You are looking very ..... today. – Yes, I am on my way to a job interview.
2. You must spend a fortune on clothes. – I don't really, but I must admit I do like to .....
3. Will I have to wear a suit to the meeting? – No, I expect most people will be wearing ..... clothes.
4. I need a new dress for the party but I don't know what colour to go for. – Well, lilac is supposed to be ..... at the moment, isn't it? It's this season's colour.
5. Why are you throwing that jacket out? – It's ..... Look, it's got a hole under the arm and most of the buttons are missing.
6. I like your new trousers. They fit you perfectly. – Well, I start my new job tomorrow and I can't turn up wearing my ..... old jeans. Everyone there is very well dressed.

**Ex. 7. Insert articles where necessary.**

1. Isn't it .....beautiful dress in ..... shop window? And .....colour is nice.
2. Is .....fitting-room vacant?
3. What ..... smart sweaters! Do you think .....blue one will fit me? It's .....pity, I need .....smaller size.
4. Go to .....mirror and have .....look at yourself.
5. Alice's handbag is made of .....silk. ....silk is very thick.
6. What .....size gloves do you wear?
7. She wore ..... black velvet dress last night.
8. ....nylon blouses are out of ... fashion now.
9. Kitty's bought .....new coat for .....winter wear.
10. It pays to choose .....good cloth for .....suit.
11. ....gloves made of .....wool are usually warm.
12. I've been wearing .....jacket for .....years but.....cloth is still good.
13. Have you made .....choice yet?
14. Did .....dressmaker give you .....good advice? She has .....good taste in clothes.
15. Have you done .....shopping yet?

**Ex. 8. Insert preposition or adverbs where necessary.**

1. His spring coat is made .....brown leather.
2. My cousin is very particular .....clothes. She has a lot .....them .....winter and summer wear.
3. Take the handkerchief ..... your bag and put it ..... your pocket.
4. Have a look ..... those shoes. Won't they match .....my new suit? I'd like to try them ..... , maybe they are ..... my size and will fit .....me.
5. Put this scarf .....your neck, it will go ..... your suit.
6. The dress is very becoming .....her, but I'm afraid it's a bit loose .....her.
7. These shoes are .....fashion now. They are .....great demand.
8. What have you spent all the money .....?
9. We've run ..... coffee. What shall I drink ..... breakfast tomorrow?
10. I can't pay ..... this fur coat now, but I may buy it .....credit.
11. What was she dressed .....? Did she have a new suit .....?
12. I'm afraid, he has no taste .....clothes.
13. Did he pay .....cash or ..... credit card?
14. You should pay ..... the cash desk.

**Ex. 9. Translate into English.**

1. Вчера я купила замшевые перчатки. Они мне малы. Если хотите, я могу отдать их вам. – Спасибо. Я возьму их с удовольствием, если подойдёт размер. Сколько они стоят?
2. Мне нужно кое-что купить: нижнее бельё, колготки, носки, домашние тапочки и шляпку к моему новому пальто.
3. Летом она предпочитает носить одежду из хлопка или натурального шёлка.
4. Вам очень идёт этот костюм, но пиджак, по-моему, слишком длинный.
5. Здесь продают мужские костюмы, брюки, пиджаки, рубашки и обувь для мужчин.
6. – Помогите мне выбрать туфли. – Примерь те бежевые. Мне кажется, они подойдут к твоему светлому костюму.
7. Послушайте моего совета, не берите это пальто. Оно уже не модно. То, серое, гораздо лучше. Я уверена, оно будет хорошо сидеть на вас. Пройдите в примерочную. Сюда, пожалуйста. Посмотрите, как оно вам идёт, и цена вполне приемлемая.
8. У нас кончился сахар, молоко и масло. По дороге домой не забудь зайти в супермаркет и купить всё необходимое.
9. У нас почти не осталось хлеба. Сходи в булочную купи две булки хлеба и булочек или печенья к чаю.
10. Какой размер обуви ты носишь? – Эти туфли 37 размера, но они мне немного велики. – Сколько они стоят? – Не могу вспомнить. Я купила их прошлой осенью.

### Ex. 10. Translate into English.

1. Какое красивое кольцо. Оно серебряное? – Да, это подарок моего жениха. Я ношу его уже два месяца. 2. Продавец завернула джинсы, Джейн заплатила за них, положила в сумку и вышла из магазина. 3. Зайди в супермаркет по дороге домой и купи три килограмма помидоров. 4. Скоро будет уже час, как ты меряешь эти костюмы. Неужели ты ещё не выбрала ничего себе по вкусу? – Здесь такой богатый выбор модной одежды, что я не могу решить, что выбрать. – Возьми вот этот светло-коричневый костюм. Он тебе идёт. 5. Завтра в это время я буду веселиться на вечеринке у Браунов. На мне будет маленькое чёрное платье и новые туфли на высоком каблуке. 6. Я не знаю, что подарить Майку на день рождения. – Подари ему галстук или какую-нибудь парфюмерию. – Он не носит костюмы и галстуки, и я не знаю, какую парфюмерию он предпочитает. – Тогда подари ему бумажник или перчатки. 7. Надень эту кремовую блузку в тон своей новой вельветовой юбке. Но этот кожаный ремень к ней не подходит. Кроме того, такие ремни вышли из моды. 8. Ты пойдешь со мной по магазинам? Мне нужен новый зонтик и кожаная сумка. – Хорошо, а я куплю себе халат, колготки и тапочки. Нам нужно купить что-нибудь для Кейт. У неё скоро день рождения.

### Ex. 11. Discussion tasks

1. Describe your clothes. Say what clothes you would like to have.
2. Compare buying clothes in the shop and the Internet.
3. Can clothes make a person beautiful?
4. What are advantages and disadvantages of the profession of a model?
5. What do you think of plastic surgery as the means of improving appearance?
6. What do you think of people who copy the style of some celebrities?
7. Comment on the phrase *Be yourself no matter what they say*. Is it easy to do?

### Ex. 12. Conversation tasks

1. It's your common friend's birthday soon. Discuss what present to buy for her/him.
2. Persuade your friend to change his/her image.
3. Look at the pictures and discuss the clothes. Explain why you like them or not.
4. Persuade your friend not to buy the clothes in the pictures.
5. You want to buy some new things for the summer. Discuss with your friend where to go (a big shopping mall, a boutique, a discount centre, a market, a second hand shop etc.)

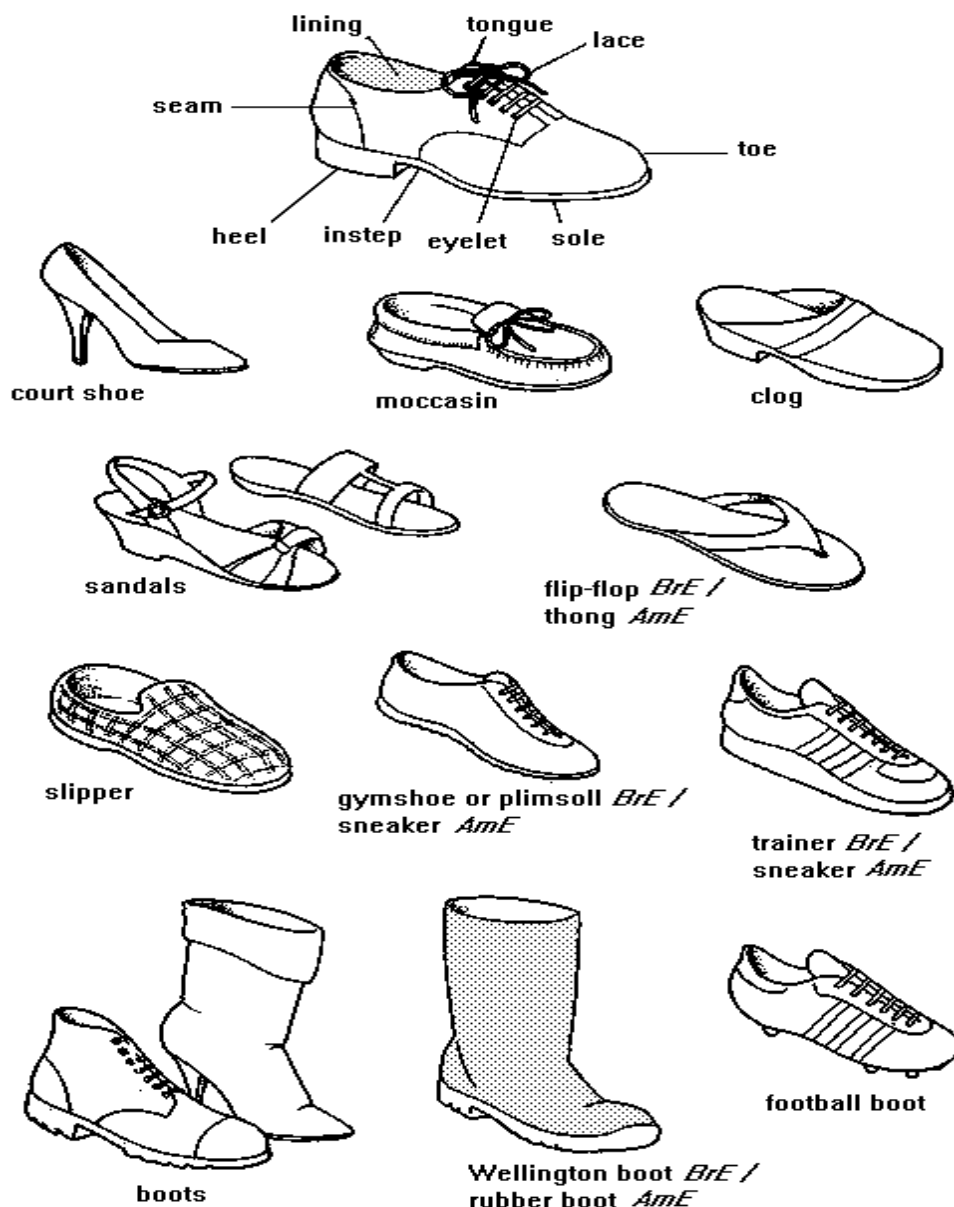
### Ex. 13. Act out the role-play.

You play the part of a fashion designer and present your group-mate's clothes as an outfit from your collection.

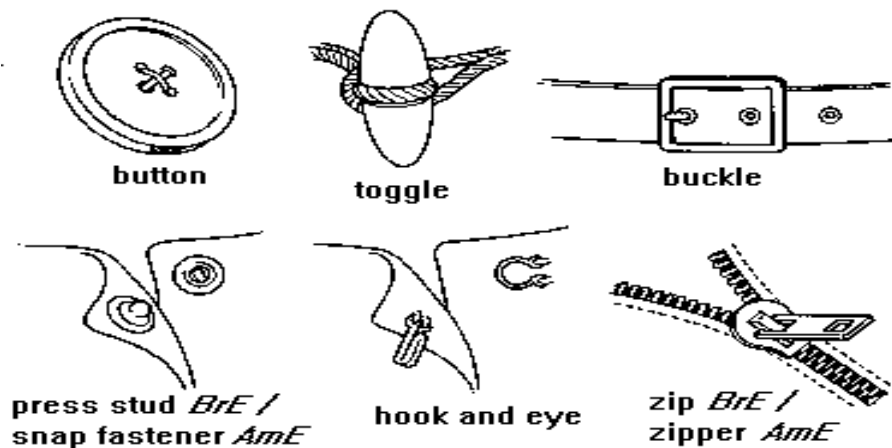
**I miss when I was little,  
and didn't care about  
my weight, clothes, or  
hair, I just did what  
made me happy.**

Ex. 14. Translate the words in the pictures into Russian.

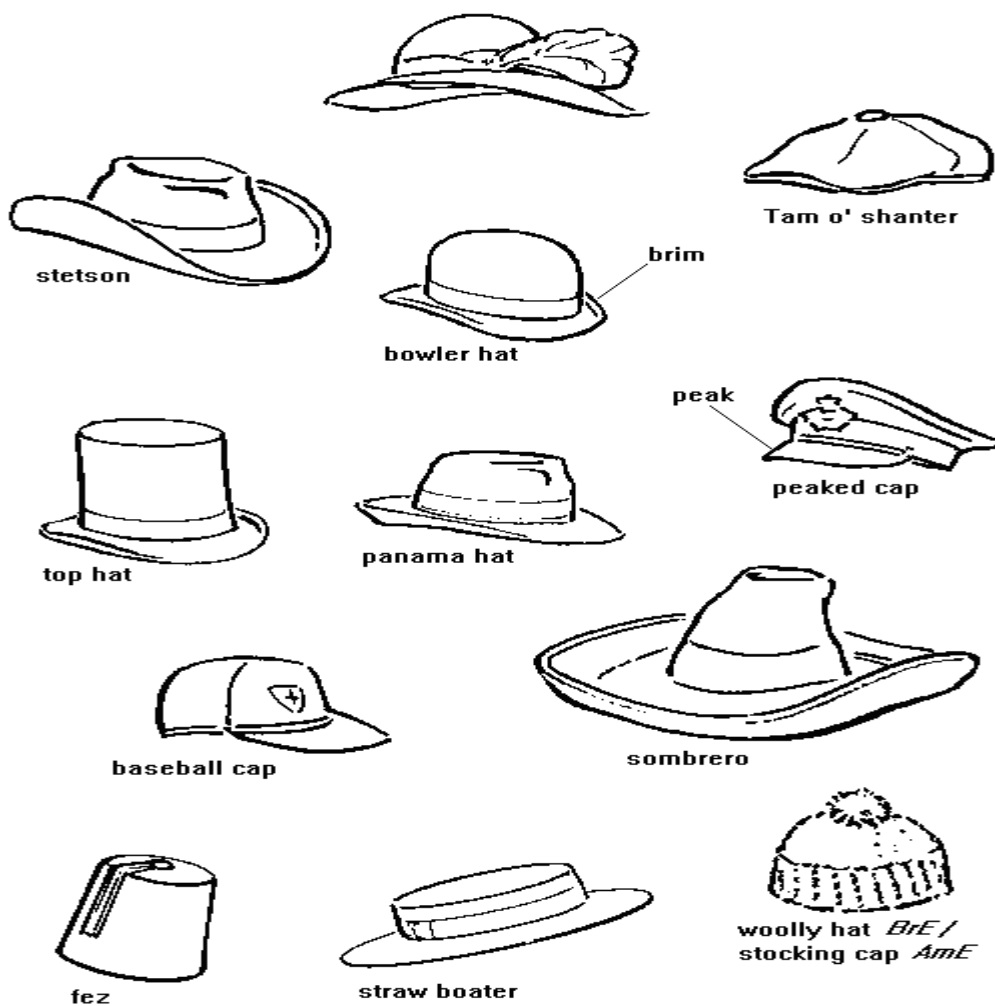
Picture 1 FOOTWEAR



Picture 2 FASTENERS



Picture 3 HATS



Picture 4 MAKE UP

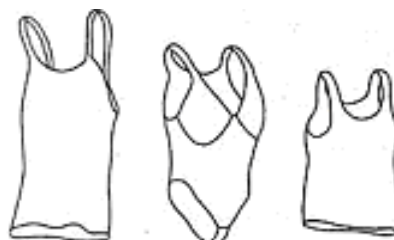


lipstick foundation eyeshadow



mascara eyeliner face powder

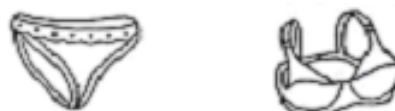
Picture 5 UNDERWEAR



camisole body *BrE* /  
leotard *AmE* vest *BrE* /  
undershirt *AmE*



boxer shorts underpants / pants *BrE*



knickers *BrE* / panties *AmE* bra



**Ex. 15. Listen to the dialogue and learn it.**



**YES, DEAR! (45)**

Every Saturday Mr Brown goes to town. He went to town last Saturday. He usually has a drink in the pub with his friends. Last Saturday he had four or five drinks. After the pub, he usually goes to the supermarket and gets the food for his wife. He got the food last Saturday. He usually comes home on foot. Last Saturday he came home by taxi. His wife was very angry.

**Mrs Brown** 'John! 'Is 'that , you?

**Mr Brown** \ Yes, dear. I'm 'back.

**Mrs Brown** 'Did you 'come 'home by `taxi?

**Mr Brown** \ Yes, dear. The 'bags were 'very , heavy.

**Mrs Brown** 'Did you `get every , thing?

**Mr Brown** ` Yes, , dear. I 'got 'everything... `nearly , everything

**Mrs Brown** \ Nearly everything?

**Mr Brown** \ Yes, dear... I 'went to the , butcher's, but they 'didn't `have any , steak.

**Mrs Brown** They 'didn't 'have any `steak!

**Mr Brown** \ No, dear, 'so I 'got some , hamburgers.

**Mrs Brown** 'Did you 'go to the , baker's?

**Mr Brown** 'Yes, , dear . . . but I 'didn't `get any , bread.

**Mrs Brown** You 'didn't 'get any `bread!

**Mr Brown** \ No, dear. They didn't `have any , bread, 'so I 'got some , rolls.

**Mrs Brown** 'How many 'rolls 'did you , get?

**Mr Brown** I 'can't re , member, dear.

**Mrs Brown** \ John?

**Mr Brown** \ Yes, dear?

**Mrs Brown** 'Did , you go | to the , pub again?

**Mr Brown** ... \ Yes, dear.

**Mrs Brown** 'How many , drinks | 'did you , have?

**Mr Brown** 'Only 'four or `five, , dear, `small , ones.

**Ex. 16. Read the dialogues and make up your own ones.**

**1. IN A JEWELLER'S SHOP**

**Nigel** I'm trying to find a Christmas present for my wife.

**Assistant** Yes, sir. What exactly are you looking for?

**Nigel** I'm not sure, really. Perhaps you can help me.

**Assistant** Right... I'll show you some bracelets.

**Nigel** No, I bought a bracelet for our wedding anniversary.

**Assistant** Maybe a ring, then. These rings are made of gold.

**Nigel** Yes... I like that one. What's the stone?

**Assistant** It's a diamond sir. . and it's only £2000!

**Nigel** Ah... well, perhaps you could show me some ear-rings, then.

**Additional words:** 'pendant - кулон, beads [i:] - бусы, 'necklace - ожерелье, pearl - жемчуг, ruby - рубин, 'emerald - изумруд, sapphire ['sæfaɪə] - сапфир, fianite ['fiənɪt]- фианит.

## 2. IN A TOYSHOP

**Mrs Cox** Good morning. Perhaps you can advise me...

**Assistant** Yes, madam.

**Mrs Cox** I'm looking for a toy... for my nephew.

**Assistant** Oh, yes... how old is he?

**Mrs Cox** He'll be nine years old on Saturday.

**Assistant** Skateboards are still very popular.

**Mrs Cox** Hmm, I don't want him to hurt himself.

**Assistant** What about a drum set?

**Mrs Cox** I don't think so. His father will be angry if I buy him one of those.

Have you got anything educational? You see, he's a very intelligent boy.

**Assistant** I've got the perfect thing! A do-it-yourself computer kit!

**Additional words:** tricycle, quad bike, iPad, Lego ['legʊ] construction toy, a doll house, soft toys.

**Ex. 17. Listen to the dialogues and make up your own ones.**

### 🔊 COMPLIMENTING PEOPLE ON CLOTHES (43)

It's better not to ask the price of someone's clothes unless you know the person very well.

1

**A** 'What a 'nice `cardigan!

**B** 'Does it 'look 'all `right?

**A** `Yes, and it 'matches your 'scarf `perfectly.

**B** I 'got it for 'twenty-'eight 'pounds `fifty in a `sale.

**A** It's in `credible.

3

**A** You're 'looking very `smart in that 'new `jacket.

**B** 'Does it `suit me?

**A** `Yes, and I 'like the `colour, `too.

**B** You 'know I 'only 'paid 'twenty-'seven 'pounds 'seventy-`five for it.

**A** You 'got a `bargain `there.

2

**A** 'I `say, I 'like your 'new `raincoat.

**B** 'Is it a 'good `fit?

**A** `Yes, it 'looks `fabulous.

**B** It 'only `cost me `twenty-,nine `pounds.

**A** `Well, 'that was `very .good .value.

4

**A** `That's a ,very ,nice ,blazer you're `wearing.

**B** 'Do you 'really `like it?

**A** `Yes, and it 'goes `well with your 'new `pullover, `too.

**B** You'll 'never be `lieve it, but it 'only 'cost 'twenty-'nine 'pounds `fifty.

**A** 'Very `reasonable in `deed.

## **ADDITIONAL TEXTS**

### **TEXT 1. MAKE-UP**

**Read the text, sum up pros and cons of make-up and say what you think about it.**

Alicia, a 27-year-old consultant working in the city of London, kicked the make-up habit four years ago. 'My mother always used to wear some make-up, but I felt ridiculous plastering it on like some kid with a paint-box,' she said.

She says she feels sorry for those women who spend their days obsessively touching up their lipstick. "Women wear it to boost their confidence, but I find that men respect me more without cosmetics, and they seem to take me more seriously."

In the not-so-far-off days of power-dressing, no self-respecting woman would have been seen dead without her mascara, blusher and lipstick. Going to work without make-up was like going to a meeting in a dress-gown and slippers. But recent trends show that attitudes are changing.

According to one market survey, make-up sales in Britain have dropped by nearly ten per cent in the last five years. Younger women are throwing out the eyeliner, and instead of mothers telling their children to lay off the lipstick, it is the daughters who are telling their mums to do without the mascara.

Encouragingly, many British men seem to share Alicia's feelings. A lot of them are terrified of overly made-up women. They feel that if a woman is that worried about her appearance, she's bound to be neurotic. Women who don't wear make-up seem more relaxed, more self-confident and easier to trust.

But not everyone agrees. The director of a well-known recruitment consulting firm believes that other women don't approve of this bare-faced chic. She claims that people form their impressions within the first few minutes and that applicants do better in interviews if they are wearing the right "packaging." Make-up is expected – it shows you are making an effort. Another director believes that by not wearing make-up you are actually drawing attention to yourself and saying you don't care.

Incredibly, some women are still required to wear make-up, whether they like it or not. Air hostesses, hotel staff and receptionists have always been expected to wear some make-up. "Guests don't like being greeted by someone who looks as if she's just got out of bed," says the personnel manager of one chain of hotels. One woman was even sacked from her job as an airline ticket agent in Boston, Massachusetts, U.S.A. for refusing to wear make-up.

With men it is the opposite. Although hundreds of millions of pounds are now being spent by men on skin care products, anything more than a little moisturiser is still frowned upon at work.

But things are changing. Ten years ago nobody would have ever believed that men would be seen wearing rouge; nowadays they can be seen buying lipstick. What will they be doing in ten years' time?

### **TEXT 2. THE HISTORY OF JEANS**

**Read the text and answer the questions.**

Do you wear jeans? Why or why not? What kind of jeans do you prefer?

The first jeans were designed by Levi Strauss (1829-1902) who was a German immigrant to the United States. Strauss arrived in San Francisco in 1850, just after gold was discovered there. Strauss decided to make tough trousers to sell to the gold miners. The first pairs were made of tent canvas, then strong cotton was imported from France. This cotton was called "Serge de Nîmes" in France and nowadays we call it "denim". The denim was dyed with blue indigo. In 1873 copper rivets were added to the jeans. Strauss wanted to make the pockets stronger because the miners used to fill them with pieces of rock! The company still makes Levi's today.

The first Lee Rider jeans were made in 1924, and the first Wranglers in 1947. Until the 1930s jeans were rarely seen east of the Mississippi River. Hollywood westerns made jeans popular. Cowboys wore them in the films and film stars wore them outside the studios.

At one time jeans were seen as a sign of rebellion against authority. They were worn by stars like James Dean and Marlon Brando, then by the student revolutionaries of the 1960s. Alex Madsen, a fashion writer, said, "Jeans were not only clothes: they were clothes-language, instant and eloquent symbols of brotherhood." Jeans represented freedom.

Nowadays jeans are classless. They are worn by everyone, young and old, but not all styles of jeans are fashionable. One year it's an expensive designer label, the next year it's "Original Levi 501", then it's jeans with rips and tears. One thing is certain: jeans are here to stay.

### TEXT 3. YOUNG BRITISH STYLE – OUT TO SHOCK

**Read and translate the text. Discuss modern teenage fashion.**

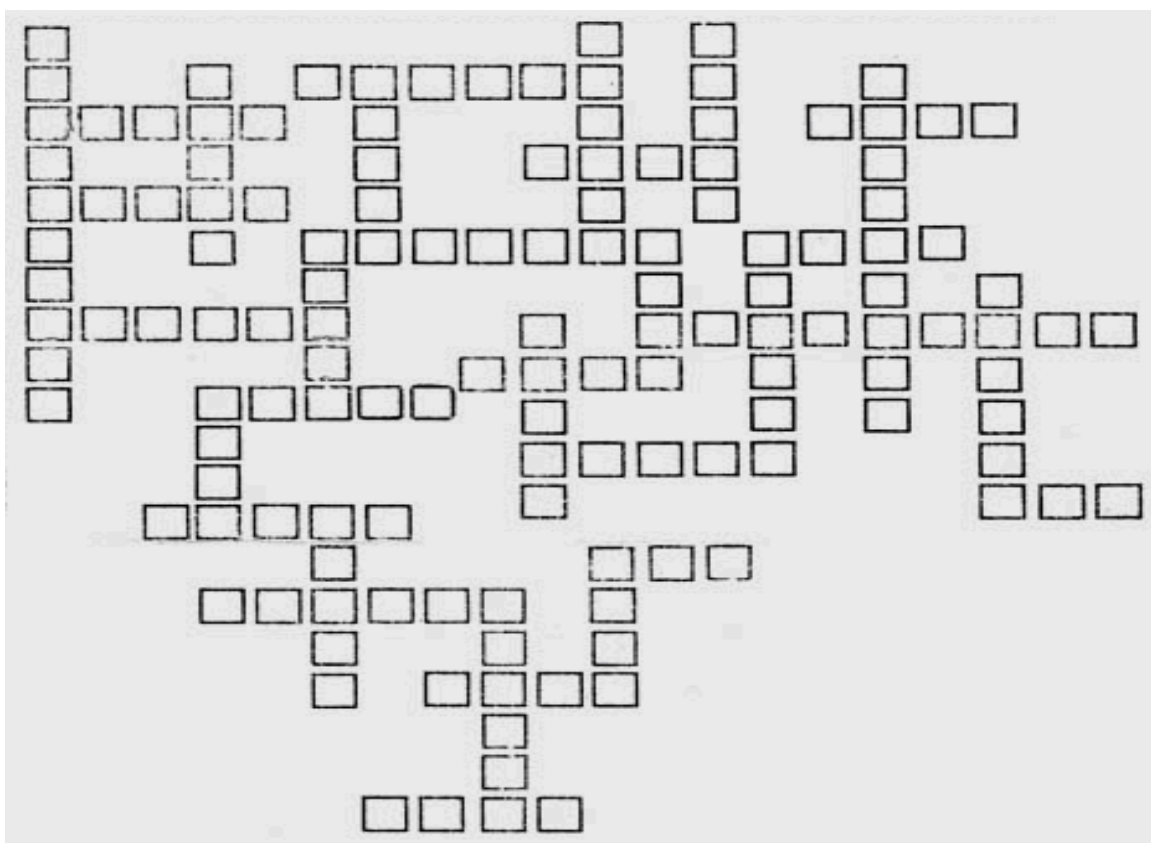
British culture places less emphasis on appearance than some other European cultures, where to dress badly is social death. Yet at its youth-focused cutting edge, British style is radical beyond that of any other nation. British women were the first to bare their knees when Mary Quant produced the mini-skirt in the Sixties. Since then, British youth style has often been anti-fashion; punk style, for example, was never about looking pretty. As punk hit the street in the mid-Seventies, British teenagers stuck safety pins through their noses and wore black ripped bin liners. With their hair coloured bright green or orange and fixed into hard spikes with glue, the first punks shocked the adult world.

Later, the Goths arrived, also shocking with their white, powdered faces, dyed black hair, black clothes and penchant for hanging around in graveyards. Bright colours came back with the Acid House movement; followers wore T-shirts with big smiley faces and danced till they dropped at huge Acid House parties – sometimes under the influence of drugs. Nineties New Agers adopted long hippie skirts and loose clothes, and the Grunge movement from Seattle, USA added its eclectic mix of colours and styles.

British street style has had a downbeat glamour that speaks of neither elegance nor wealth, but has an energy and an identity of its own.

**Ex. 18. Do the puzzle.**

#### COLOURS AND TINTS.



#### WORDS TO INSERT

3 LETTERS Red \ Tan

4 LETTERS Blue \ Fawn \ Grey \ Lime \ Navy \ Pink \ Plum \ Rose \ Rust

5 LETTERS Amber \ Beige \ Brown \ Cream \ Green \ Khaki \ Lemon \ Lilac \ Mauve \ Olive \ White

6 LETTERS Cherry \ Damson \ Indigo \ Orange \ Purple \ Violet \ Yellow

7 LETTERS Crimson

9 LETTERS Turquoise \ Vermilion

10 LETTERS Heliotrope

## TOPIC 6. TOWN

**Read, translate and reproduce the text.**

### CHELYABINSK

Che'lyabinsk | is | situated | in 'one of the 'most 'picturesque 'parts of | Russia – in the | Urals. The 'ancient 'Urals 'aren't 'very | high, but they are | famous | for their u'nique | beauty. The 'history of Che'lyabinsk 'goes 'back to the '18th | century. It was 'founded on the '13th of Sep'tember '17'3 | 6 | by 'Colonel | Tevkelev | as a 'small | fortress | on the 'right 'bank of the 'Miass | River | in the 'place of a 'small 'Bashkir | village | which 'name it | took. In the '19th | century | Che'lyabinsk | was a 'small pro'vincial | town.

It was a 'god-for'saken 'place with 'dirty | streets | and 'shabby 'wooden | houses. In '18'9 | 7 | the 'Trans-Si'berian | railway | was 'built | through Chelyabinsk | giving the 'town an | impulse | for its 'further de'velopment | as a 'merchant | town | on the 'crossroads of the | trade ways | from 'Europe to | Asia. The 'speedy 'growth of Che'lyabinsk | be'gan in the | thirties | when 'major in'dustrial | enterprises be'gan to be | built there. In the 'grim 'years of the 'Great 'Patriotic | War | Che'lyabinsk 'turned into a 'mighty | armoury | of the | front.

'Modern Che'lyabinsk has 'changed be'yond recog'nition. 'Now it's a 'great in'dustrial | city | and an im'portant 'cultural | centre. Its 'seven 'large | districts | 'house 'more than a 'million in | habitants. The pro'duction of about a 'hundred 'plants and | factories | is 'well 'known in | this country | and a | broad. On the | other | hand | the 'city's 'heavy | industry | cre'ates 'scores of eco'logical | problems that the 'city- | dwellers | 'come ac'ross 'practically | every | day.

The 'centre of the | city | is 'Revolution | Square. A 'few | trolley-bus stops | and you 'find yourself in Ga'garin | Park. 'Not 'many | cities | can 'boast of a 'rich | pine forest | wi'thin a 'couple of ki'lometres | of the 'central | square. Ki'rovka, a 'part of | Kirov Street, with its 'wonderful | statues, is 'one of the 'favourite 'places of the 'city | dwellers. At 'every | turn | you can 'find 'small | cafes | and 'shops | here. Che'lyabinsk has 'many 'places for enter'tainment – 'modern | cinemas, like | Kinomax, a | musement centres, like Mega | polis on the 'Miass Em | bankment.

The 'cultural | life 'isn't at a | standstill. Che'lyabinsk | has 'old the'atrical tra'ditions. Its 'drama | theatre, whose o'iginal 'building 'catches your 'eye at 'Revolution | Square, 'chamber | theatre, | puppet | theatre | are 'known 'far 'outside this | city. Che'lyabinsk | has a 'splendid | organ hall, an | opera | house | and a | concert hall. If you are 'interested in | art, you can 'visit 'various exhi'bitions | of 'local and 'world-famous | artists.

The 'city is 'growing | daily. 'Modern 'high-rise houses are 'built | every | year, 'churches and 'historical | places | are re'stored. Che'lyabinsk | is com'paratively | young | and 'open to 'further | progress | and it's be'coming 'more a'ttractive and convenient for | living | with 'every 'passing | year.

### VOCABULARY

1. to arrive in Paris /at the station; to leave Moscow (for Paris); tour; tourist; to make a tour of; to give (get) an idea of; place of interest; sight; to go sightseeing; to be surprised at; to impress; to be impressed by; to make an impression on; to travel on business / for pleasure; to make a business trip; to go on an excursion; guide; museum; local history museum; monument to; bus station; railway station; airport; hotel; to put up at; entrance (to / of); exit (from); arch;

2. to go by bus; to get on, to get off (public transport); to get into, to get out of (car); to put smb down at; at the next stop but one; to miss the stop; to go as far as; to take bus 7; to take a number 7 bus; to change to bus 7; to change one's mind; fare; to walk; to go on foot; crowd; (over)crowded; vacant seat; in (during) the rush hour; heavy (light) traffic; to be stuck in a traffic jam; to observe traffic rules; traffic lights; when the light changes from red to green; to drive a car; to take a taxi; to park; parking place; driving licence; to fine; to give smb a lift; accident; incident; to have a car accident; bicycle (bike); motorbike; to go on a bike; to ride a bike;

3. bridge; on the embankment; in the street (square); a busy (quiet) street; alley; blind alley; lane; boulevard; pavement (Br); to cross; to go across; crossing; crossroads; to come across; to run into; underground; subway; metro; pedestrian; passer-by; to turn around; to turn away; to turn back; to turn into a street; to turn (to the ) left / right; to take the first turning on the left /right; on one's way home; on one's way to; to find oneself; to lose one's way; to be (get) lost; to ask (smb) the way; to be (stand) in smb's way; in the right, wrong, opposite direction; in the direction of; along (up, down) the street; in (at, round) the corner; in the neighbourhood; nearby; to reach; to get to;

4. **Phrases.** I'm a stranger here. Could you tell me the way to the museum? How can I get to the station? Am I going the right way to the bus stop? Am I right for the cinema? Which is the shortest way to the theatre? Go (walk) straight on as far as the square. Walk down one block. Where do I get off? Where am I to get off for the railway station? This bus will take you straight / right to the theatre. It'll take you 10 minutes to get there. It's (not) a long way from here. You can't miss it. It's five minutes' walk from here. It's a five-minute walk from here.

#### Usage Notes:

##### 1. city and town

В британском английском **city** – это город, у которого есть пожалованная королевской властью грамота, дающая ему право на самоуправление или город, где есть епископ и кафедральный собор. В Америке все большие города называются **city**.

##### 2. event, accident, incident, case, occasion

1) **event** – событие, мероприятие;

*You will remember this meeting as the most important event in your life.*

2) **incident** – инцидент, то есть происшествие, неприятный случай, недоразумение; столкновение, конфликт;

*After the children had been punished, nobody mentioned the incident again. The trip passed without incident. This diplomatic incident threatened the understanding between the countries.*

3) **accident** – несчастный случай; катастрофа; авария или случай; случайность;

*Two people were killed in a skiing accident in the Alps. A serious car accident blocked the road. I met her quite by accident. I'm really sorry about breaking the camera – it was an accident.*

4) **case** – случай; обстоятельство, положение; дело, история; факт;

*In that case I will talk to him myself. In some cases it's necessary to act quickly.*

5) **occasion** – возможность, шанс, важное событие.

*I'm saving this bottle of wine for a special occasion.*

### 3. crossroads, crossing

1) **crossroads** – перекресток;

*We reached a crossroads and stopped. The nearest crossroads isn't far from here.*

2) **crossing** – переход; пресечение (линий, рельсов, дорог).

*When you go across the road, use pedestrian (zebra) crossings. There's a pelican crossing here.*

### 4. underground, tube, metro, subway

1) **the underground** – подземная железная дорога (брит.)

Лондонское метро называют **the Tube**.

Слово **metro** тоже обозначает подземную железную дорогу (особенно в Париже).

Американцы используют слово **subway** в этом значении.

*Where's an underground station? Smoking is forbidden in the Tube. It's quicker to get there by tube. I haven't seen the Paris Metro yet. They bought the map of the New York Subway.*

В британском английском **subway** значит тоннель или подземный переход. (**underpass** амер.)

*It's safer to use the subway to cross this road.*

## MEMORY WORK

**Read the limerick and explain the girl's answer. Learn it.**

There was a Young Girl of West Ham

Who hastily jumped on the tram

When she had embarked

The conductor remarked,

“Your fare, Miss.” She answered, “I am.”

## EXERCISES

**Ex. 1. Find the English equivalents of the following words and phrases in the text.**

1. сравнительно молодой; 2. более миллиона жителей; 3. забытое богом место; 4. ускоренный рост; 5. ветхие деревянные домики; 6. старые театральные традиции; 7. он был основан; 8. открыт дальнейшему прогрессу; 9. изменился до неузнаваемости; 10. одно из самых живописных мест России; 11. разнообразные выставки местных и всемирно известных художников; 12. расположен; 13. тяжёлая промышленность города; 14. восходит к 18 веку; 15. он становится привлекательнее и удобнее для жизни; 16. куда ни посмотришь; 17. на перекрёстке торговых путей из Европы в Азию; 18. они знамениты своей уникальной красотой; 19. чьё оригинальное здание привлекает взгляд; 20. если вас интересует искусство; 21. церкви и исторические места реставрируются; 22. немногие города могут похвастаться густым сосновым лесом; 23. чьё имя он взял; 24. с каждым прошедшим годом; 25. полковник; 26. развлекательный центр; 27. транссибирская железная дорога была построена через Челябинск; 28. несколько троллейбусных остановок; 29. в суровые годы Великой отечественной войны; 30. древний Урал; 31. вы оказываетесь в парке имени Гагарина; 32. известны далеко за пределами этого города; 33. когда основные промышленные предприятия начали строиться здесь; 34. современные высотные дома; 35. на набережной Миасса; 36. создаёт множество экологических проблем; 37. культурная жизнь не стоит на месте; 38. как маленькая крепость на правом берегу Миасса; 39. хорошо известна в стране и за границей; 40. маленький провинциальный город; 41. дав городу импульс к дальнейшему развитию; 42. его семь больших районов вмещают; 43. концертный зал; 44. вы можете посетить; 45. с которыми горожане сталкиваются практически каждый день; 46. город растёт с каждым днём.

**Ex. 2. Ask all kinds of questions about the text.**

**Ex. 3. Correct the statements if necessary.**

1. Chelyabinsk is situated in one of the most picturesque parts of Russia – in the Caucasus. 2. The ancient Urals are rather low but beautiful. 3. Chelyabinsk was founded on the right bank of the Volga. 4. In the 19th century Chelyabinsk was a big industrial and cultural centre. 5. In 1897 a gas line was built through Chelyabinsk. 6. A speedy growth of the town began in the Great Patriotic War. 7. The tanks made in Chelyabinsk were fighting at the front during the war. 8. Almost a million people live in the town. 9. The city's heavy industry helps to solve scores of ecological problems. 10. At every turn there are churches and monasteries in Kirov Street. 11. Chelyabinsk has some good theatres. 12. If you are interested in art you can go to Gagarin Park. 13. New shabby wooden houses are built every year. 14. Chelyabinsk is becoming better and better.

**Ex. 4. Complete the sentences in your own way.**

1. ... is situated ... 2. ... famous for ... 3. The history of ... goes back to ... 4. According to ... 5. ... turned into ... 6. On the other hand ... 7. ... changed beyond recognition. 8. ... come across ... practically every day. 9. A few trolleybus stops ... 10. ... can boast of ... 11. At every turn ... 12. ... isn't at a standstill. 13. ... catches your eye ... 14. If you are interested in ... 15. ... is growing daily. 16. ... comparatively young. 17. ... more attractive. 18. ... with every passing year.

**Ex. 5. Answer the questions.**

**A.** 1. Have you ever left Chelyabinsk? 2. What town did you leave it for? 3. Have you ever been a tourist? 4. What places impressed you most as a tourist? 5. What kind of tour would you like to make? 6. What idea can a tour about Europe give you? 7. What places of interest would you like to show the tourists in your town. 8. Do you like to go sightseeing? 9. What (who) are you surprised at? 10. What has recently made a great impression on you? 11. Which do you prefer: to travel on business or to travel for pleasure? 12. Do your parents make business trips? 13. Have you ever been on an excursion? What did you see? 14. Would you like to be a guide? 15. What museums have you been to? What impression did they make on you? 16. Do you know any museums in Chelyabinsk? 17. Have you ever been to our bus stations? 18. What transport goes to the railway station from your place? 19. How can you get to our airport? Is it far? 20. Have you ever put up at a hotel? Did you like it? 21. What monument stands at the entrance to our university?

**B.** 1. Do you go by bus, minibus, trolleybus, tram or on foot to the university? 2. How do you get to the university? What stop do you get on at? What number do you take? 3. Is the transport usually overcrowded in the morning? Can you find a vacant seat? 4. Do you have to change to any other transport on your way? 5. How much is the fare? Do you have a monthly ticket? 6. Do you ever take a taxi? 7. Have you ever missed a stop? Why? 8. What is the rush hour? 9. Is the traffic heavy in your street? 10. Are you often stuck in a traffic jam? 11. Do you always observe the traffic rules? 12. When and where can you cross the street? 13. Can you drive a car? 14. Do you have a driving licence? 15. Is it difficult to park a car in this town? 16. Have you ever been fined? What for? How much money were you fined? 17. Can you ride a bike or a motorbike? Where do you go on a bike? 18. Have you ever had a car accident? 19. Do you often change your mind?

**C.** 1. Do you cross any bridges on your way to the university? 2. Where are the bridges across the Miass river situated? 3. What are St Petersburg bridges famous for? 4. What is situated on the embankment of the Miass River? 5. Do you live in a busy street, quiet alley, blind alley, country lane, boulevard? 6. What monuments are situated in Revolution Square, in Komsomolski Square? 7. What is situated on the nearest crossroads? 8. When are we going to have an underground in our town? 9. Have you seen the Moscow Metro? What impression did it make on you? 10. What is the difference between a pedestrian and a passer-by? 11. What (who) do you come across on your way to the university? 12. What do you do when you come across an unfamiliar English word in the text? 13. What will you see if you turn around now? 15. When do you want to turn away? 16. When do you have to turn back? 17. Have you ever got lost? Did you ask anybody the way? Who helped you to find the way? 18. What is situated in the neighbourhood of the university, in the neighbourhood of your block of flats? 19. Explain how to get to your place from the university.



**Ex. 6. Make up a conversation using vocabulary 4.**

**Ex. 7. Complete the sentences.**

1. When I arrived ... I was surprised to see ... 2. If you go through this arch you'll find yourself ... 3. ... made an awful impression on me. 4. Will you put me down at ...? 5. ... at the next stop but three from here. 6. I've changed my mind. I don't want to ... 7. Is this seat vacant? Would you mind if I ...? 8. Show your ..., please. 9. Could you give me a lift? I want to go to ... 10. What a beautiful ... ! 11. Guess what! I've just run into ... 12. I'm a stranger here. Could you tell me ... 13. On my way home ... 14. ... and I found myself ... 15. All the people were hurrying in the direction of ... 16. 'Move out of my way!' ... shouted. 17. ... is half an hour's walk from here.

**Ex. 8. Supply questions or remarks to these responses.**

1. It's a blind alley. 2. I'm lost. 3. I can give you a lift. 4. You are going in the wrong direction. 5. Go straight on as far as Revolution Square and you will see it on your right. 6. You may turn away. 7. Turn around, will you? 8. You'd better turn back. 9. I'm afraid it's too overcrowded. 10. It's twenty roubles. 11. I'm sorry but I'm a stranger myself. 12. I'm afraid there's nothing like this in the neighbourhood. 13. The nearest one is round the corner. 14. I can be fined for speeding.

**Ex. 9. Choose the correct word. Consult usage notes.**

**A** 1. She lives in a small (city, town) near Paris. 2. He bought us two tickets for the best show in (city, town). 3. The Bank of England is situated in the (City, Town). 4. Let's go out of (city, town) for the weekend, shall we? 5. She hasn't been to her home (city, town) for ten years. 6. He was born in New York (City, Town) and spent his childhood there. 7. Big (city, town) life is much faster and brighter than life in the country. 8. Let's ask what bus goes down(city,town). 9. (City, Town) dwellers have to face such problems as crowded transport, traffic jams and pollution. 10. People who live in the capital (city, town) seem to think they are superior to everyone else in the country. 11. There are only villages and a few market (cities, towns) in the area.

**B** 1. That's enough! Get (on, off, out of) my house! 2. How can I get (on, off, to, up) the railway station? 3. Do you get (on, off, to, up, into) at the next stop? 4. How are you getting (on, off, to) at your new job? – Quite well, thank you. 5. How do all those animals get (to, along, alone) with each other? 6. Let's get (up, down) to business, shall we? 7. The hill was so high that she had to get (on, off, out of) her bike and walk. 8. He got (on, of, off) the plane and went to the customs. 9. Tell the driver I want to get (on, off) at the next stop. 10. Get (on, of, off) a number 18 bus in front of your house. It'll take you straight to Revolution Square. 11. The police officer told him to get (on, off, out, out of) the car. 12. The taxi stopped near the man but he wasn't in a hurry to get (on, off, down, into, out of) it. 13. We got (on, in, out, along) a ship and began to look for the captain. 14. I'll have to get (in, along, off, up, down) early tomorrow. 15. When the ship began to sink, the passengers had very little time to get (on, off, into) the boats. 16. The policeman saw the thieves get (on, off, into) the stolen car.

**Ex. 10. Fill in the blanks with the words *cross, across, crossing, crossroads, subway, underground*.**

1. When her marriage ended she felt like she reached an important ..... of her life. 2. The ..... of the Channel was rough, but luckily none of us were seasick. 3. She wore a small gold ..... around her neck. 4. We can't go here, there's no pedestrian ..... 5. You should walk one block and then go ..... the street. 6. He put a ..... on the map to mark where the house was. 7. You can't drive very fast along this avenue, there are traffic lights at every ..... 8. Christians believe that Jesus Christ died on a ..... 9. They live ..... the street from us. 10. Don't ..... the street in the middle of the block, it's much safer to go through a ..... 11. In London the ..... is called the Tube, while the Americans call it a ..... 12. Let's take a look at the map of the Moscow ..... 13. The IRA is an ..... terrorist organization of Northern Ireland.

**Ex. 11. Fill in the blanks with the words *accident, incident, event, case, occasion*.**

1. He broke his leg in a skiing ..... last month. 2. To my great relief, the wedding ceremony passed without ..... 3. Something may go wrong. In that ..... let me know at once. 4. Fleming discovered penicillin almost by ..... 5. In ..... of emergency, break this window. 6. Meeting Professor Drake was an ..... that changed his life. 7. I'm sure he won't forget to come, but will you phone him just in .....? 8. He lost his best friend in a shooting ..... 9. Police are trying to reconstruct the sequence of ..... on the night of the killing. 10. The fog and icy roads led to several serious car ..... 11. I am afraid I won't be able to come. – Well, in that ..... I won't go either. 12. It was quite an ..... Everyone was there, dressed in their best clothes. 13. In the evening they would gather in the living room to talk, joke and discuss the .....of the day. 14. You shouldn't go so fast on this motorcycle or you'll have an ..... 15. The town beer festival is an annual ..... 16. The opening ceremony of the Olympic Games was a memorable ..... for everyone. 17. She seldom wears dresses, she only puts them on for special..... 18. I wouldn't quarrel with him in your ..... 19. Apart from the ..... in Las Vegas our vacation was completely trouble-free.

**Ex. 12. Insert articles if necessary.**

1. I am .....stranger here. Could you tell me .....way to ..... centre? 2. Our town is situated in one of .....most picturesque parts of .....Russia – in .....Urals. 3. They went in .....direction of .....railway station. They wanted to take ..... eight o'clock train. 4. Which is .....shortest way to .....Revolution Square? – Go as far as ..... nearest tram stop and take ..... tram three. Get off at .....next stop but four. 5. Harry took ..... first turning on ..... left and found himself in ..... strange place. He realised that he had lost .....way. 6. Danny travels ..... lot on ..... business. ..... next week he's making .....business trip to .....South America. 7. Let's take .....number nineteen trolleybus. .... stop is just round .....corner. 8. .... traffic is heavy during ..... rush hour. 9. In .... hard years of .....World War II our town turned into ..... mighty armoury of .....front. 10. Let's go on .....excursion about .....St Petersburg to get .....idea of this wonderful city. There are .....lot of .... excursions to choose from. 11. My parents live in ..... Tsvilling Street not far from .....centre of .....town. They live on .....top floor of ..... seven-storey building. 12. Shall we go on .....foot or ride on .....bike? – I'd rather take .....taxi. 13. Is there .....hairdresser's in .....neighbourhood? – Yes, there is .....very good one on .....next crossroads. It's .....ten-minute walk from here. 14. His brother had .....accident yesterday. He was taken to ....hospital. 15. I'm pressed for ....time. Could you give me .....lift?

**Ex. 13. Insert prepositions or adverbs if necessary.**

1. I live ..... Kirov Street, not far ..... the centre. 2. If you go .....trolley-bus you will have to change .....another one .....Revolution Square. 3. Go ..... this street .....the first crossroads, then turn ..... the corner and walk straight ..... for a while and ..... less than five minutes you'll find yourself ..... front ..... the hotel. 4. .... case you get lost you may ask the policeman .....the way. 5. Turn ..... left .....the corner. The theatre is ..... ten minutes' walk .....here. You can't miss .....it. 6. When I saw him he was hurrying .....the direction ..... the university. 7. Am I right .....the Opera House? Where do I get .....? 8. They were impressed ..... the building ..... the theatre and surprised ..... its size. 9. We arrived .....the station just ..... time ..... the eight o'clock train. 10. They left .....their home town .....Moscow and arrived ..... the capital two days later. 11. Do you travel .....business or .....pleasure? 12. I'm too tired to go .....an excursion today. I'd rather stay .....the hotel and take .....a nap. 13. The weather is fine. Let's go ..... foot. 14. Does he live .....the outskirts? 15. You should only go ..... the street when the light changes .....red .....green. 16. Where did he put up .....? 17. We got stuck ..... a traffic jam and were late.....work. 18. The tour ..... the town will give you a good idea ..... its size and beauty. 19. The shop is .....the street .....us. 20. The buses are overcrowded ..... people going ..... work ..... the rush hour ..... the morning. 21. The town was founded .....the 13<sup>th</sup> .....September .....1736.

#### **Ex. 14. Translate into English.**

**A.** 1. Я живу на одной из наиболее оживлённых улиц нашего города. Мои родители живут на окраине, а дом моей бабушки находится в 14 км от города. 2. Картины Пушкинского музея произвели на меня большое впечатление. 3. Поездка по городу доставила нам большое удовольствие. 4. Толпы людей спешили по направлению к станции метро. 5. Давай выйдем на следующей остановке и пройдемся пешком. 6. Простите, вы не знаете, как проехать в аэропорт? 7. Нельзя ездить на машине по тротуару. 8. Джин добирается до школы на семнадцатом трамвае. 9. – Вы выходите на следующей остановке? – Нет, я выхожу на площади, через две остановки. 10. В последнее время в городе построено много подземных переходов. 11. Его дядя часто ездит в командировки, и ему приходится останавливаться в гостиницах. 12. В часы пик автобусы и троллейбусы переполнены, и невозможно найти свободное место. 13. Они должны были встретиться у входа на вокзал. 14. Мне кажется, мы идём не в том направлении. Должно быть, мы потерялись. Давай спросим дорогу у какого-нибудь прохожего. 15. Дедушка задремал в автобусе и проехал свою остановку. 16. Меня первый раз оштрафовали за превышение скорости. 17. Сколько стоит проезд?

**B.** 1. Том очень хорошо водит машину и никогда не попадал в аварию. 2. Летом мы много ездим на велосипедах. 3. Мой двоюродный брат получил права в прошлом месяце и теперь ездит на работу на машине. Это занимает у него 15 минут. 4. Когда троллейбус поехал по направлению к парку, я понял, что мне придётся пересечь. 5. Поверните на вторую улицу слева и высадите меня, пожалуйста, у той арки. 6. Моя младшая сестра не любит соблюдать правила движения. Она всегда переходит улицу посреди квартала и не смотрит на светофор. 7. Концертный зал расположен на набережной справа от моста через Миасс напротив памятника Прокофьеву. Вы можете добраться туда на третьем или шестнадцатом трамвае или на восемнадцатом автобусе. Это недалеко отсюда. Вам надо выйти на остановке «Театр оперы и балета». 8. Я правильно иду к автовокзалу? Это далеко отсюда? Я приезжий и плохо знаю город. 9. Когда мы приехали в этот район, по соседству строилась станция метро. 10. Я передумал. Мы не поедem на автобусе. Лучше возьмём такси. Уже половина пятого. Мы опаздываем. 11. Большое движение на улицах нашего города создаёт массу проблем, среди которых загрязнение воздуха, дорожные пробки и аварии. 12. Элмер путешествует по Европе. Он уже посетил восемь стран и получил представление о некоторых европейских столицах. Они произвели на него большое впечатление.

#### **Ex. 15. Discussion tasks**

1. What can you say for and against living in your native place?
2. Speak about some town you've visited.
3. Speak about the town you want to visit.
4. Compare life in a big city with life in the country.
5. What would you like to change in Chelyabinsk to make it a better place to live?
6. What theatres, art galleries and museums have you visited in Chelyabinsk?

#### **Ex. 16. Conversation tasks**

1. Your common friend is coming to Chelyabinsk. You discuss where he should live, what you can show him, what places you can visit together.
2. Invite your classmate to your home and explain how to get there.
3. Ask your classmate how to get to various places in Chelyabinsk.
4. Persuade your friend to go everywhere on foot or by bike.
5. You have been fined for violating the traffic rules. Complain to your friend about it.

**Ex 17. Listen to the dialogues and make your own ones.**

**🔊 Dialogue 1. ASKING THE WAY (1)**

1

**A** Ex `cuse , me. 'Can you 'tell me 'where  
'South , Street is, , please?

**B** 'Take the `second on the , left and 'then  
'ask a , gain.

**A** 'Is it , far?

**B** , No, it's 'only a 'bout 'five 'minutes'  
, walk.

**A** 'Many , thanks.

**B** 'Not at `all.

3

**A** Ex , cuse me, but I'm 'trying to 'find the  
'Town , Hall.

**B** 'Take the `third on the , right and 'go  
'straight , on.

**A** 'Should I 'take a , bus?

**B** , No, you can 'walk it in 'under 'five  
, minutes.

**A** 'Thank you , very much in , deed.

**B** 'That's `quite all , right.

2

**A** Ex , cuse me, please. 'Could you 'tell me  
the 'way to the , station?

**B** 'Turn , round and 'turn 'left at the , traffic-  
lights.

**A** 'Will it 'take me 'long to , get there?

**B** , No, it's 'no 'distance at , all

**A** , Thank you.

**B** `That's O , K.

4

**A** Ex , cuse me, please. 'Could you , tell me  
'how to 'get to the 'town , centre?

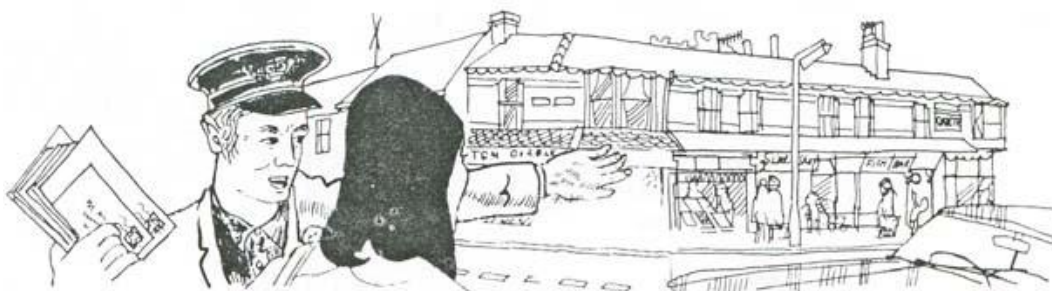
**B** `First , right, 'second , left. You `can't  
, miss it.

**A** 'Is it 'too 'far to , walk?

**B** , No, it's 'only a 'couple of 'hundred  
, yards. (1 yard = 91,4 cm)

**A** 'Thanks , very much.

**B** It's a , pleasure.



## ☛ Dialogue 2. ON A BUS (2)

Bus conductors still collect passengers' fares in some towns, but single-deck one-man buses are seen more and more, especially in country districts. In London, fast buses called 'Red Arrows' run non-stop between important places. The fare is fixed, and passengers pass through an automatic gate which opens when the correct coins are inserted.

1

A 'Does `this ,bus ,go to the ,station?

B `No, you'll 'have to 'get 'off at the ,bank, and 'take a '1'9 ,2.

A 'Can you 'tell me 'where to 'get ,off?

B It's the 'next 'stop but ,one.

3

A 'Do you 'go to the 'sea- ,front?

B `No, you're 'going the 'wrong `way. You 'want a '1'4 ,3 from the ,church.

A 'Have we 'got 'much 'further to ,go?

B It's the 'next ,stop.

2

A 'Am 'I O'K for St 'Mary's ,Church?

B `No, 'we 'only 'go as 'far as the ,park, but you can ,walk from there.

A 'How much 'further ,is it?

B It's 'quite a ,way yet, but I'll 'tell you in 'good ,time.

4

A 'Is `this the ,right ,bus for the ,Town ,Hall?

B `No, you 'should have 'caught a ,12. 'Jump 'out at the ,bridge and 'get 'one ,there.

A 'Could you ,tell me 'when we 'get ,there?

B It's 'three 'stops 'after ,this one.



## Ex 18. DIRECTION GAME

Follow the directions and find out the place the woman wants to reach

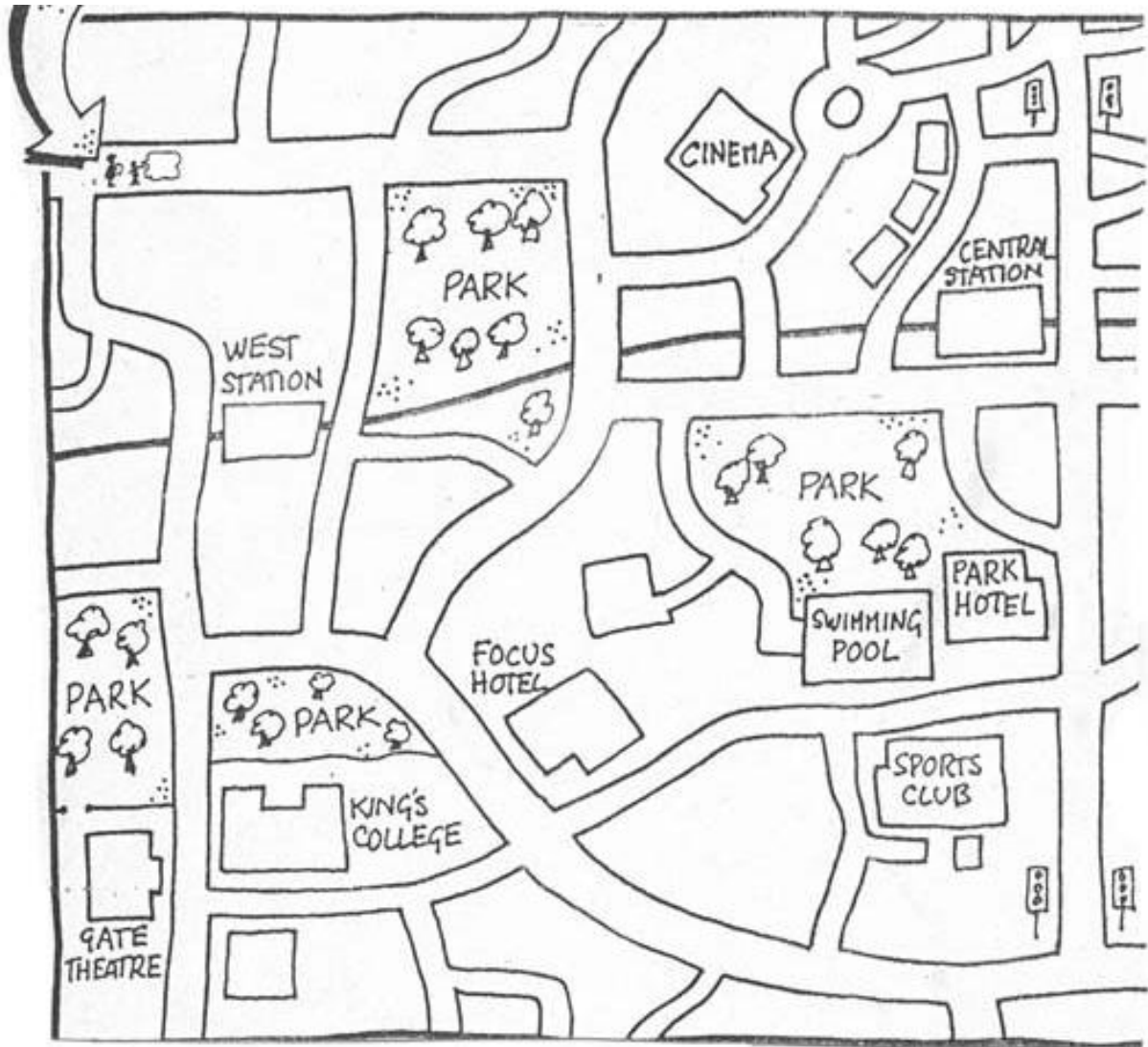
Walk straight on to the end of the road. Then turn right.

Take the second turning on the left. Go down the road till you come to a crossroads.

Turn right. Then turn right again at the traffic lights.

Go down the road until you come to a park. Then turn left.

Keep straight on for about two hundred metres and it's on your right.



Ex 19. Match the numbers above the road signs with their verbal descriptions.

- Turn right ahead
- Pedestrian crossing
- Stop and give away
- Road narrows on both sides
- Route to be used by pedal cyclists only
- Vehicles may pass either side
- No pedestrians
- Crossroads
- Two-way traffic crosses one-way road



Sing the song.

## THE TRANSPORT RAP

My mum takes the bus to work  
My dad drives his car  
My sister goes to college  
'Cos it isn't very far  
I go to school by bicycle  
But sometimes when it rains  
I take the bus to the station  
And then I go by train

My daily life is boring  
It's always the same  
I want to sail a yacht to school  
Or have my own jet plane

My daily life is boring  
It really gets me down  
I want to ride a motorbike  
And be the fastest kid in town

My mum takes the bus to work  
My dad drives his car  
My sister goes to college  
'Cos it isn't very far  
I go to school by bicycle  
But sometimes when it rains  
I take the bus to the station  
And then I go by train

My daily life is boring  
I wish it were more fun  
I want to drive a limousine  
And give lifts to everyone

My daily life is boring  
Why can't it be cool?  
I want to abseil\* from the roof  
Or ride an elephant to school.

\* спускаться вниз по вертикальной поверхности на веревке (вид альпинизма)



## TOPIC 7. WEATHER

Read, translate and reproduce the dialogue.

### WEATHER TALK

**Laura** Lovely day today, isn't it?

**George** It is. There's hardly a cloud in the sky in fact.

**L** We'll have a heat wave, I fear. It must be 25 degrees in the shade.

**G** It's very close today. Not a leaf is stirring.

**L** There's hardly a breath of air.

**G** By the way, I've just read the weather forecast on the Internet here.

**L** What does it say?

**G** "Pressure will remain high to the south-west of the British Isles. There'll be occasional rain or drizzle, but bright weather with a few scattered showers will spread to England and Wales."

**L** I fear a thunderstorm is coming.

**G** The sky is overcast and the sun is going in.

**L:** It looks like rain. We should take some shelter. It never rains but it pours!

**G** Fortunately enough, I've got my umbrella with me. Let me put it up.

**L** What a tremendous clap of thunder!

**G** And what a flash of lightning!

**L** But the English have a saying about the weather: If you don't like it now, just wait a bit.

**G** Look! It's clearing up. The clouds are lifting.

**L** It has stopped raining. The air is remarkably fresh. Look at this wonderful rainbow!

**G** We are in for a spell of good weather again. Now I know why Englishmen always grumble about the weather.

**L** Yes, they do like to complain about their climate, but you shouldn't pay too much attention to it. The devil isn't so black as he is painted.

### VOCABULARY

1. weather forecast; to forecast; weatherman; to be weather sensitive;

to get (become) shorter / longer; to be in bloom / blossom; to turn ripe; an Indian summer;

to keep fine, dull; to remain; to return to life; the temperature; below zero, above zero;

to rain hard (heavily); to drizzle; raindrop; in a pouring rain; rainy; to get wet through (to the skin);  
dirty; dusty; muddy; to hail (*It hails*); to carry, put up an umbrella;  
pool; swimming pool; to swim; to bathe; waterfall; flood; to save for a rainy day;

2. to snow hard (heavily), lightly; snowy; snowfall; storm; snowstorm;

snowflake; to make a snowman; yeti; to freeze over; thaw;

to throw snowballs at; to fight with snowballs; snowdrift; snowdrop;

to sleet (*It sleets*); to melt; to turn to slush; slippery; to slip; ice; icy; icicle;

to skate; to ski (he skis, skied, skiing); a ski (skis); sledge; to go down the slide;

3. wind; windy; to blow; a blast of wind; blustery; east, west, north, south wind;

a gentle (light), biting, strong (hard) wind; to sway in the wind; still; close (stuffy);

to air; in a draught (draft); breath of air; to breathe deeply; gale warning; hurricane;

the sun; to shine; sunny; to rise; to go down; sunrise; dawn; sunset;

to lie in the sun; ray of light; to sparkle in the sun; shade; shadow;

to hide behind the clouds; to be covered with; the clouds float across the sky;

fog; foggy; smog; chill; chilly; warmth; warm; heat; hot; heat wave;

shore; the shore of the lake; seashore; seacoast; to go to the seaside; the bank of the river;



#### 4. Translate and explain the proverbs. Find Russian equivalents. Learn them.

1. Everything is good in its season.
2. Every cloud has a silver lining.
3. Any port in a storm.
4. After rain comes fair weather.
5. Make hay while the sun shines.
6. As you sow you shall mow.
7. Still waters run deep.

#### Usage Note: shadow and shade

1) **shadow** – тень (в прямом и переносном смысле)

*Look how funny our shadows are! Vampires are said to cast no shadow. She grew up in the shadow of her film star sister. Mike has become Lucy's shadow. He's afraid of his own shadow. They buried her in the shadow of the old elm.*

2) **shade** – тень как неосвещенное место, полумрак, неизвестность.

*Let's find a table in the shade. It's 35 degrees in the shade today. They sat in the shade of the tree.*

### MEMORY WORK

1. Man is a fool.  
When it's hot  
He wants it cool.  
When it's cool  
He wants it hot.  
He always wants  
What he has not.

2. When the weather is wet  
We must not fret, –  
When the weather is cold  
We must not scold.  
When the weather is warm  
We must not storm, –  
But be thankful together  
Whatever the weather.

### 3. MONTHS

by Sara Coleridge (1802-1852)

*January* brings us snow,  
Makes our feet and fingers glow.  
*February* brings us rain,  
Thaws the frozen lake again.  
*March* brings breezes loud and shrill,  
Stirs the dancing daffodil.  
*April* brings the primrose sweet,  
Scatters daisies at our feet.  
*May* brings flocks of pretty lambs  
Skipping by their fleecy dams.  
*June* brings tulips, lilies, roses,  
Fills the children's hands with posies.

Hot *July* brings cooling showers,  
Apricots and gilly-flowers.  
*August* brings the sheaves of corn,  
Then the harvest home is borne.  
Warm *September* brings the fruit,  
Sportsmen then begin to shoot.  
Fresh *October* brings the pheasant.  
Then to gather nuts is pleasant.  
Dull *November* brings the blast,  
Then the leaves are whirling fast.  
Chill *December* brings the sleet,  
Blazing fire and Christmas treat.

### EXERCISES

#### Ex. 1. Answer the questions.

A. 1. Do you listen to weather reports on the radio, watch them on TV or read in the Internet? 2. Is it easy to forecast the weather? 3. What weather have the weathermen promised for today? 4. Do you know any weather signs? 5. How do you like the weather today? 6. What does the weather forecast say for tomorrow? 7. What is a fine day like? 8. When do the days get longer, shorter? 9. Are the days becoming longer or shorter now? 10. Is anything in bloom or in blossom now? 11. What turns ripe in August in the Urals? 12. Is it fine or dull today? 13. Will it keep like that for the rest of the month? 14. What is the temperature now? 15. Will the temperature remain the same in the evening? 16. Are you weather sensitive? How does weather affect you?

**B.** 1. Do you like rain? Is it raining now? Does it look like rain? 2. When does it often rain? What do you see on the window pane when it rains? 3. Have you ever been caught in a pouring rain? Have you ever got wet through? 4. When are the streets dusty and when are they muddy? 5. When does it hail? Have you ever been caught in a hail? 6. Do you often carry an umbrella? 7. Did you like to walk in the pools when you were small? 8. Do you ever go to a swimming pool? Can you swim well? 9. Have you ever seen a waterfall? 10. Have you saved anything for a rainy day? Why or why not? 11. Where will you come rain or shine?

**C.** 1. Does it snow hard in the Urals in winter? 2. Do you like snowy weather? 3. Was there a heavy or a light fall of snow this winter? Were there huge snowdrifts? 4. Do you like to walk in a snowfall? 5. Do you like to walk through the snowdrifts? 6. Have you ever been caught in a snowstorm? 7. Do all snowflakes look the same? 8. When did you make a snowman last? 9. What is a yeti? Do you believe this creature exists? 10. Do you like to fight with snowballs? 11. What happens when it sleets? 12. When does the snow begin to melt? 13. Is it dangerous when the roads are icy and slippery? What may happen? 14. Do you like to ski? Where do you go skiing? 15. Can you skate well? Do you go to a skating rink? 16. When do the first snowdrops appear?

**D.** 1. Is it windy or still today? What wind is blowing today? 2. Do you like windy weather? 3. Can a blustery wind be dangerous? What can strong blasts of wind do? 4. Do you mind when it's stuffy in the room? 5. It's getting close, not a leaf is stirring and there's hardly a breath of air. What is going to happen next? 6. Is it good to sit in a draught? 7. When do you breathe deeply? 8. Do we have hurricanes in the Urals?

**E.** 1. Is it sunny today? When does the sun shine brightly? 2. Where does the sun rise and go down? 3. Have you ever watched a sunrise or a sunset? 4. Do you like to lie in the sun? 5. Have any rays of sunshine got into the classroom now? 6. What kind of person can be called 'a ray of sunshine'? 7. What can sparkle in the sun? 8. When do you want to stay in the shade or want the sun to hide behind the clouds? 9. Has anyone ever followed you like a shadow? 10. Is the sky covered with clouds today? Will it clear up later? 11. Is it foggy today? 12. Is there smog in our city? 13. Was it chilly or warm when you were going to the university today? 14. Is it hot now? Do you like heat? 15. Are we in for a heat wave? 16. Would you like to find yourself on the bank of the Miass river, on the shore of some lake in the Urals or on the seashore now? 17. Do earthquake ever happen in the Urals? 18. What is your favourite season and month? Why? What is your favourite weather?

### **Ex. 2. Insert articles if necessary**

1. What's ..... weather like today? Have you heard ..... weather forecast on ..... radio? 2. What ..... nasty day! What ..... rainy weather! What ..... big pools! What ..... mud! 3. .... sun is shining brightly in ..... sky. There's hardly .....breath of ..... air. 4. .... Gulf Stream is ..... warm current flowing from .....Gulf of .... Mexico round .....north of ..... Europe, ..... British Isles and ..... Iceland. 5. There was ..... light fall of .....snow at ..... night. 6. He has saved some money for ..... rainy day. 7. .... air is stifling, not .... leaf is stirring. 8. Is he lying in .....sun or swimming in ..... sea? – He's reading ..... .. book in .....shade. 9. It's so pleasant to go for ..... walk on .....sunny summer morning. 10. What big .....snowdrifts! Shall we make ..... snowman or fight with .....snowballs? 11. She slipped on .....sidewalk in ..... pouring rain. 12. If you don't take ..... shelter, you'll get wet to ..... skin. 13. ....spell of ..... sunny weather in ..... October is called .....Indian Summer. 14. ....strong wind is blowing from ..... north. 15. ....weather in ..... south of .....Great Britain is milder than in ..... Scotland. 16. .... spring is ..... season when ..... nature returns to life. 18. Look! ..... apple trees are in .... blossom.

### **Ex. 3. Fill the gaps with prepositions or adverbs if necessary.**

1 You are lying ..... the sun and complaining ..... the heat. How stupid ..... you! Why don't you swim ..... the sea. 2. I don't like to go ..... a walk ..... such nasty weather. I prefer to stay ..... home. 3. It's pleasant to go ..... work .... foot ..... a warm sunny morning. 4. .... the

morning the trees were covered ..... frost. 5. It's hot. The temperature is 32 degrees ..... zero ..... the shade today. 6. Look ..... the sky. There's hardly a cloud ..... it. We are ..... a spell ..... fine weather. 7. It's pouring ..... rain! Put ..... your umbrella or we shall get wet ..... 8. The rain is ..... and it's clearing ..... 9. The weather is getting worse. The sun has hidden ..... the clouds. It looks ..... rain. 10. Look ..... the map ..... the next page. What country can you see ..... the picture? 11. The clouds are floating ..... the sky. 12. He slipped ..... the ice and his bag fell ..... the ground. 13. The sky is overcast ..... low, black clouds and peals ..... thunder are heard ..... the distance. 14. Don't grumble ..... the weather. You pay too much attention ..... it. 15. Let's fight ..... snowballs. – I'd prefer to throw snowballs ..... Kate. She is sure to like it. 16. The spring has come and the snow has turned ..... slush. 17. What has happened .... you? Have you been caught .... the thunderstorm? You are wet .... the skin! 18. Don't go ..... There are pools ..... water everywhere. You may be splashed ..... mud ..... a passing car.

**Ex. 4.**

**A. Insert 'to rain' in the correct form, if it doesn't suit, use 'to begin raining', 'to stop raining'.**

1. It ..... today yet.
2. It .....yesterday.
3. The weatherman said it ..... the next day.
4. It ..... for two days already.
5. It often ..... in autumn.
6. They supposed it ..... by the time the film ended.
7. I think it.....tomorrow.
8. He remembered how hard it ..... the week before.
9. Look! It ..... outside.
10. It ..... for a week before they arrived.
11. He informed us it ..... for three days by Saturday.
12. It .....still ..... when I left yesterday.
13. It's the first time it ..... so hard here.
14. We were sure it ..... still .....when we came back.
15. Hardly ..... it ..... when we got wet through.
16. It's ten days since it ..... last.
17. I'm afraid it ..... still .....when we wake up.
18. We hope it ..... by noon.
19. It may .....today.
20. Tomorrow it ..... for five days already.

**B. Match each word with one or more words from the box.**

1. thunder 2. natural 3. snow 4. heat 5. hail 6. gale 7. pouring 8. Indian 9. hoar 10. rain 11. water  
12. weather 13. sun 14. swimming 15. whirl 16. sea 17. earth

stones / pool / sign / drift / wind / warning / rise / coast / shine / drop / quake / man / summer  
shore / fall / storm / disaster / wave / rain / flake / frost / side / set / forecast / beam / report

.....  
.....  
.....

**Ex. 5. Say the opposite.**

1. It's the season when nature dies. 2. The temperature falls to 30 degrees below zero. 3. She prefers to lie in the sun. 4. The sky is cloudless. 5. Birds return from warm countries. 6. They met at sunrise. 7. The climate of this area is dry and hot. 8. The weather is fine today. 9. Frosty weather has set in. 10. The weatherman says it will keep fine today. 11. It's very windy today. 12. The air is so fresh in the room. 13. Look! The clouds are building up. 14. There was a good fall of snow. 15. The sun is looking out of the clouds.

**Ex. 6. Complete the sentences with the words *shade* or *shadow*.**

1. These flowers do best when they grow in the ..... 2. It was 27 degrees above zero in the ..... yesterday. 3. The birch is casting a long ..... on the road. 4. Look! Freddie is lying in the..... asleep. 5. The dog saw its ..... on the wall. 6. The sun is hot today. Let's walk in the ..... 7. He must be a vampire, he casts no ..... ! 8. Our ..... grew longer and longer as the sun went down. 9. She was put in the ..... of her elder sister who was a real beauty. 10. We sat down in the ..... and had a bite. 11. What's up, man? You follow me like a .....!

**Ex. 7. Fill the blanks with the words from the box.**

snowstorms   melts   frost   sleet   snowdrifts   thaws   slush   icy   winter
--

My first experience of real ..... weather was when I went to Northern Canada. I was used to a sort of snow that falls in London, which quickly turns into brown ..... In fact, most of the time I was in London, it didn't really snow properly, it was mostly ..... Apart from that, British winters mean a bit of white ..... on my garden and occasionally having to drive very carefully on ..... roads early in the morning. I had never experienced the ..... and ..... that can paralyse a whole city in less than an hour and close roads completely. However, when the earth finally ..... and all the snow .....away in spring, everything comes to life again and looks more beautiful than ever.

**Ex. 8. What kind of weather do you think caused the following to happen? Write a sentence which could go *before* each of these.**

1. We had to sit in a shade every afternoon. 2. Cars were skidding out of control. 3. Even the postman had to use a boat to get around. 4. They had to close the airport; the snow was a metre deep. 5. The earth became rock-hard and a lot of plants died. 6. It blew the newspaper clean out of my hands. 7. I could hardly see a hand in front of my face. 8. Big trees were uprooted like matchsticks. 9. We were able to sit in the garden in the middle of winter.

**Ex. 9. Translate into English.**

**A.** 1. Ты слышала прогноз? Какая сегодня будет погода? Мне брать зонтик или плащ? – Синоптики обещали ясную погоду, двадцать градусов тепла, лёгкий ветерок и никакого дождя. Кроме того, твой зонтик сломан, а плащ в химчистке. 2. Какая сегодня ужасная погода. Дождь моросит весь день, везде лужи и грязь. 3. Сегодня не такой туман, как вчера. Вчера туман был такой густой, что невозможно было ехать на машине. 4. Небо покрыто тучами, идёт дождь со снегом и дует резкий ветер. 5. Жара становится угнетающей. Очень душно. Ни дуновения ветерка. Ни один листик не шелохнётся. Похоже, будет гроза. 6. Посмотри, тучи рассеиваются. Дождь перестал. Пойдём погуляем. Воздух такой свежий после дождя. 7. Стало холодно. Скоро озеро замёрзнет, и мы сможем кататься на коньках. Пойдём сегодня в лес на лыжах? 8. Парк выглядит великолепно, когда земля покрыта снегом, а на деревьях сверкает иней. 9. Я не слышала прогноз погоды и не знаю, будет ли сегодня дождь. Если дождя не будет, я поеду за город купаться и загорать. 10. Погода становится теплее. Я думаю, скоро зацветут фруктовые деревья. 11. У нас в саду начинают созревать яблоки.

**В.** 1. В Англии поля и парки остаются зелёными даже зимой. 2. Солнце скрылось. Начинается дождь. Раскрой зонтик, иначе мы промокнем насквозь. 3. Посмотри! Выпало много снега. Теперь дети будут кататься на лыжах и санках, играть в снежки и лепить снеговика. 4. Как красиво! Капельки дождя сверкают на солнце. А вот и радуга! 5. Эти ужасные раскаты грома разбудили меня ночью. Дождь лил как из ведра. Посмотри, какие везде лужи. Неприятно гулять в такую погоду. 6. Согласно прогнозу погоды на этой неделе будут изредка выпадать дожди, местами будут грозы, ветер юго-западный, температура двадцать четыре – двадцать шесть градусов тепла. 7. Не сиди на сквозняке, простудишься. Закрой окно, пожалуйста. Комната уже проветрилась и совсем не душно. 8. Снег растаял и превратился в слякоть. Скоро солнце высушит землю, появится трава и первые подснежники. 9. Сильный порывистый ветер дует сегодня. Смотри, как качаются деревья. 10. Солнце встаёт позже и заходит раньше зимой. Дни становятся короче, а ночи длиннее. Самый мрачный месяц – декабрь. В январе больше солнечных дней, когда снег сверкает на солнце. Февраль – ветреный, идёт дождь со снегом, днём слякоть, а ночью холодно. 11. Какой чудесный день! Какой свежий воздух! Какое синее небо! Какая зелёная трава! Какие красивые цветы! Какие милые люди!

**Ex 10. Read and translate the dialogue and give your own opinion on the perfect holiday.**

### THE PERFECT HOLIDAY

Kelly: OK, so if you had just one vacation a year, where would you go?

Alex: Mmm ... I'd go to the mountains. I love skiing in the holidays.

Kelly: Oh, God, no way. Totally, completely want to go to the beach. I need a tan, and just to relax and feel the heat.

Alex: What's the point of just rolling around on the beach, being lazy? I hate it, you just have a headache and get burned. I just don't understand why you like it so much.

Kelly: Because it's the beach. And everyone is really good-looking and wearing few clothes, and there're drinks with umbrellas, and it's just tropical. It's like the idea of paradise, you know, when you are working in this cold city all the time. Even if it's a fake illusion, it's just paradise. You have no worries ....

Alex: Yeah, but paradise can be beautiful snow, and it's great and it's cold and you can ski. You get so much physical exercise.

Kelly: Well, you can do water sports and stuff. I mean, swimming around is good exercise and you know, Jet Ski.

Alex: Not compared to physical exercise with snowboarding gear and everything.

Kelly: Yeah, and freezing and having a running nose and all that kind of stuff?

Alex: Yeah, but after a cold day in the snow you go inside and there's a nice fire and hot chocolate and a chat with your friends. It's great.

Kelly: Ah, I don't know. So, what do you think you are actually gonna be doing during December?

Alex: Yeah, actually today it's really freezing. I'm dreaming of going to the beach.

Kelly: Ah-ha, I told you.

### Ex. 11. Discussion tasks

1. Compare various seasons.
2. Describe your favourite weather.
3. What are the advantages and disadvantages of the climate in the South Urals?
4. Speak about occasions when you found yourself outside in bad weather.
5. Speak about occasions when your plans were broken because of the weather.
6. What climate would you prefer to live in?

### Ex. 12. Conversation tasks

1. Speak about your plans for summer.
2. Look at some travel agencies advertisements and choose tours to your liking.
3. Invite your friend to a picnic at the nearest weekend.
4. Your friend invited you to his/her country house. Find out more about it.
5. Discuss the weather forecast for the next week.

**Ex. 13. Listen to the dialogues and make your own ones.**

**☛ Dialogue 1. THE WEATHER (44)**

Foreigners are often amused that the English spend so much time discussing the weather. The reason for this is not simply that our weather is interesting and variable, but that the English are reluctant to converse about personal matters with people who are not friends. Mentioning the weather can be a useful and inoffensive way of starting a conversation with a stranger at a bus-stop or in a train.

1

**A** 'Fairly `mild for the ,time of , year.

**A** It's 'good to 'see the , sun again.

**B** , Yes. 'Quite 'different from the , forecast.

**B** A 'big im ,provement on 'what we've 'been ^ having.

**A** 'They<sup>1</sup> 'say we're 'in for , snow<sup>2</sup>.

**A** It's sup'posed to 'cloud , over this 'after , noon.

**B** 'Let's 'hope it 'keeps `fine for the , week , end.

**B** I 'didn't 'think it would →last

2

**A** It 'seems to be 'clearing `up.

**B** It 'makes a , change, , doesn't it ?

**A** Ap'parently it's 'going to 'turn , colder.

**B** →Still, a'nother 'month should 'see us 'through the →worst of it<sup>3</sup>.

3

**A** 'Nice and `bright this , morning.

**B** , Yes. 'Much 'better than , yesterday.

**A** The 'wind'll 'probably 'get `up , later.

**B** As 'long as it 'doesn't →rain<sup>4</sup>.



<sup>1</sup> They: the forecasters

<sup>2</sup> we're in for snow: snow is expected

<sup>3</sup> see us through the worst of it: find us through the worst of the winter and into spring

<sup>4</sup> as long as it doesn't rain: I don't mind what happens provided it doesn't rain

## ADDITIONAL TEXTS

### TEXT 1. GROUNDHOG DAY

#### Complete the text with the words:

celebrated; festival; popular; foretells; winter; longer; publisher; American, brought; tradition; believed;

Groundhog Day, a Canadian and 1. \_\_\_\_\_ tradition, is the day (February 2) when the groundhog, or woodchuck, comes out of his hole after winter hibernation to look for his shadow. He 2. \_\_\_\_\_ six more weeks of bad weather if he sees it. Spring is coming if he cannot see his shadow because of clouds. He supposedly goes back into his hole if more bad weather is coming and stays above ground if spring is near. This 3. \_\_\_\_\_ is from an old European belief that if it is sunny on Candlemas Day, then the 4. \_\_\_\_\_ would remain another six weeks. Candlemas Day was 5. \_\_\_\_\_ on February second and commemorated the purification of the Virgin Mary. Candles for sacred uses were blessed on this day.

If Candlemas Day be fair and bright,  
winter will have another flight;  
But if Candlemas Day be cloudy and rain,  
winter has gone not to come again.

The Germans 6. \_\_\_\_\_ that an animal (a hedgehog) frightened by his shadow on Candlemas Day would foretell cold weather for other six weeks. This belief was 7. \_\_\_\_\_ to America during the eighteenth century by German settlers. These settlers adopted the groundhog as their weather predictor.

This lore grew 8. \_\_\_\_\_ in the United States during the late eighteenth century due to the efforts of Clymer H. Freas, a newspaper editor, and W. Smith, an American congressman and newspaper 9. \_\_\_\_\_. They organized and popularized a yearly 10. \_\_\_\_\_ in Punxsutawney [ˌpʌŋksəˈtɔːni], Pennsylvania in which a groundhog named Punxsutawney Phil was used to foretell how much 11. \_\_\_\_\_ winter would last. This very popular event is still being held and is called Groundhog Day. In Canada the name of the groundhog that is used to predict the length of winter is Wiarton Willy.

### TEXT 2. BRITISH HUMOUR

#### Read and translate the text and do the task.

The British sense of humour is often a source of mystification for other nations, and visitors to Britain may claim that our humour is incomprehensible; however, possessing 'a sense of humour' is usually regarded as a favourite virtue of the British.

It is difficult to determine the exact components of our 'sense of humour', but it may be loosely defined as an attitude of mind which is readily responsive to the incongruous and ridiculous. Thus the humorous qualities of Dickens' novels lie in the fact that many of his characters are 'larger than life' - their appearance and personal qualities are highly exaggerated. This is also true today of many of our favourite television comedies, where the lead characters are often wonderfully eccentric and 'over the top' - for example, the ever popular Mr Bean, played by Rowan Atkinson.

Bawdy and slapstick comedy, which can trace their roots back to Chaucer and Shakespeare, have continued through the early films of Charlie Chaplin and the 'Carry On' film series of the 1960s and 1970s to TV series of today.

More subtle humour can be found in the satire of Thackeray, Charles Dickens and Jane Austen, which highlights the faults and weaknesses of the society of the period, and is found today in some popular television comedy series'. British humour also has an everpresent but hard to define appreciation of the absurd.

Recent British comedy films have enjoyed international critical acclaim.

**Mark the following statements as true or false.**

1. British sense of humor seems strange to other nations.
2. Thackeray's works are famous for their slapstick humor.
3. Rowan Atkinson acted in 'Mr Bean' series.
4. British people are sensitive to incongruous and ridiculous.
5. Chaucer was the script-writer in the early film starring Charley Chaplin.
6. Recent British comedies have been largely criticized.

**TEXT 3. A WORLD GUIDE TO GOOD MANNERS**

**Read and translate the text and do the task.**

Travelling to all corners of the world gets easier and easier. We live in a global village, but how well do we know and understand each other? Here is a simple test. Imagine you have arranged a meeting at four o'clock. What time should you expect your foreign business colleagues to arrive? If they're German, they'll be right on time. If they're American, they'll probably be 15 minutes early. If they're British, they'll be 15 minutes late, and you should allow up to an hour for the Italians.

When the European Community began to increase in size, several guidebooks appeared giving advice on international etiquette. At first many people thought this was a joke, especially the British, who seemed to assume that the widespread understanding of their language meant a corresponding understanding of English customs. Very soon they had to change their ideas, as they realized that they had a lot to learn about how to behave with their foreign business friends.

For example:

- ✓ The British are happy to have a business lunch and discuss business matters with a drink during the meal; the Japanese prefer not to work while eating. Lunch is a time to relax and get to know one another, and they rarely drink at lunchtime.
- ✓ The Germans like to talk business before dinner; the French like to eat first and talk afterwards. They have to be well fed and watered before they discuss anything.
- ✓ Taking off your jacket and rolling up your sleeves is a sign of getting down to work in Britain and Holland, but in Germany people regard it as taking it easy.
- ✓ American executives sometimes signal their feelings of ease and importance in their offices by putting their feet on the desk while on the telephone. In Japan, people would be shocked. Showing the soles of your feet is the height of bad manners. It is a social insult only exceeded by blowing your nose in public.

The Japanese have perhaps the strictest rules of social and business behaviour. Seniority is very important, and a younger man should never be sent to complete a business deal with an older Japanese man. The Japanese business card almost needs a rulebook of its own. You must exchange business cards immediately on meeting because it is essential to establish everyone's status and position.

When it is handed to a person in a superior position, it must be given and received with both hands, and you must take time to read it carefully, and not just put it in your pocket! Also the bow is a very important part of greeting someone. You should not expect the Japanese to shake hands. Bowing the head is a mark of respect and the first bow of the day should be lower than when you meet later.

The Americans sometimes find it difficult to accept the more formal Japanese manners. They prefer to be casual and more informal, as illustrated by the universal 'Have a nice day!' American waiters have a one-word imperative 'Enjoy!' The British, of course, are cool and reserved. The great topic of conversation between strangers in Britain is the weather — unemotional and impersonal. In America, the main topic between strangers is the search to find geographical link. 'Oh, really? You live in Ohio? I had an uncle who once worked there.'



### **When in Rome, do as the Romans do.'**

*Here are some final tips for travellers.*

- ✓ In France you shouldn't sit down in a cafe until you've shaken hands with everyone you know.
- ✓ In Afghanistan you should spend at least five minutes saying hello.
- ✓ In Pakistan you mustn't wink. It is offensive.
- ✓ In the Middle East you must never use the left hand for greeting, eating, drinking, or smoking. Also, you should take care not to admire anything in your hosts' home. They will feel that they have to give it to you.
- ✓ In Russia you must match your hosts drink for drink or they will think you are unfriendly.
- ✓ In Thailand you should clasp your hands together and lower your head and your eyes when you greet someone.
- ✓ In America you should eat your hamburger with both hands and as quickly as possible. You shouldn't try to have a conversation until it is eaten.

### **Correct the statements if necessary.**

1. The Japanese have a greater respect for people who are older and have a higher social status.
2. If you've arranged a meeting with an Italian you must be ready that he can come an hour early.
3. Just knowing a foreign language of some country gives you the understanding of its culture.
4. "We live in a global village" means that nowadays people prefer life in the country to life in big cities because of ecological situation and other problems.
5. When a Japanese gives you a business card, you should take it with both hands and read it carefully in his presence.
6. When Dutchmen roll up their sleeves it means they are going to start working.
7. Englishmen and Frenchmen like to discuss business at dinner.
8. The Japanese greet people with a bow every time they see them.
9. The Japanese would be shocked if you blow your nose in their presence.
10. The Americans are not so casual as the British.
11. The favourite topic of conversation between strangers in the USA is the weather.
12. A left-handed person will have a hard time in the Middle East.
13. When you greet a person in South Asia you should look straight into his eyes.



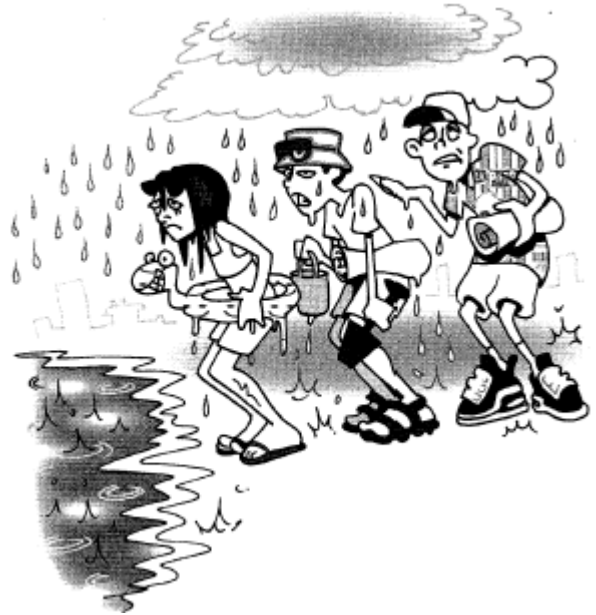
Sing the song.

## THE WEATHERMAN RAP

The weatherman said  
"It'll be sunny today  
The rain will stop  
And the fog will go away"

The weatherman said  
It'll be hot and dry  
The weather will be perfect  
Not a cloud in the sky

Let's go to the beach  
Let's have some fun  
Let's swim in the sea  
And lie in the sun  
But oh no!  
It's raining again!  
So never ever listen  
to the weathermen



The weatherman said  
"It'll be cold and dry  
Freezing ice  
And a clear blue sky"

The weatherman said  
"There'll be plenty of snow  
So drive very slowly  
Take care on the road."

Let's find our sledge  
And race in the snow  
Get your coat and your hat  
Come on, let's go!  
But oh no!  
It's raining again!  
So never ever listen  
to the weathermen



# GRAMMAR

## §1. THERE IS/ARE. IMPERSONAL SENTENCES

### I. THERE + BE

1. We use **there** as the impersonal subject of the sentence **to introduce new information**.

The structure of the sentence:

there + be + noun group (which carries new information) + adverbial modifier of place.

*There is a TV- set in the room.*

*There's some milk in the bottle.*

*There are no students in the room.*

*There was a party here yesterday.*

2. If we want to answer the question **WHAT?** we say: *There is a book on the desk.*

If we want to answer the question **WHERE?** we say: *The book is on the desk.*

### 3. Compare the corresponding Russian and English sentences.

	Russian	English	English plural form
1	<i>На стене картина.</i>	There is a picture on the wall.	There are pictures on the wall.
2	<i>Картина на стене.</i>	The picture is on the wall.	The pictures are on the wall.
3	<i>У нас на стене картина.</i>	We have a picture on the wall.	We have pictures on the wall.
4	<i>Это картина на стене.</i>	This is a picture on the wall. It's a picture on the wall	These are pictures on the wall.

4. The form of the verb **be** depends on the noun after it.

*There is a table and four chairs in the room. There are four chairs and a table in the room.*

*There is a lot of snow outside. There are a lot of passers-by in the street.*

### 5. Model sentences with **there + be**:

	affirmative	negative
countable nouns in the singular	There is a vase on the table.	There is <b>no</b> vase here. There <b>isn't a</b> vase on the table.
uncountable nouns	There is (some) water in the vase.	There is <b>no</b> water in the vase. There <b>isn't (any)</b> water in the vase.
	There is <b>much</b> water in the vase.	There is <b>not much</b> water in the vase.
countable nouns in the plural	There are (some) roses in the vase.	There <b>aren't (any)</b> roses in the vase. There are no roses in the vase.
	There are <b>enough</b> roses in it	There <b>aren't enough</b> roses in the vase

### 6. Questions

There are two nice vases in the room.

There are two nice vases in the room, aren't there?      Are there two nice vases in the room?

Are there two or three nice vases in the room?      What is there in the room?

How many vases are there in the room?      What kind of vases are there in the room?

**Note:** We don't ask a where-question to sentences with **there + be**

## II. IT + BE

1. We may use **it** as a personal pronoun in the function of the subject of the sentence.

*I finished reading this **book** last week. **It** is very interesting.*

2. We may use **it** as the **impersonal** subject of the sentence

	what for	examples
1	for identification	<i>Who's standing over there? – It's my husband. It was Pete who helped us.</i>
2	for weather and temperature	<i>It's <b>windy</b>. (but: There is strong <b>wind</b>.) It's cold today. It's 9 degrees now. It rains. It is going to snow.</i>
3	for time and distance	<i>It's late. It's ten o'clock. It's time to go. It's Friday today. It's autumn. It's not far from here.</i>
4	for opinion or state of mind and soul	<i>It's nice to be back. It's difficult to believe. It's a pity he hasn't come.</i>
	in fixed phrases;	<i><b>It doesn't matter</b> what people say. <b>It looks like</b> rain. <b>It seems</b> they are going to move.</i>

## III. Much, many, few, little etc.

	before countable nouns	before uncountable nouns	before all nouns
<b>МНОГО</b>	many a great number of ( <i>formal</i> )	much a great deal of	a lot of lots of plenty of } <i>informal</i>
<b>немного, но достаточно</b>	a few; several	a little	some
<b>мало, недостаточно</b>	few not many	little not much, a bit of <i>informal</i>	hardly any <i>informal</i>

## NOTES

1. We use **much** и **many**

	where	examples
1	in negative sentences	<i>There isn't much milk in this coffee. There aren't many cars in the parking place.</i>
2	in questions	<i>Will there be many guests at the party? Do you have much money on you?</i>
3	in formal statements	<i>Many pensioners have problems with health. Much money was spent on defence.</i>
4	in time references and with <i>as ...as</i>	<i>He's lived there for many years. Take as much as you like.</i>
5	with <b>so, too, very</b> etc.	<i>There are very many mistakes in his test. There was too much rain yesterday.</i>

## 2. We use *few* и *little*

	where	examples
1	in formal style	<i>We saw little on account of the fog.</i> (Compare: <i>We saw hardly anything</i> )
2	with <i>so, too, very</i> etc.	<i>I have very little time.</i>

**3. *Little* and *few*** are negative and mean ‘not enough’ (мало, недостаточно)  
*a little* and *a few* are positive and mean ‘not a lot but enough’ (немного, но достаточно)

*We have little time. We can't have a meal.*

*We have a little time. We can have a meal.*

*He isn't very popular here. He has few friends.*

*He enjoys his life here. He has a few friends and they meet quite often.*

## EXERCISES

### Ex. 1. Fill in the correct form of the verb *to be*.

1. There ..... a lot of money on his bank account. 2. There ..... a lot of people in the yard. 3. There ..... plenty of sheep on the meadow. 4. There ..... lots of useful information in that file. 5. There ..... a cow, two goats, some hens and chicks on the farm. 6. There ..... a table and four chairs round it. 7. There ..... some students and a teacher in the hall. 8. There ..... a fire there. Look at this smoke. 9. There ..... very little room here. 10. There ..... a fridge and a cupboard on the left. 11. There ..... no rule without exception. 12. There ..... some deer in here, but we haven't seen them yet. 13. There ..... police all over the place. What's up? 14. There ..... some news about new releases in this magazine. 15. There ..... some apples on the plate. Help yourself.

### Ex. 2. Make negative if necessary.

**Model:** There are two windows in the room you are sitting in.

*There are not two windows in the room; there is only one.*

1. There are thirty days in December. 2. There is a sofa in the classroom. 3. There are seven rooms in your flat. 4. There is a zoo in your street. 5. There are only boys in your group. 6. There are some sport prizes on the walls of the classroom. 7. There is a desert between Egypt and Greece. 8. There is a president in the UK. 9. There are very many mistakes in your tests. 10. There is some beer on the menu in our canteen. 11. There are palms in the streets of Chelyabinsk. 12. There are many love scenes in *The Lord of the Rings*. 13. There is a lift in our university. 14. There is a ring in your nose. 15. There are two teeth in your mouth.

### Ex. 3. Ask questions.

1. There is a party next door tonight. (What kind of?) 2. There are students in the library. (How many?) 3. There are some people inside the house. (Who?) 4. There are police in the club. (Why?) 5. There are tattoos on Anthony's body. (What?) 6. There are hardly any skaters in the park. (tag) 7. There is a lot of feeling in this song. (What kind of?) 8. There are friends at the concert. (Whose?) 9. There is news for you. (choice) 10. There is a vacation in January. (yes/no)

### Ex. 4. Fill in *there* or *it*.

1. .... is warm in the room. 2. .... is a new supermarket in our street. 3. .... is not easy to understand his motives. 4. .... is four o'clock in the afternoon. 5. .... is so nice to see you again. 6. .... is nothing to be done about it. 7. .... is often a rainbow after rain. 8. .... is too late to go there now. 9. .... is a lot of snow this year. 10. .... is a mistake in your dictation. 11. .... doesn't matter which way to go. 12. .... is

far away from my home to the university. 13. .... is difficult to say what's wrong about it. 14. .... is very strange that he hasn't come. 15. .... is still very early and .... is nobody to be seen in the street. 16. Who is that boy? - ..... is my friend. He's come to pick me up. 17. .... is so hot out-of-doors today. .... must be thirty-two degrees in the shade. 18. .... is no running water in their country house. 19. .... is a party at the university tonight. 20. .... is a lot of work to do about the house. 21. .... is not any food left. 22. .... is cold today; ..... is a strong wind. 23. .... is too early to leave yet. 24. .... is 20 miles' drive from here. 25. .... is dark; ..... is no moon. 26. .... are about a hundred students in the lecture room. 27. .... is strange that she's absent today. 28. .... is a hairdresser's at the corner. 29. .... is a pity you can't come. 30. .... is time to take a nap. 31. .... is no time to do it. 32. .... is no next time, ..... is now or never.

**Ex. 5. Fill in *there* or *it*.**

1. .... gets dark early in winter. 2. What is it? ..... looks like a birthday present. 3. .... was a lovely morning. 4. .... is Christmas today. .... is snowing and everybody is celebrating. 5. I'm fond of Ben; ..... is great charm about him. 6. .... was Lucy who told his address. 7. .... is a lot of dirt outside. 8. Is ..... anything interesting on TV tonight? 9. I think ..... is going to rain. 10. .... is rainy today, isn't .....? 11. .... was no necessity to do it yesterday. 12. .... wasn't necessary to come so early. 13. While ..... is life, ..... is hope. 14. .... is never too late to learn. 15. .... is hardly any time to do the packing now. 16. .... isn't known where he spent his early childhood. 17. .... is time and place for everything. 18. .... was much to be said. 19. .... is not clear who is to be blamed for it. 20. .... is a long time since we saw him last. 21. .... is no place like home. 22. .... is time to round off.

**Ex. 6. Translate into English.**

1. На столе учебник. У меня на столе учебник. Учебник на столе. Это учебник.
2. Это парты. Парты в кабинете. У нас в кабинете парты. В кабинете парты.
3. У меня в комнате на стене картина. Картина на стене. Это картина. На стене картина.
4. Деньги в сейфах. Это деньги. В сейфах деньги. У него в сейфах деньги.
5. Собака во дворе? Это собака? Во дворе собака? У него во дворе собака?
6. В этом лесу нет волков. Волки не в этом лесу. Это не волки. У них в лесу нет волков.

**Ex. 7. Translate into English using the following words:**

*folder (file), paperclip, drawing pin, felt-tip pen, marker, rubber, pencil sharpener, pencil case, notebook, glue stick, ruler, (pen) cartridge, scissors, corrector.*

1. В твоём пенале есть линейка? – Нет. Линейка на столе.
2. В этой ручке нет стержня. Дай мне другую.
3. Что в этой папке? – В ней чистая бумага.
4. Мой блокнот в сумке. А где твой?
5. У тебя есть чёрный фломастер или маркер?
6. Этот карандаш плохо пишет. Дай мне точилку, пожалуйста.
7. В этом предложении ошибка. Где ластик? – Возьми лучше корректор.
8. Клеющий карандаш где-то в ящике стола.
9. Сколько скрепок в коробке? – Нисколько.
10. У меня нет кнопок. - Попроси у секретаря.
11. Эти ножницы недостаточно острые. Дай мне другие.

**Use these words in the dialogues of your own.**

**Ex. 8. Fill the table.**

	<b>before countable nouns</b>	<b>before uncountable nouns</b>	<b>before all nouns</b>
<b>МНОГО</b>			
<b>НЕМНОГО, НО ДОСТАТОЧНО</b>			
<b>МАЛО, НЕДОСТАТОЧНО</b>			

**Ex. 9. Put in much, many, (a) few, (a) little.**

1. Are there ..... lakes in Great Britain? 2. There isn't .....time left. 3. It's a difficult situation. .... people can find the way out. 4. We can talk it over now. I have ..... time. 5. We have too ..... time. We are going to be late. 6. He doesn't have ..... relatives, hardly any, in fact. 7. .... was said but, sorry to say, ..... was done to help them. 8. Can I have ..... water? I'm thirsty. 9. Can you speak French? – I can, ..... 10. Do you know Spanish? – Just ..... words. 11. We couldn't find ..... information about it. 12. Could you lend me ..... money? – How much? – Just ..... dollars. 13. She is so carefree, she has ..... problems to think about. 14. .... knowledge is a dangerous thing. 15. Is she pretty? – Pretty? Not .....to look at. 16. .... by ..... he got better. 17. .... things puzzle me in this case. 18. She has never been ..... of a housewife, has she? 19. A ..... pot is soon hot. 20. Will you give us ..... tea and ..... sandwiches, please? 21. I don't want ....., just ..... things to make life tolerable. 22. His pronunciation leaves .....to be desired, sorry to say. 23. John was at a loss. He spent so ..... hours trying to solve the problem and he came to the conclusion that he could do ..... or nothing in the situation.

**Ex. 10. Choose the correct form.**

1. I have (several, many, too much, a few) homework to do. 2. James did (a couple, a bit of, much, no) exercises in the morning. 3. They didn't have (much, many, a lot, some) luck this season. 4. Let's plant (one, a little, great deal of, a bit of, some) trees. 5. She eats (very little, a number of, most, a few) meat. 6. You'll need (a couple, a few, quite a little, none, much) tomatoes for the salad. 7. She has visited (a good deal of, not a little, every, quite a few) countries in Europe. 8. I've got (a lot, plenty of, few, not many) time. 9. He wants to earn (several, some few, some, plenty) money. 10. This car uses (a great number of, a lot of, several, few, a few) petrol. 11. (Much, Every, A large number of, Quite a bit, A little) people disagree with his decision. 12. You must be working (a lot of, very many, quite a few, very much) at the moment. 13. There were (lots of, a lot, not a little, a bit of) guests at the party. 14. We laughed (very many, lots of, a good deal of, a lot). 15. He isn't much of a mixer. He has (few, a few) friends. 16. There is (too little, quite a little) cola left. You can have it.

**Ex. 11. Translate into English.**

1. У нас слишком мало времени. Поторопись. 2. У меня есть немного денег. Сходим в кафе, ладно? 3. Многие студенты не любят готовиться к семинарам в библиотеке. 4. Я плохо себя чувствую. Дай мне воды, пожалуйста. 5. У него куча друзей и знакомых. 6. В этой

библиотеке мало английских книг. Почти нет выбора. 7. Я не люблю большие города. На улицах слишком много транспорта и шума, и везде слишком много мусора. 8. На стенах её комнаты несколько постеров её любимых певцов и актеров. 9. Мы много работаем и мало отдыхаем. 10. Ты пьешь слишком много крепкого кофе. 11. У Майка масса проблем, но его это не заботит. 12. У вас немало хороших идей, но надо много работать, чтобы реализовать хотя бы некоторые из них. 13. На встрече много было сказано о городской экологии. 14. Осталось немного помидоров. Я сделаю салат. 15. У нас мало картошки. Надо купить пару килограммов. 16. У него много английских книг в оригинале. Давай попросим несколько на каникулы. 17. Эти цветы не растут здесь. Здесь мало солнца и тепла для них. 18. Несколько машин стоят на стоянке. Которая твоя? 19. Он мало что видит в этих очках. Ему нужно купить другие. 20. Они вкладывают большое количество денег в этот проект. 21. Он мало говорит, но умеет слушать. 22. В этой комнате слишком много мебели и слишком мало свободного места. 23. Он знает только несколько слов по-немецки. 24. Вы знаете французский? – Немного. 25. Ты слишком много думаешь о нём.

**Ex. 12. Do the tasks.**

1. Look around the classroom. Describe it using as many sentences with *there is* as you can.
2. Try to guess what there is in your seatmate's bag by asking him/her yes-no questions.

**§2. ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS**

**I. THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES. GENERAL RULE**

kinds of adjectives	positive	comparative	superlative
1) add <i>-er</i> and <i>-est</i>			
1. one-syllable adjectives	big	bigger (the final consonant is doubled after a short stressed vowel)	the biggest (the final consonant is doubled after a short stressed vowel)
2. two-syllable adjectives ending in <b>-y, -er, -ow, -le.</b>	nice	nicer	the nicest
	easy	easier ( <b>y</b> changes into <b>i</b> ) after a <b>consonant</b>	the easiest ( <b>y</b> changes into <b>i</b> ) after a <b>consonant</b>
	shy clever	shyer cleverer	shyest (exception) the cleverest
2) add <i>more</i> and <i>most</i>			
adjectives <i>right, wrong, real, like, tired, bored</i>	real	<b>more</b> real	<b>most</b> real.
many-syllable adjectives	beautiful interesting dangerous	more beautiful more interesting more dangerous	the most beautiful the most interesting the most dangerous
We can use <i>less</i> (мeнee) and <i>least</i> (наименее) before any adjective. less fast, least fast; less clever, least clever; less beautiful, least beautiful;			



## II. EXCEPTIONS

good well (здоровый)	better	the best
bad	worse	the worst
old	older	the oldest
	elder (we use it to refer to people in a family)  we <b>never</b> use it before <i>than</i> <i>I have an <b>elder</b> / <b>older</b> brother.</i> <i>My brother is <b>older</b> than me.</i>	the eldest we use it to refer to people in a family)
far (далекий)	farther (дальше)	the farthest
	further (дальше, далее, дальнейший)	the furthest
much many	more	the most
little (мало)	less (меньше)	the least (меньше всего)
little (маленький)	smaller (меньше)	the smallest (самый маленький)
late	later (позже)	the latest (самый поздний, самый недавний)
		the last (самый последний)
most	1. article <b>the</b> + «самый» + adjective <i>He's <b>the most intelligent</b> boy in his class.</i>	
	2. «очень» + adjective <i>He is <b>a most intelligent</b> boy. It's <b>most interesting</b>.</i>	
	3. «большинство» + noun <i><b>Most boys</b> of this age are very noisy.</i>	

## III. COMPARISON MODELS

You are taller than me ( <u>him,her,us,them</u> ).	<i>Ты выше меня (его, ее, нас, их). Ты выше, чем я (он, она, мы, они).</i>
He is <u>as</u> tall <u>as</u> me.	<i>Он такой же высокий, как я.</i>
He is <u>not as</u> tall <u>as</u> me. He is <u>not so</u> tall <u>as</u> me.	<i>Он не такой высокий, как я.</i>
He is the tallest <u>of</u> the three ( <u>of</u> all).	<i>Он самый высокий из этих троих (из всех).</i>
This house is <u>twice as</u> big <u>as</u> ours.	<i>Этот дом вдвое больше нашего.</i>
Our house is <u>half</u> the size. He is <u>half</u> my age.	<i>Наш дом вдвое меньше. Он вдвое моложе меня.</i>
The more he studies the more he will know. The sooner you do it, the better.	<i>Чем больше он будет учиться, тем больше будет знать. Чем скорее ты это сделаешь, тем лучше.</i>
<b>much, far, a lot</b> + comparative adjective = «намного»; <b>much better</b> — <i>намного лучше</i>	
<b>a bit, a little</b> + comparative adjective = «немного»; <b>a little better</b> — <i>немного лучше</i>	

#### IV. ADVERB FORMATION

1. Adverbs of manner are formed by adding **-ly** to adjectives. The meaning is usually the same.  
*gentle – gently; happy – happily; energetic – energetically; true – truly; full – fully.*

2. Some words can be both **adjectives and adverbs**:

*fast, long, low, little, hard, high, last, late, near, far, wide, early.*

*It was a fast train. The train was going fast. You are an early bird. You always get up early.*

3. Some adverbs can have **two forms**: with **-ly** and without it.

*quick – quickly; slow – slowly; bright – brightly; loud – loudly; quiet – quietly; etc.*

There's no difference in meaning, but adverbs with **-ly** are usually more formal.

*Walk slow! Walk slowly! Do it quick. Do it quickly.*

4. Sometimes such forms have **different meanings**.

hard – hardly; (много - едва)

*He worked hard.*

*He was so ill, he could hardly walk.*

late – lately; (поздно – в последнее время)

*She came late.*

*She hasn't come here lately.*

near – nearly; (близко – чуть не)

*His car drove near.*

*He nearly got hit by the car.*

5. We use **very** and **very much** to mean «очень».

**Very** goes before adjectives, adjectives + nouns and adverbs.

*The film is very interesting. This is a very interesting film. He walked very quickly.*

**Very much** goes after verbs and before past participles in predicatives.

*We liked the film very much. I was very much surprised to hear that.*

6. We use **so** before adjectives and adverbs

and **such** before (adjectives +) nouns to mean «так», «такой».

*The weather is so lovely! You speak English so well! You have such a nice car!*

#### V. COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

	adverbs	comparison forms	examples
1	all one-syllable adverbs + <b>early</b>	add <b>-er</b> и <b>-est</b>	<i>fast – faster – fastest; hard – harder – hardest; early – earlier – earliest;</i>
2	all the rest	add <b>more</b> и <b>most</b>	<i>gently – more gently – most gently; care-fully – more carefully – most carefully;</i>
3	adverbs <b>often, quickly, slowly, easily.</b>	have 2 forms	<i>often – oftener – oftenest – more often – most often; quickly – quicker – quickest – more quickly – most quickly slowly – slower – slowest – more slowly – most slowly; easily – easier – easiest – more easily – most easily;</i>
4	adverbs <i>well, badly, much, little, far</i>	have <b>irregular</b> forms	<i>well – better – best; badly – worse – worst; much – more – most; little – less – least; far – farther / further – farthest / furthest;</i>

## VI. ADJECTIVES & ADVERBS

	where	English	Russian
1	after <u>stative</u> verbs: <i>be</i> – <i>быть</i> , <i>look</i> – <i>выглядеть</i> , <i>feel</i> – <i>чувствовать</i> , <i>seem</i> – <i>казаться</i> , <i>smell</i> – <i>пахнуть</i> , <i>taste</i> – <i>иметь вкус</i> , <i>sound</i> – <i>звучать</i> .	<b>adjectives</b> <i>It is <u>wonderful</u>.</i> <i>She looks <u>sad</u>.</i> <i>He feels <u>bad</u>.</i> <i>It sounds <u>good</u>.</i>	<b>adverbs</b> <i>Это <u>чудесно</u>.</i> <i>Она выглядит <u>печально</u>.</i> <i>Он чувствует себя <u>плохо</u>.</i> <i>Это звучит <u>хорошо</u>.</i>
2	after <u>action</u> verbs	<b>adverbs</b> <i>They did it <u>wonderfully</u>.</i> <i>She looked <u>sadly</u> at me.</i> <i>He sings <u>badly</u>.</i>	<b>adverbs</b> <i>Они сделали это <u>чудесно</u>.</i> <i>Она печально <u>посмотрела</u> на меня.</i> <i>Он поет <u>плохо</u>.</i>

### Note

1. **well** can be an adverb (=хорошо).

*He sings very well.*

and an adjective (=здоровый, в хорошем состоянии)

*How are you? - I'm well. (=Я здоров. У меня всё в порядке.)*

Compare: *I'm good. (= Я хороший.)*

2. We say **usually** (=обычно), but **as usual** (=как обычно), **than usual** (=чем обычно).

## JAZZ CHANT

## I Am Sorry, But

I'm 'sorry, but you've 'got to do 'better than `this

*I'm 'doing the 'best I `can*

I'm 'sorry, but you've 'got to 'walk `faster than this

*I'm 'walking as 'fast as I `can*

I'm 'sorry, but you've 'got to 'work `harder than this

*I'm 'working as 'hard as I `can*

It's 'not `good e ,nough! It's 'not `good e ,nough! (2)

*I'm 'doing my `best*

'Try a 'little `harder

*I'm 'doing my `best*

'Try a 'little `harder

*I'm 'doing my `best*

'Try a 'little `harder

*I `can't, I `can't*

'Don't 'say `can't'

*I `won't, I `won't but I'm 'doing my `best*

'Do a 'little `better

*I'm 'doing my `best*

'Do a 'little `better

*I'm 'doing my `best*

'Try a 'little `harder

*`I'll , try, `I'll , try*

'Try a 'little `harder

*`I'll , try, `I'll , try*

## EXERCISES

**Ex. 1. Write the degrees of comparison of the adjectives.**

1. cheap 2. beautiful 3. gay 4. strong 5. real 6. good 7. hot 8. old 9. happy 10. dry 11. shy  
12. busy 13. few 14. careless 15. far 16. short 17. glad 18. green 19. quiet 20. sociable 21. com-  
mon 22. tidy 23. blue 24. strict 25. big 26. little 27. foolish 28. neat 29. slender 30. lucky  
31. black 32. kind 33. gentle 34. pretty 35. plump 36. handsome 37. late 38. bad 39. fat.

**Ex. 2. Complete the similes, using the words.**

a bat; a bee; a bug in the rug; a donkey; a picture; a judge; a lord; sin; gold; a fish; the hills; a pancake; a kitten; a mouse; a fox.

1. As stupid as .....
2. As playful as .....
3. As dumb as .....
4. As quiet as .....
5. As busy as .....
6. As cunning as .....
7. As snug as .....
8. As blind as .....
9. As drunk as .....
10. As sober as .....
11. As pretty as .....
12. As old as .....
13. As good as .....
14. As flat as .....
15. As ugly as .....

**Ex. 3. Complete the sentences.**

1. The sooner ...
2. The more we see ...
3. The less he talks ...
4. The more I sleep...
5. The more English homework I do...
6. The colder the weather is...
7. The more money I have...
8. The more we walk...
9. The more I eat...
10. The earlier I get up...
11. The louder he speaks...
12. The brighter the sun is...
13. The tastier a cake is...
14. The easier an exercise is...
15. The longer I talk on the phone...

**Ex. 4. Fill in the blanks with *as, so, than, of*.**

1. Margaret is older ..... Elisabeth.
2. Cathy isn't ..... old ..... her husband.
3. Fred is the youngest ..... the brothers.
4. This watch is better ..... that one.
5. This black dress is the best ..... the three.
6. Ruth is ..... pretty ..... Kate.
7. He has more free time ..... me.
8. A man is ..... old ..... he feels.
9. The weather is worse today ..... it was yesterday.
10. It isn't ..... cold today ..... it was last week.
11. February is the shortest ..... all months.

**Ex. 5. Put in the correct form of the adjective.**

1. Mary is .....(nice) than Jean.
2. John is the .....(clever) boy in the class.
3. The weather is .....(dull) today than it was on Monday.
4. Rome is one of the ..... (big) cities of the world.
5. This sentence is ..... (difficult) than the first one.
6. My house is as .....(large) as yours.
7. His dog is .....(old) than mine.
8. She is much ..... (happy) now, isn't she?
9. My cold is .....(bad) today than it was yesterday.
10. This mountain is the .....(high) in Europe.
11. His kids are ..... (polite) than ours.
12. Her house is much .....(far) from here.
13. My husband is .....(handsome) than yours.
14. He made ..... (few) mistakes in this test than in the previous one.
15. Failure is the .....(good) way to learn.
16. Kelly is .....(intelligent) than her sister.
17. Nick caught .....(many) fish than his ..... (little) brother.
18. Boys are usually ..... (noisy) than girls.
19. His ..... (old) son is in the army now.
20. It is .....(hot) in Athens than in London.
21. These shoes are the ..... (bad) I have ever worn.
22. This is the ..... (wonderful) film I have ever seen.
23. Who's the .....(old) here?
24. Have you heard the .....(late) album by *Moby*?
25. I want to listen to the ..... (late) album by *Nirvana*.
26. Have ..... (much) than you show, say ..... (little) than you know.
27. Education is the ..... (powerful) weapon we can use to change the world.
28. Open your mouth only if what you are going to say is ..... (beautiful) than silence.

**Ex. 6. Choose the correct form.**

1. He's behaved (nice, nicely) today.
2. The music sounds (nice, nicely).
3. This tomato smells (bad, badly).
4. The film ended (bad, badly).
5. The cake tastes (wonderful, wonderfully).
6. My Granny cooks very (good, well).
7. She is not very (careful, carefully).
8. Listen (careful, carefully) to me.
9. Be (quiet, quietly), please.
10. He shut the door (quiet, quietly).
11. This staircase doesn't look (safe, safely).
12. Don't worry. Your kids will be (safe, safely) here.
13. Did they arrive (safe, safely)?
14. She looked at me (angry, angrily) when I interrupted her.
15. She looked (angry, angrily) and (unhappy, unhappily).
16. It's the (less, lesser) of two evils.
17. My flat is (littler, smaller) than yours.
18. Do you feel (nervous, nervously) before exams?
19. She

sounded (sad, sadly) on the phone. 20. How are you? – I'm (good, well), thanks. And you? 21. It's (terrible, terribly) hot today. 22. Your voice sounds (strange, strangely). Are you crying? 23. Your voice sounds (strange, strangely) familiar. Have we met? 24. That's (awful, awfully) kind of you! 25. This idea of yours sounds (reasonable, reasonably) enough.

**Ex. 7. Choose the correct form.**

1. Please tell me the (next, nearest) way to the station. 2. The exercise is on the (next, nearest) page. 3. We are to wait for some (farther, further) instructions. 4. It's the (oldest, eldest) university in Great Britain. 5. She is (older, elder) than her husband. 6. Boris is my father's (oldest, eldest) friend. 7. Eleven o'clock is the (last, latest) time she goes to bed. 8. Take a look at the (last, latest) page of the book. 9. Have you seen the (last, latest) video by Avril Lavigne? 10. What did he say before dying? What were his (last, latest) words? 11. He works much (more slowly, slower) than the rest of the students. 12. Don't worry. Take it (easy, easily). 13. He is (so, as) rude as his brother. 14. He was (very, very much) happy when he married. 15. He is the same height (as, than) my son. 16. I haven't seen you (late, lately). Have you been away? 17. He came (late, lately). Everybody had gone to bed. 18. Let's call on her. She lives (near, nearby). 19. His grandfather is (near, nearby) ninety. 20. Is James your (near, nearby) relative? 21. He is (so, such) trustful! 22. Lenny is (so, such) an absent-minded boy! 23. It's (so, such) a nice colour on you! 24. You are (so, such) wonderfully dressed today! 25. He could (hard, hardly) say a word when he saw her looking (so, such) beautiful. 26. The (last, latest) time I saw him he looked (awful, awfully) ill. 27. She is (high, highly) praised by her colleagues. 28. He sings (so, such) well!

**Ex. 8. Compare the objects.**

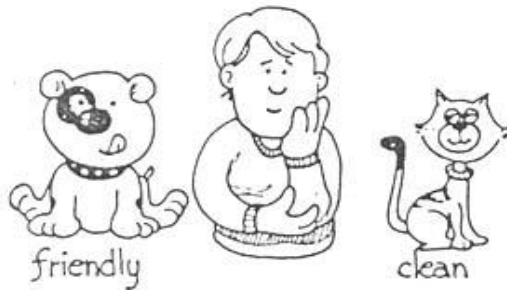
*Models: Moscow is older than St Petersburg. St Petersburg is not so old as Moscow.*

1. The Black Sea – the White Sea (warm). 2. Oil – water (light). 3. Russia – Great Britain (small). 4. Stone – wood (heavy) 5. Volkswagen ['fɒlksvɑ:gən] – Mercedes [mə'seɪdɪz] (cheap) 6. Japanese – English (difficult) 7. This classroom – your room (comfortable) 8. February – March (short) 9. Australia – Africa (large) 10. jazz – rock music (popular) 11. The Himalayas – the Urals (high) 12. Lake Baikal – Lake Michigan (deep) 13. Detective novels – love novels (interesting) 14. The weather today – the weather yesterday (cold) 15. Your street – Lenin Avenue (broad) 16. Americans – Englishmen (easy-going) 17. Bill Gates – you (rich).

**Ex. 9. Translate into English.**

1. Этот фильм менее интересный. 2. Прошлое лето было самое сухое. 3. В нашей группе столько же студентов, сколько в вашей. 4. Она на четыре года моложе своего брата. 5. 22 декабря самый короткий день в году. 6. Он работает быстрее и лучше всех. 7. Он меня в два раза моложе. 8. Чем больше ты думаешь об этом, тем хуже тебе становится. 9. Он так плохо себя чувствовал, что едва мог работать. 10. Тому столько же лет как Джейку, но он гораздо выше его. 11. Мы ждём дальнейшей информации. 12. Она живёт дальше от университета, чем я. 13. Эта работа менее важная. 14. Он такой же маленький как твой племянник? 15. Она приходит раньше всех. 16. Сейчас это самая популярная песня. 17. Ты слышал последние новости? 18. Эта квартира немного меньше, она менее удобная и дальше от центра города, но она гораздо дешевле. 20. Все, что не убивает тебя, делает тебя сильнее. 21. Чем меньше женщину мы любим, тем легче нравимся мы ей. 22. Он становится старше, но не становится серьезнее. 23. Они шли медленнее и медленнее и, наконец, остановились. 24. У вас такой большой дом, а этот вид на озеро такой чудесный! 25. Я вам очень благодарен за всё, что вы делаете для меня. 26. Чем больше вы будете говорить по-английски, тем лучше у вас это будет получаться. 27. Я очень хочу ложиться спать раньше, а вставать позже. 28. Она самая застенчивая и самая трудолюбивая девочка в классе. Тихая как мышка и всегда трудится как пчелка. 29. Пирог пахнет так замечательно, он, наверное, очень вкусный. Я очень люблю яблочные пироги. 30. Лето. Волосы становятся светлее. Кожа становится темнее. Вода становится теплее. Напитки становятся холоднее. Музыка становится громче. Ночи становятся короче. Жизнь становится лучше.

**Ex. 10. Look at the pictures and make up sentences on the model:**  
*He can't decide whether to buy a used car or a new car.*  
*On the one hand, used cars are cheaper.*  
*On the other hand, new cars are more reliable.*



1. buy a dog or a cat



2. go out on a date with Tad or Ronald



3. Study English with Miss Jones or Mrs. Green



4. buy ice cream or yogurt for dessert this evening



5. go to the supermarket across the street or at the supermarket around the corner



6. buy a motorcycle or a bicycle



7. hire Mr. Clark or Mr. Davis



8. vote for Timothy White or Edward Pratt

### §3. THE PAST SIMPLE TENSE

#### I. FORMATION

1. Regular verbs form Past Simple by adding – **ed** to the verb, (or only – **d** if it ends in – **e**). Irregular verbs have special forms for Past Simple (see the list of irregular verbs)

We use the auxiliary verb **did** in the negative sentences and questions:

*He worked here last year. Did he work here two years ago?*

*He went there last week. He didn't go there yesterday.*

№		affirmative	interrogative	negative
1	regular verbs	<i>He worked.</i>	<i>Did he work?</i>	<i>He didn't work.</i>
2	irregular verbs	<i>He went away.</i>	<i>Did he go away?</i>	<i>He didn't go away.</i>

#### II. USE

	We use Past Simple to talk about	examples
1	a past action or state, not connected with the present	<i>I saw him yesterday. We met last week.</i>
2	a succession of past actions	<i>He stood up, said good-bye and left the room.</i>
3	a repeated past action	<i>He came to that park every Sunday. She often wrote to her friends.</i>
<p><b>Note.</b> We can use the past adverbs: <i>yesterday, the day before yesterday, the other day, some time ago, last week, in 1995, at 5 o'clock, on Monday etc;</i></p>		

#### III. PRONUNCIATION & SPELLING

We pronounce –*ed* as

[**d**] after vowels and voiced consonants (except d): *opened, played;*

[**t**] after voiceless consonants (except t): *worked, stopped;*

[**ɪd**] after t,d: *wanted, landed.*

№	what	when	examples	compare
1	we double the final consonant	after <b>one short stressed</b> vowel to preserve the <b>closed</b> syllable:	<i>to stop – stopped; to plan – planned</i>	<i>smile - smiled</i>
2	we double the final <b>r</b>	after <b>one stressed</b> vowel to preserve the <b>third</b> type of the syllable	<i>to pre'fer – preferred; to stir – stirred;;</i>	<i>'offer – offered; appear – appeared</i>
3	we double the final <b>l</b>	after <b>one short</b> vowel, stressed or unstressed (typical of British English):	<i>quarrel – quarrelled travel – travelled</i>	<i>appeal – appealed</i>
4	we change the final <b>y</b> into <b>i</b>	after a consonant	<i>to carry – carried, to reply – replied</i>	<i>to play – played; to enjoy – enjoyed</i>

## §4. THE PRESENT PERFECT TENSE

### I. FORMATION

We use the auxiliary verb to have (has) and Past Participle of the notional verb to form the Present Perfect tense:

Regular verbs form the Past Participle by adding – ed to the verb, (or only – d if it ends in – e). Irregular verbs have special forms.

№	person / number	affirmative	interrogative	negative
1	I we you they } have	<i>I have worked here.</i>	<i>Have you worked here?</i>	<i>They haven't worked here.</i>
2	He She it } has	<i>He has gone away.</i>	<i>Has he gone away?</i>	<i>He hasn't gone away.</i>

### II. USE

	We use Present Perfect	example
1	to talk about an action which has happened <b>before the present moment</b> and we don't know or don't care <u>when exactly it happened</u> ; all we are interested in, is whether it has happened before the present moment or not	<i>Have you seen this film?</i> <i>He has never been abroad.</i> <i>I have met him somewhere before.</i>
	We can use the adverbs: <i>just, already, yet, before, ever, never, of late, lately, recently, in the last few days, so far, etc</i>	<i>He hasn't come yet. (еще)</i> <i>Has he come yet? (уже)</i> <i>He has come already. (уже)</i> <i>Has he come already?! (уже)</i>
2	with adverbs like <i>today, this week, this month</i> (the period of time that <b>isn't over yet</b> )	<i>I have met him this week.</i>
3	when we say <i>It's the first / second (etc) time something has happened.</i>	<i>It's the third time you have phoned me today!</i>
4	to talk about an action which began in the past and has been going on up to the present instead of the Present Perfect Continuous with verbs of state not used in continuous forms	<i>He has known Jack for ten years.</i>  Compare: <i>He has been learning English for ten years</i>

**Note 1.** We use the preposition **to** instead of **in** (to answer the question «where?») after **be** in Present Perfect.

*They have been to the USA already.*

*BUT: They were in the USA last year.*

**Note 2.** Mind the difference between the sentences:

*He has gone to London. (= Он уехал в Лондон.)*

*He has been to London. (= Он ездил в Лондон. Он побывал в Лондоне.)*



**Note 3.**

We don't use Present Perfect in the following phrases:		
№	English	commentary
1	<b>What did you say? I didn't hear you.</b>	when the speaker <b>haven't heard</b> something <b>just now</b>
2	<b>I hear</b> they are in London	when we can change <i>я слышал</i> into <i>я знаю</i>
3	<b>I don't understand.</b>	when <i>я не понял</i> refers to something just said or done
4	<b>I forget</b> his address. <b>I forget</b> where he lives.	when we can change <i>я забыл</i> into <i>я не помню</i>
<b>But:</b> I have forgotten to phone him.		when we mean <b>action</b> and not information
5	<b>It is three years since I saw him last.</b>	Прошло уже три года, с тех пор, как я видел его в последний раз

**JAZZ CHANTS****FRIENDS**

Well, I've known Jack for fourteen years  
 He's a pretty good friend of mine  
*She's known Jack for fourteen years*  
*He's a pretty good friend of hers*  
 And I've known Bill for thirteen years  
 He's a pretty good friend of mine  
*She's known Bill for thirteen years*  
*He's a pretty good friend of hers*  
 I've known them both for quite a long time  
 They are pretty good friends of mine  
*She's known them both for quite a long time*  
*They are pretty good friends of hers*  
 I've known Jim for a long time  
 He's an old, old friend of mine  
*She's known Jim for a long time*  
*He's an old, old friend of hers*  
 We are old friends, old friends  
 He's a dear old friend of mine  
*How long have you known your old friend Sue?*  
*How long have you known dear Claude and Sue?*  
 Well, I met them just before I met you  
 They are my closest friends, dear Claude and Sue

**THE BEACHES OF MEXICO**

Have you ever seen the beaches of Mexico?  
 Have you ever walked the streets of San Juan? [hwa:n]  
 Have you ever been to Haiti?  
 Have you ever been to Spain?  
 Have you ever walked barefoot in a heavy rain?  
 Have you ever been in trouble?  
 Have you ever been in pain?  
 Have you ever been in love?  
 Would you do it all again?

Well, I've never seen the beaches of Mexico  
 I've never walked the streets of San Juan  
 I've never been to Haiti  
 I've never been to Spain  
 I've never walked barefoot in a heavy rain  
 But I've sure been in trouble  
 I've sure been in pain  
 I've sure been in love  
 I'd do it all again

Sing the songs.

### BRIGHTON IN THE RAIN

I've never been to Athens and I've never been to Rome  
I've only seen the Pyramids in picture books at home  
I've never sailed across the sea or been inside a plane  
I've always spent my holidays in Brighton in the rain

I've never eaten foreign food or drunk in a foreign bar  
I've never kissed a foreign girl or driven a foreign car  
I've never had to find my way in a country I don't know  
I've always known just where I am and where I'll never go

I've read travel books by writers who have been to Pakistan  
I've heard people telling stories of adventures in Iran  
I've watched TV documentaries about China and Brazil  
But I've never been abroad myself; it's making me feel ill

I've studied several languages like Hindi and Malay  
I've learnt lots of useful sentences I've never been able to say  
The furthest place I've ever been was to the Isle of Man  
And that was full of tourists from Jamaica and Japan

I've never been to Athens and I've never been to Rome  
I've only seen the Pyramids in picture books at home  
I've never sailed across the sea or been inside a plane  
I've always spent my holidays in Brighton in the rain

**The world is a book**  
and those who do not travel  
**read only a page.**

## HAVE YOU EVER?

Have you ever been to Moscow,  
Milan or Madrid?

Have you ever watched the sun set  
on the Great Pyramid?

Have you ever swum with dolphins?

Have you ever touched a snake?

Have you been down a volcano?

Have you felt an earthquake?

I have

I'm a traveller, you see

I've crossed all five continents  
and sailed the seven seas

I've spent five months in Malaysia  
and two years in Japan

I've walked from France to Finland;

Portugal to Pakistan

I have



Have you ever been to Boston  
Bombay or Berlin?

Have you ever slept beneath the stars  
with the Bedouin?

Have you ever trekked the desert  
on a camel's back?

Have you ever climbed a mountain?

Have you ever seen a yak?

I have

I'm a traveller, you see

I've crossed all five continents  
and sailed the seven seas

I've spent five months in Malaysia  
and two years in Japan

I've walked from France to Finland;

Portugal to Pakistan ... I have



## EXERCISES

### Ex. 1. Write each verb in 4 forms: Present Simple +s; Past Simple; Past Participle; Present Participle.

Model : *to work* – *works, worked, worked, working*; *to blow* – *blows, blew, blown, blowing*;

1. to wonder
2. to stir
3. to play
4. to fry
5. to offer
6. to prefer
7. to chat
8. to dry
9. to boil
10. to peel
11. to cut
12. to water
13. to pour
14. to come
15. to bite
16. to tin
17. to sail
18. to travel
19. to clear
20. to eat
21. to begin
22. to alter
23. to order
24. to find
25. to found
26. to try
27. to deliver
28. to expel
29. to study
30. to lag
31. to beg
32. to admit
33. to deny
34. to say

### Ex. 2. Put the verbs in brackets into Present Perfect, Past Simple or Present Simple.

1. I just (tell) you the answer.
2. She (answer) the letter on Tuesday.
3. It (be) five years since he (come) to our town.
4. ... you (see) the film *American Beauty*? When you (see) it?
5. They (go) away three minutes ago.
6. She isn't at home. She (go) to the hairdresser's.
7. I (not meet) him for a long time. We last (meet) at my birthday party 3 years ago.
8. I can't go out now, because I (not finish) my work.
9. ... you (lock) the door before you left the house?
10. The clock is slow. – It isn't slow. It (stop).
11. It's the third time he (marry).
12. ... you (have) breakfast yet? – Yes, I (have) it at 8.
13. You are late. The concert already (begin).
14. ... you ever (be) to Egypt? – Yes, I (go) there last year. It (be) great!
15. He (break) his leg in the skiing accident last month.
16. It (be) a fortnight since she (call) me last.
17. ... you (see) the moon last night?
18. I (write) her a letter but I can't send it as my computer is out of order.
19. We (miss) the bus yesterday and we (have) to walk.
20. She (wake) up, (lie) in her bed a bit, then (get) up and (go) to the bathroom.
21. The post just (arrive).
22. I (forget) his telephone number. Do you know it?
23. He never (fall) in love before.

### Ex. 3. Put the verbs in brackets into Present Perfect, Past Simple or Present Simple.

1. He (live) in St. Petersburg for two years and then (go) to Siberia.
2. It's a long time since he (send) me an e-mail.
3. How long they (be) married? – They (get) married two years ago.
4. The lecture (begin) already. You (be) ten minutes late. It's not the first time you (come) after the bell.
5. We (miss) the bus. – Never mind. Let's go on foot as we (do) last time.
6. ... you (be) to the Crimea before? – Yes, I (have) a holiday here last summer.
7. Where (be) Tom yesterday? – I don't know. I (not see) him since Monday.
8. Why you (switch) on the light? It's not dark at all.
9. He (die) of a heart attack. – Oh, no! When that (happen)?
10. ... you (be) to the library this week? When you (go)?
11. Mary last (see) him at Steve's party and she (not meet) him since.
12. I (make) a mistake when I (tell) him about my dream.
13. How you (see) the New Year in? – It (be) fun.

### Ex. 4. Put the verbs in brackets in the present tenses.

1. Will you, please, lend me your pen for a moment? I (leave) mine at home and now (have) nothing to write with. – I (be) sorry, but I (need) the pen right now. Ask someone else who (not write) at the moment.
2. ... you (see) *The Lord of the Rings*? – Sure. And I (read) the book now. – Really? How you (like) it? – I (enjoy) it very much.
3. We (go) to the cafe *Penka* tonight. ... you ever (be) there?
4. Where (be) Brenda? – She (be) in the kitchen. She (wash up). Why? – We (go) to a concert tonight. It (start) at seven. I (come) to pick her up.
5. Don't forget we (have) a housewarming tomorrow, be sure to bring Fred with you if he (return) from the country.
6. What's the matter with you? You (look) so pale. – Nothing much. I just (clean) my flat for tomorrow's party and I (be) a little tired.
7. Call me when you (be) free. I (have) something to talk to you about.
8. I (not hear) any news of Lucy and Mike yet. When they (move) into their new flat?
9. It (be) the second time you (break) a cup today. What's wrong with you?
10. ... you (understand) what they (talk) about? – Yes. They (discuss) the date of their meeting. They (want) to meet as soon as possible.
11. What you (look) for? – I (try) to find my dictionary. I just (see) it somewhere. – I (think) it (lie) on the bookshelf.

### Ex 5. Use the correct tense.

1. Where he (live) now? – Now he (stay) at his eldest daughter's. He usually (spend) every summer at her country house.
2. Why he still (sleep)? – He's a night watchman. He (work) at night and (sleep) in the daytime.
3. .... you (sleep) well last night?
4. I first (meet) Fred a year ago and I (see) him several times since then.
5. ... you (see) her before? – Yes. We (get) acquainted last year.

6. She (try) to go to bed before midnight, but last Saturday she (sit) up late. 7. He (be) very unhappy if you (leave) him. 8. I (read) this novel several times and I (go) to read it again. 9. I (not eat) anything today. 10. We (plan) a big housecleaning for next Saturday. We (go) to clean all the house from top to bottom. 11. It (be) the second time you (call) me Cindy. I'm Wendy, can't you remember it? – What you (say)? 12. His parents (write) to him a month ago but they (not get) any reply so they just (write) again. 13. It (be) six months since I (enter) this university. 14. It's December now. The birds (fly) to warm countries. They (fly) away every autumn. 15. I hope I (pass) my summer exams well. 16. When he (have) his next winter holidays he (ski) a lot. 17. Look! They (redecorate) their house already. Last week they (put) the furniture in its place and now they (clean) it. Soon they (invite) their friends to a party. 18. Don't bother me. I (do) a crossword puzzle. 19. .... you (come)? – Just a minute. I (not change) yet. .... you (see) my black shoes? 20. It (be) the first time I (cook) my own meal. 21. It (be) a fortnight since I (visit) my grandparents. 22. I just (send) her a text message.

### Ex. 6. Translate into English.

1. Выключи, пожалуйста, музыку. Разве ты не видишь, я делаю уроки? – Не волнуйся, я надену наушники. Ты будешь смотреть телевизор когда закончишь своё домашнее задание? – А что по телевизору? – Старая французская комедия, очень смешная. Я её уже смотрела несколько раз и собираюсь посмотреть сегодня. А ты? – Я схожу погулять с собакой, а потом немного почитаю. Я не люблю смотреть фильмы по несколько раз. 2. Я вымыла посуду и подмела на кухне. Теперь я хочу отдохнуть. Я думаю, я поиграю в компьютерные игры или посмотрю MTV. Я уже три дня не смотрела телевизор. Завтра после занятий мы идём в кино, а послезавтра мы едем за город. Мы ездим на дачу каждые выходные. В прошлый раз мы катались на лыжах в лесу и прекрасно провели время. 3. Если будет холодно, одевайся теплее, чтобы не простудиться. Будет жаль провести в постели все каникулы.

### Ex. 7. Translate into English.

1. Сегодня к нам придет тетя Эмили. – Я давно её не видела. Последний раз мы виделись три года назад. Она сильно изменилась? – Она совсем не изменилась и выглядит как всегда молодо. 2. Видишь человека на углу? Почему он смотрит на нас? 3. Когда он объясняет новое правило, он обычно пишет на доске примеры. 4. Ты что-нибудь слышишь? Мне кажется, я только что слышала какой-то странный звук. Кто-то ходит в комнате наверху. 5. Он дома? – Нет, он ещё не пришёл с работы. – Пусть он позвонит мне, когда придет. 6. Ты видела Энн сегодня? – Нет, она болеет. Разве ты не знаешь? Я иду навещать её сегодня вечером. Пойдешь со мной? 7. Я очень рада, что вы пришли. Вы всегда приносите хорошие новости. 8. У вас есть вопросы? Вы поняли всё, что я вам объяснила? 9. Я видела их вместе вчера. Они выглядели очень счастливыми. 10. Прошло уже два года с тех пор, как он уехал из города. 11. Я знаю его с детства. Мы ходили вместе в школу и сидели за одной партой. 12. Часы отстают. Они не отстают. Они остановились. Когда это произошло? 13. Кто починил утюг? – Роберт заходил позавчера и сделал это. 14. Ты ходил в химчистку за своим костюмом? – Я забыл.

## § 5. THE PAST PERFECT TENSE

### I. FORMATION

№		affirmative	interrogative	negative
1	regular verbs	<i>I had worked.</i>	<i>Had you worked?</i>	<i>She hadn't worked.</i>
2	irregular verbs	<i>He had gone away.</i>	<i>Had he gone away?</i>	<i>He hadn't gone away.</i>

## II. USE

	We use Past Perfect	
1	to talk about an action completed before a given moment in the past;  this moment can be expressed by an adverbial modifier of time or by a time clause.	<i>She <b>had laid</b> the table <u>by 6 o'clock</u>.</i> <i>She <b>had laid</b> the table <u>when the guests came</u>.</i>  <i><u>When we came</u>, the concert <b>had already</b> begun.</i>
N o t e	We use <b>Past Simple</b> in a <b>simple</b> or <b>compound</b> sentence with a <b>logical sequence</b> of actions.	<i>He <b>explained</b> the rule and the students <b>began</b> to do some exercises to practice it.</i>  <i>Kate <b>worked</b> as a secretary for six years and then <b>decided</b> to study for a manager.</i>
2	with the conjunctions <i><b>hardly ...when</b></i> <i><b>scarcely... when,</b></i> <i><b>no sooner ... than.</b></i>	<i>He <b>had</b> <u>hardly</u> <b>entered</b> the flat <u>when</u> the phone rang.</i> <i><u>No sooner</u> <b>had</b> they <b>started</b> the discussion <u>than</u> John came in.</i>
N o t e	If the words <i><b>hardly, scarcely, no sooner</b></i> begin the sentence, they are followed by <u>had</u> , then comes <u>the subject</u> and <u>the past participle</u> : (like in questions).	<i><u>Hardly</u> <b>had</b> he <b>entered</b> the flat <u>when</u> the phone rang.</i>

## EXERCISES

### Ex. 1. Put the verbs in brackets into Past Simple or Past Perfect.

1. We were late yesterday. When we (arrive) at the theatre the play already (begin). 2. When I (come) to the party Tom already (be) there, but he (go) home soon afterwards. 3. He (tell) a lie five minutes after he (promise) to tell the truth. 4. She (not want) to go to the cinema because she already (see) the film. 5. At first I (think) I (do) the right thing but then I (realize) I (make) a terrible mistake. 6. She (ask) her father to help her because she (spend) all her money. 7. When we (enter) the flat we (see) that somebody (break) into it. 8. We (not be) hungry. We just (have) lunch. 9. She just (get) home when I (phone). She (be) shopping. 10. The teacher (explain) the rule and the students (begin) doing the exercise. 11. When I (come) home Mother already (make) dinner. 12. The sun (rise) when the farmer (start) his work.

13. The exam was over at noon. John (hand) in his paper to the teacher and (leave) the room. He (not answer) all the questions. He (write) very long answers to three questions and there (not be) enough time for the other two. 14. Henry came home late yesterday because he (meet) an old friend of his and they (be) to the pub together. When he (get) home at last the house (be) dark. Everybody (go) to bed. 15. I left home at 8 in the morning, (get) on a trolley-bus and (sit) down. The conductor (come) for the ticket. I (put) my hand into the pocket for the money but there (be) none. I (leave) the wallet at home. I (have) to get off and go home again. I (be) half an hour late at my office that day. I never (be) late before.

**Ex. 2. Make up sentences using *hardly ... when, scarcely ... when, no sooner ... than.***

**Model:** *Fred left the prison. He robbed another bank.*

*Hardly had Fred left the prison when he robbed another bank.*

1. We came in. The telephone rang. 2. She began to cook. The light went out. 3. They switched on the TV set. It broke. 4. The Browns sat down to table. Somebody knocked at the door. 5. He read one page of his book. He heard some noise outside. 6. Jack entered. He saw a letter on the table. 7. They played a game of cards. Their father entered the room. 8. We went out. It began to snow. 9. He started the car. The policeman came up to him. 10. Jim sang this song. The audience began to shout and applaud. 11. He looked out. He saw a thief in the garden. 12. They danced the first dance. The band stopped playing and left the stage. 13. He drove a mile. He ran out of gas. 14. The robber attacked the passer-by. A huge dog jumped on him. 15. Charles proposed to Fiona. She confessed she loved James. 16. The train started. It stopped again. 17. It struck midnight. The ghost appeared. 18. I looked at the last piece of cake. My neighbour took it and ate it. 19. The teacher raised his head and looked at the pupils. They stopped talking. 20. Willy the Kid took out his gun. The sheriff shot him.

**Ex. 3. Make up sentences using *hardly ... when, scarcely ... when, no sooner ... than.***

1. We ordered our meal. The music began to play. 2. They took the menu. The waiter came up to their table. 3. I ate my oatmeal porridge. The clock struck eight. 4. Harry minced the meat. His mother came home. 5. She took a look at the recipe of the cake. She saw it was easy to make. 6. He tasted the fish soup. He realized there wasn't enough salt in it. 7. Sheila poured some apple juice into the glass. The telephone rang. 8. I peeled the potatoes. The water stopped to flow. 9. Jane laid the table. The first guests arrived. 10. Jack drank a glass of beer. The policeman appeared at his side. 11. He swore to tell the truth. We heard another lie from him.

**Ex. 4. Translate the sentences using *hardly ... when, scarcely ... when, no sooner ... than.***

1. Не успели мы написать последнее предложение, как урок закончился. 2. Не успел он выйти на улицу, как кто-то окликнул его. 3. Не успела она сделать уроки, как пришла мама. 4. Не успели студенты зайти в класс, как прозвенел звонок. 5. Не успел он сесть в машину, как увидел Майку. 6. Не успели часы пробить семь, как пришли первые гости. 7. Не успел он сесть за стол, как заиграла музыка. 8. Не успел я проснуться, как зазвонил телефон. 9. Не успел он прочитать свою лекцию, как студенты начали задавать ему вопросы. 10. Не успел он полить цветы, как начался дождь. 11. Не успел я постучать, как дверь открылась. 12. Не успели они сесть, как начался фильм. 13. Не успел он подумать о ней, как увидел её перед собой. 14. Не успели они начать драться, как приехала полиция.

**§ 6. THE FUTURE PERFECT TENSE**

**I. FORMATION**

№		affirmative	interrogative	negative
1	regular verbs	<i>I will have worked.</i>	<i>Will you have worked?</i>	<i>She won't have worked.</i>
2	irregular verbs	<i>He will have gone away.</i>	<i>Will he have gone away?</i>	<i>He won't have gone away.</i>

**II. USE**

We use Future Perfect to talk about an action completed before a given moment in the future	<i>Will you have written the essay <b>by</b> Friday? We won't have cleaned the flat <b>by</b> the time you <b>return</b>. When you come, he will have already gone away.</i>
---	--

**Ex. 1. Open the brackets using Future Simple or Future Perfect.**

1. When the father returns from his round the world trip his son (become) a grown-up man.
2. Julia hopes she (meet) her Prince Charming some day.
3. They (return) soon. ... you (wait) for a while?
4. By the end of the year I (read) all the books on the program.
5. ... you (type) the documents by 5?
6. I think I (try) these chocolate cookies.
7. I think I (pass) my summer exams by the beginning of July.
8. If you come after midnight the party (finish) already.
9. Jimmy is not sure if he (write) the essay by the end of the lesson.
10. Tomorrow we probably (write) an essay.
11. When you (give) me this book to read?
12. I promise I (visit) him tonight.
13. When you come, Jean (leave) already.
14. When you come dinner (be) ready.
15. The buses are overcrowded. I hope we (catch) a taxi.
16. By what time they (redecorate) their flat?

**Ex. 2. Translate into English.**

1. Он не напишет тест к концу урока.
2. Она выключила газ, заварила чай и накрыла на стол.
3. Джейк закончил работу только к полуночи.
4. Мой племянник так вырос с тех пор, как я видела его последний раз!
5. Не волнуйтесь! Я все приготовлю к началу вечеринки.
6. Мы опоздали вчера. Когда мы пришли, концерт уже начался.
7. Я надеюсь, он научится лучше говорить по-английски к концу года.
8. Я была уверена, что никогда не встречала его раньше.
9. Он достал сыр и колбасу из холодильника и сделал несколько сэндвичей.
10. В тот момент он не понимал, что произошло.
11. Я уверена, что никогда не увижу их снова.
12. Мы сдадим все экзамены к концу июня.
13. Когда я сдам все экзамены, я поеду куда-нибудь отдохнуть.
14. Он женится во второй или в третий раз?
15. Мы вышли из дома, после того как дождь перестал.
16. Не возвращайся, пока не найдешь его. Я надеюсь, с ним ничего не случилось.
17. Где ты был все это время? – Я был очень занят.
18. Я подумаю об этом завтра.

**§ 7. THE PAST CONTINUOUS TENSE****I. FORMATION**

№	person /number	affirmative	interrogative	negative
1	I He / She It	<i>I was working.</i>	<i>Was he working?</i>	<i>She wasn't working.</i>
2	We You They	<i>We were working.</i>	<i>Were you working?</i>	<i>They weren't working.</i>

**II. USE**

1	when we talk about an unfinished action at a given moment in the past	<i>When I came home, Mother was cooking dinner. We were watching TV at 7 o'clock yesterday.</i>
2	when we want to say that something happened in the middle of something else (we use Past Simple for the short action).	<i>Jane burnt her hand when she was baking a cake. They caught him just as he was climbing the fence</i>
3	if we mention the time of the beginning and the end of a continuous past action <i>from ... to (till)</i>  or the whole period of its duration <b>the whole evening, all day long, etc.</b> (Past Simple is also possible here)	<i>I was cleaning the flat from 2 to 3 last Saturday. = I cleaned the flat from 2 to 3 last Saturday.</i>  <i>He was working in the office all day yesterday. = He worked in the office all day yesterday.</i>
4	when we talk about two simultaneous past actions (Past Simple is also possible here)).	<i>I was cooking while my brother was playing. I cooked while my brother played.</i>



## EXERCISES

### Ex. 1. Put the verbs in brackets into Past Simple or Past Continuous.

1. He (write) a letter when I (see) him. 2. Harry (do) his homework while his brothers (play) games. 3. The man (fall) down as he (run) for the bus. 4. We (sing) a song when Jeff (come) into the room. 5. When the telephone (ring) he (work) in the garden. 6. While the teacher (give) the lesson a small dog (walk) into the room. 7. She (walk) along the street when she (see) her ex-classmate. 8. He (lose) his pocket-book while he (see) the sights of Rome. 9. When Jack (come) home his parents (re-paper) the room. 10. Mary (wear) her new dress when I (meet) her yesterday. 11. The students still (write) a dictation when the bell (ring). 12. They (lie) in the sun when it (begin) to rain. 13. The sun (rise) when I (wake) up. 14. The baby (sleep) when the doctor (come). 15. He (read) his newspaper when he (hear) a strange noise. 16. The boy (fish) when he (fall) into the river. 17. She still (lay) the table when the guests (come). 18. A lot of people (see) the accident while they (wait) for the bus. 19. He often (go) to this pub when he (study) at the university. 20. He (fall) down and (break) his leg while he (play) football. 21. The travellers (reach) the town just as the sun (set). 22. The boy (jump) off the bus while it still (go). 23. The hunter (shoot) and (kill) the lion just as it (jump) at him. 24. The travellers (see) some camels as they (cross) the desert.

### Ex. 2. Put the verbs in brackets into Past Simple, Past Continuous or Past Perfect.

1. Tim (sit) in a corner with a book. I told him that he (read) in a very bad light. 2. When I (enter), the lecture already (start). The students (sit) at their desks and (take) notes. 3. I (make) a cake when the light (go) out. I had to finish it in the dark. 4. Unfortunately when I (come) Ann just (leave), so we only had time for a few words. 5. He (have) a bath when the telephone (ring). Very unwillingly he (get) out of the bath and (go) to answer it. 6. He suddenly realized that he (travel) in the wrong direction. 7. When I (look) through my granny's things, I (find) this unusual recipe. 8. I (see) you from the car yesterday. Where you (go)? 9. The boys (play) cards when they (hear) their father's footsteps. They immediately (hide) the cards and (take) out their textbooks. 10. He (not allow) us to go boating last Wednesday as a strong wind (blow). 11. I (come) into her room at seven, but, to my surprise, she (wake) up already. 12. When I (hear) the knock I (go) to the door and (open) it. I (see) a man but I (not recognize) him at first as I (not wear) my glasses. 13. When I (walk) in, they already (sit) round the fire. Mark (do) a crossword puzzle, Granny (knit). 14. Before the children (come) to the party, Mr Sandford (buy) a present for each of them and Mrs Sanford (bake) some cakes. 15. No sooner she (switch) on the TV set than the film (begin). 16. It was the first time he (kiss) her. 17. As they (walk) along the road they (hear) a car coming from behind. Rick (turn) round and (hold) up his hand. The car (stop). 18. When I (arrive) at the station Stella (wait) for me. She (wear) a smart suit and (look) very pretty. 19. While he (water) the flowers it (begin) to rain. 20. It is many years since I (hear) him speak about this tragedy. 21. Alec (buy) a new exercise-book yesterday because he (fill) his old one. 22. The men (say) they (work) on the road outside my house and (want) some water to make tea. 23. Hardly she (turn) off the light when the doorbell (ring).

### Ex. 3. Put the verbs in brackets into Past Simple, Past Continuous or Past Perfect.

1. Yes, Helen? What you (say)? 2. He (not count) the money that Harry (give) him. 3. I (look) at her. She (smile) to herself and (not answer) my question at once. 4. She (get) up, (go) to the bathroom and (take) a shower. 5. Frieda and Bob (smile) at each other and (begin) to walk slowly to the lake. 6. The silence in the corridor (tell) us that the exam (finish) already. 7. He (leave) on the very day I (arrive). 8. Mother (make) sandwiches in the kitchen and (not hear) the bell. 9. He (go) to school for the first time with a big bunch of flowers in his hand and it (seem) to him everyone (look) at him. 10. After he (leave) school he (not find) a job and (decide) to go to New York. 11. The grass (be) wet. The rain (fall) at night. 12. He (think) he (see) that face somewhere before. 13. Rick (say) he (go) to Hawaii in May. 14. Maggie (go) back to take her handbag which she (leave) on the table in the hall. 15. The storm (pass) and the sun (shine) brightly in the clear blue sky. 16. We (drink) tea and (eat) the biscuits which Mrs Ripley (bring) us. 17. The door (open). A tall dark-haired woman (stand) in front of us. 18. He (live) in this town for eleven years and then (move) to the country. 19. Sally (drop) two cups when she (wash) up but neither of the cups (break).

## § 8. THE FUTURE CONTINUOUS TENSE

### I. FORMATION

№	person/number	affirmative	interrogative	negative
1	I, He, She, It We, You, They	<i>I will be working.</i>  <i>We will be working.</i>	<i>Will he be working?</i>  <i>Will you be working?</i>	<i>She won't be working.</i>  <i>They won't be working.</i>
2	<b>Note</b> We can use <b>shall</b> in the first person		<i>I shall be coming soon.</i> <i>We shall be working there at this time.</i>	

### II. USE

1	when we talk about an unfinished action at a given moment in the future	<i>He will still be sleeping at 6 o'clock tomorrow.</i> <i>I will be going to work at this time on Monday.</i> <i>We'll be having lunch when they come.</i>
2	when we talk about personal future plans or something which will certainly happen because it's the usual run of things.	<i>I will be meeting him tomorrow.</i> (Я увижусь с ним завтра – так как мы работаем вместе и видимся каждый день)
3	when we mention the time of the beginning and the end of a continuous future action <b>from ... to (till)</b>  or the whole period of its duration <b>the whole evening, all day long, etc.</b> (we can also use Future Simple here)	<i>They'll be working here from 2 to 4 on Monday. =</i> <i>They'll work here from 2 to 4 on Monday.</i>  <i>She will be reading the whole day tomorrow. =</i> <i>She will read the whole day tomorrow.</i>
4	when we talk about two simultaneous actions in the future (Future Continuous + Present Continuous or Future Simple + Present Simple).	<i>I will be doing my homework while you are cooking.</i> <i>= I will do my homework while you cook</i>

**Sing the song.**

#### SHE'LL BE COMING

She'll be coming round the mountain when she comes (2)  
She'll be coming round the mountain, coming round the mountain  
She'll be coming round the mountain when she comes

*Chorus:*

All sing: i-i-yippee-yippee-i  
Singing: i-i-yippee-yippee-i  
Singing: i-i-yippee-yippee-i  
Singing: i-i-yippee-yippee-i

She'll be riding six wild horses when she comes (2)  
She'll be riding six wild horses, riding six wild horses  
She'll be riding six wild horses when she comes

*Chorus:*

And we'll all go out to meet her when she comes (2)  
Yes, we'll all go out to meet her, all go out to meet her  
Yes, we'll all go out to meet her when she comes

*Chorus:*

**Ex. 1. Put the verbs in brackets into Future Simple, Future Continuous, Future Perfect.**

1. Don't phone me at nine. I (have) a bath at this time. 2. – .....we (meet) at two? – OK, the classes (finish) by this time. 3. I'm going on holiday on Saturday. This time next week I (enjoy) myself at the seaside. 4. .... you (use) your bicycle tomorrow morning? 5. We are late. The film already (start) when we get to the cinema. 6. I can give your message to Laura. I (see) her tomorrow. 7. You (not be able) to speak to him at seven tomorrow. He already (leave) by this time. 8. They (be) married for ten years next month. 9. I can easily imagine what my family (do) when I return home. Father (sit) in an armchair and (read) his newspaper, Mother (watch) her favourite TV series, my younger brother (play) his computer games and my dog Ronnie (lie) at the door and (wait) for me. 10. He hopes he (pay) all his debts by the end of the year. 11. Stay for a while. Granny (bake) some cookies and we (have) tea. 12. He (redecorate) the country house by the time you arrive. 13. Just think! The day after tomorrow we (fly) over Europe.

**Ex. 2. Translate into English.**

1. Где ты будешь, когда я приеду? – Я буду работать в библиотеке. 2. Чем он собирается заниматься завтра? 3. В три часа мы будем сидеть в поезде и ехать в Париж. 4. Присоединяйся к нам. С восьми до десяти мы будем играть в теннис. 5. В субботу утром мама приготовит нам обед к двум часам. 6. Если ничего не изменится, они будут встречать своего партнера из Греции в понедельник. 7. Интересно, придет ли она завтра на нашу вечеринку? 8. Пора идти. Родители будут волноваться. 9. Трудно представить, что будет происходить с нами через день или два. – Все будет хорошо. 10. Зачем ты взяла зонтик Лизы? Она же будет искать его завтра утром. 11. Я могу легко описать тебе, что будет делать моя семья в канун Нового года: мама будет накрывать на стол, папа будет готовить индейку с яблоками, а дети будут украшать елку. 14. Джейн устраивает вечеринку в субботу, ты идешь? – К сожалению, нет, я в это время буду трудиться, как пчелка. У меня экзамен в понедельник.

**Ex. 3. Translate into English.**

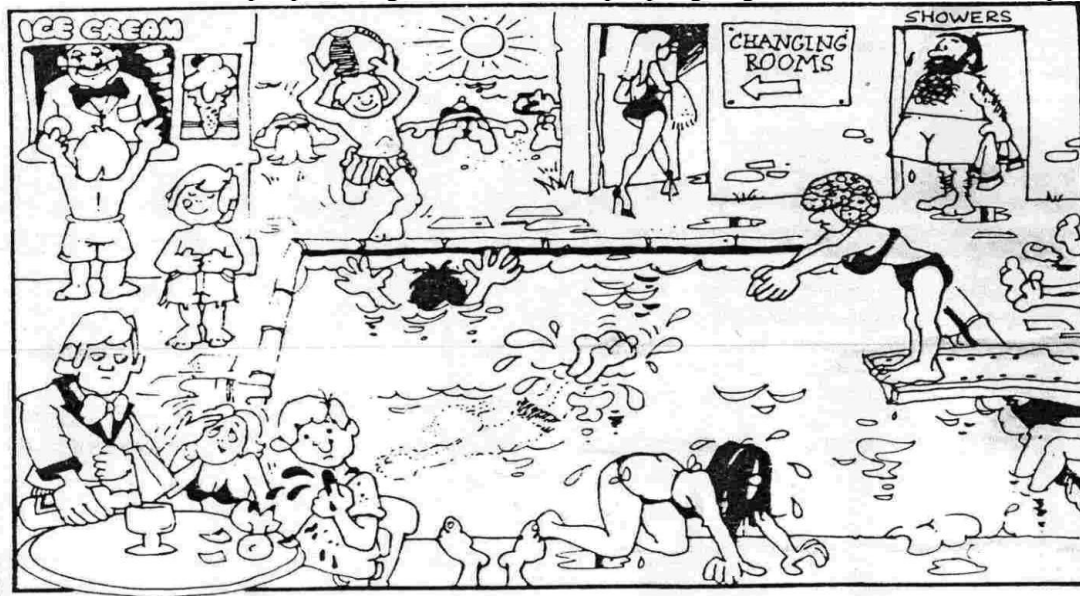
1. Вчера в десять часов я смотрел телевизор. 2. Завтра в это время я буду сдавать экзамен по фонетике. 3. Когда мы вышли на улицу, дождь уже перестал, и ярко светило солнце. 4. К концу месяца я дочитаю эту книгу до конца. 5. Я не пущу тебя гулять, пока ты не пообедаешь. 6. Мой друг сказал, что его старший брат уже приехал. 7. Я часто ходил в этот клуб, когда работал в этом районе. 8. Вы почувствуете себя намного лучше после того, как выпьете немного крепкого чая. 9. Что вы делали в восемь вечера четырнадцатого ноября? – Я пил пиво в баре за углом. 10. Не успели мы подбежать к троллейбусу, как двери закрылись, и он тронулся. 11. Не звони мне так рано завтра. Я буду ещё спать. 12. Вчера он весь день работал в саду. Когда приехала его жена, он поливал яблони. 13. Мой друг обещает мне, что мы поедем на юг вместе в следующем году. 14. Я никогда не забуду того, что они для меня сделали. 15. Когда я пришёл, она уже всё приготовила и накрывала на стол. 16. Полицейский спросил меня, видел ли я, что произошло. 17. Завтра он ведёт детей в зоопарк. 18. У вас будет время помочь мне завтра утром? 19. Я буду мыть посуду, пока вы убираете со стола. 20. С кем ты разговаривала по телефону, когда я вошла?

**Ex. 4. Translate into English.**

1. Когда он пришел, они обедали. 2. Когда ты закончила школу? 3. В тот день у нас было много работы, так как вечером мы уезжали. 4. Я легко могу представить, что мои друзья будут делать, когда я приду. Джо и Сэм будут играть в карты, Майк будет спать, а Дэнни будет играть в компьютерные игры или бродить по Интернету. 5. Сколько времени ты вязала этот свитер? – Три недели. 6. Когда часы пробили одиннадцать, она все ещё спала. 7. Я увижу Джима сегодня. Ему что-нибудь передать? 8. Когда он проснулся, звонил телефон. 9. Мы шли молча какое-то время. Никто не хотел говорить. 10. Он выглянул из окна. Мальчишки играли в футбол во дворе. Бабушки сидели на скамейке. Сосед выгуливал собаку. Всё как обычно. 11. Кто-то стоял за дверью, когда мы разговаривали. Он всё слышал. 12. Свари, пожалуйста, кофе, пока я одеваюсь, ладно? 13. Я пошла. Мэгги будет ждать меня после уроков.

**Ex. 5. Look at the picture of a holiday centre swimming pool.**

What are some people doing? What are some people going to do? What have some people just done?



**Use the words:** shine, lie, sit, run, play, throw, change, have a shower, buy, eat, break; pour, drink, lick one's lips, get out of, serve, swim, dive, jump, splash, scratch, cut, have a good time, move on all fours;

**Ex. 6. Look at pictures and say what had happened in the room when Gwen's mother brought the cake.**



**Use the words:** break, eat, open, take out of, draw, spill, turn on, tie, knock; throw, a jar (= кувшин)



## § 9. THE PERFECT CONTINUOUS TENSES

### 9. 1. PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS

#### I. FORMATION

№	person /number	affirmative	interrogative	negative
1	I We You They	<i>I have been working.</i>	<i>Have you been working?</i>	<i>They haven't been working.</i>
2	He She It	<i>He has been working.</i>	<i>Has he been working?</i>	<i>She hasn't been working.</i>

#### II. USE

Situation 1	Situation 2
We use the Present Perfect Continuous when we talk about an action which began in the past, has been going on up to the present and is still going on..	when we talk about an action which has been recently in progress but is no longer going on at present.
<i>They have been learning French since 2009. She has been teaching English for 5 years.</i>  <i>Она преподаёт уже 5 лет.</i>	<i>Her eyes are red. I think she has been crying. His hands are dirty. He has been repairing the car.</i>  <i>Он чинил машину</i>

#### COMPARE

##### Present Continuous

##### When? – (now)

What are you doing? - I am washing up.

##### Present Perfect

(we focus on the **result**)

The walls are blue.

She has painted the walls.

##### Present Perfect Continuous

##### How long?

I've been washing up for half an hour already.

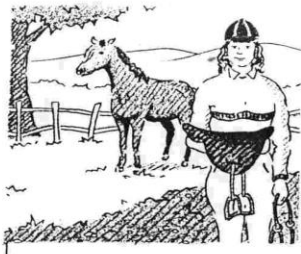
##### Present Perfect Continuous

(we focus on the **action**)

She has paint on her clothes.

She's been painting the walls.

#### Ex. 1. Look at the pictures. What has a person been doing in each one?



**Ex. 2. Put the verbs in brackets in Present Continuous or Present Perfect Continuous.**

1. What you (look) at? – I (look) at that picture over there. I (look) at it for almost half an hour and I still can't understand what it is. 2. What Mary (do)? – She (work) on the computer. She (sit) at it since lunch. I think she should have a rest. 3. Tom, here you are at last! I (look) for you everywhere. 4. Why you (smile), Robert? – I (watch) your kitten. It's so funny. 5. I see you (do) your homework all the evening. Is it the last exercise you (write)? 6. He (sit) here for an hour. ... he (wait) for anybody? 7. How long they (study) French? – For three years already. 8. She (work) at her paper since Monday. Now she (write) the conclusion. 9. Where is Mum? – She (rest) in the garden all day. 10. Don't wake him. He only (sleep) for two hours. 11. Where's Dave? – He (try) to repair the television. 12. He (wash) his hands. He just (repair) the television. 13. Why they (laugh)? – Jim (tell) them his stories again. 14. It's six o'clock. I (wait) for Jane for forty minutes already. I must be off.

**Ex. 3. Put the verbs in brackets in Present Perfect or Present Perfect Continuous.**

1. ... you (pass) your exam in English? 2. I (try) to learn Japanese for years, but I can't say I (make) any progress yet. 3. This book (lie) here for weeks. ... you (not read) it yet? 4. He (wait) for her since 7 o'clock and she (not come) yet. 5. She (read) "The Catcher in the Rye" for the last two weeks and (enjoy) every word of it. 6. I (think) about you all day. 7. Jake never (be) to this new club before. 8. She is very angry with you. You (sit) here all the time and (do) nothing. 9. I (be) so busy this week, I just (have) no time to speak to him. 10. I (know) him all my life and we always (be) good friends. 11. I am tired. I (cook) all morning. 12. I just (talk) to him. He agrees to help us. 13. We (join) the English club to have a better command of English. 14. They (gossip) all the time; it seems they have nothing else to talk about. 15. You never (swim) in the ocean, have you?

**Ex. 4. Use the present perfect, the present continuous or the present perfect continuous tense.**

1. – How long you (wait) for me here? – Not long. I just (come). 2. – ..... she still (bake) pancakes? – Yes, she (make) nineteen and she wants to make some more. She (stand) near that cooker for an hour already. 3. He (drive) a bus since he was twenty. 4. Look, Danny (ride) a bike! It's the first time he (ride) it. 5. – Why you (look) at me so attentively? – I (watch) you for some time, but I can't understand what you (change) in your appearance. – I just (have) my hair cut. – Oh! 6. I (have) a bad stomachache. I (eat) too many chocolates. 7. I (have) a headache. I (watch) TV for too long. 8. What you (do) all this time? 9. What you (do) with my pen? It doesn't write. 10. What you (do) with your Daddy's newspaper, Johnny? Put it on the table, please. 11. – Look! He (smoke) again. .... he (not give) it up? – It's no easy thing for him. He (smoke) for ten years already and (become) really addicted to it. 12. – You look really tired. ....you (study) too much? – Yes. I (work) at my paper on Linguistics and I (not finish) it yet. 13. He (make) films since 1987 and they (win) two Oscars already. Now he (work) on his new blockbuster. 14. They (know) each other since their childhood. 15. She (slim) for two months already, but (not lose) any weight so far.

**9. 2. PAST PERFECT CONTINUOUS**

**I. FORMATION**

person /number	affirmative	interrogative	negative
I, We, You, They, He, She, It	<i>I had been working.</i>	<i>Had you been working?</i>	<i>He hadn't been working.</i>

**II. USE**

Situation 1	when we talk about an action	Situation 2	when we talk about an action
which began before a definite moment in the past, continued up to that moment and was still going on at that moment		that had been in progress before a definite moment in the past.	
<i>We couldn't go out because it had been raining hard since early morning.</i>		<i>Her eyes were red. Obviously, she had been crying.</i>	

## 9. 3. FUTURE PERFECT CONTINUOUS

### I. FORMATION

person /number	affirmative	interrogative	negative
I, We, You, He, She, It, They	<i>I will have been working.</i>	<i>Will you have been working?</i>	<i>He won't have been working.</i>

### II. USE

rule	example
when we talk about an action which will begin before a definite moment in the future, will continue up to that moment and will be going on at that moment.	<i>I will have been studying English for 9 years by September.</i>

**Note.** We use Perfect tenses instead of Perfect Continuous tenses

1) with the **verbs of state** not used in the continuous form

*He has known Jack since 2005. He hadn't heard from her for a year, when he got that letter.*

*They will have been here for six years next week.*

2) sometimes with verbs of action in **negative sentences**

*I haven't eaten since lunch. (= I haven't been eating since lunch)*

*I was worried. She hadn't phoned me for 2 weeks. (=She hadn't been phoning me for 2 weeks.)*

*She won't have phoned me for a week tomorrow. (=She won't have been phoning me for a week.)*

3) sometimes with verbs which denote **progressive actions**

*She has lived here for twenty years. (= She has been living here for twenty years)*

*He had worked there for ten years, when the accident happened. (He had been working there ...)*

*He will have travelled for a month tomorrow. (He will have been travelling for a month tomorrow.)*

### Ex. 1. Put the verbs in brackets in Perfect Continuous tenses.

1. Tomorrow he (travel) about Africa for two weeks. 2. He (learn) Spanish for three years when he had a chance to go to Spain. 3. It (rain) since early morning. 4. Your clothes are dirty. ....you (play) football again? 5. By the beginning of next August she (grow) roses for twenty years. 6. He felt awful. He (walk) all day long without any rest. 7. You (watch) TV for three hours already. It's time to have a rest. 8. He (swim) since he was ten. 9. He (run) for some time when he saw a forest in the distance. 10. Next month they (work) in this firm for twelve years. 11. The kids were covered with snow from head to foot. They (fight) with snowballs since noon. 12. Since when your cousin (collect) toy cars? 13. Why is Father so dirty? ..... he (repair) the car again? 14. He was sleepy. He (drive) his truck for ten hours. 15. Let's wake her up. She (sleep) for thirteen hours already.

### Ex. 2. Translate into English.

1. Элмер путешествовал по Европе уже восемь дней, когда его мама позвонила из Канзаса. К этому времени он побывал уже в восьми странах. 2. Через неделю будет уже четыре года, как я изучаю английский. 3. Ты ходишь по магазину уже полчаса. Ты выбрала себе что-нибудь? 4. Мне кажется, тебе пора отдохнуть. Скоро будет уже два часа, как ты сидишь за уроками. Я надеюсь, ты закончишь всё, до того как начнется фильм. 5. На вечеринку она надела платье, которое шила целый месяц. 6. Я знаю её уже 10 лет, и всё это время она работает бухгалтером в этой фирме. 7. Мы решили заглянуть в ближайшую закусочную и перекусить. Мы с утра гуляли по городу и очень устали. 8. В следующем месяце будет уже год, как он носит эти джинсы. Придется купить ему новые. 9. С тех пор как он стал работать в банке, он пользуется кредитной карточкой. 10. Завтра будет пятнадцать лет, как они женаты. 11. Скажите когда придёт врач? Я жду его с десяти часов. 12. К этому времени на будущий год он будет здесь работать уже 16 лет. 13. Снег идёт уже несколько часов. 14. Он проучился в школе всего два года, когда началась война. 15. Дети очень устали, так как ходили по лесу весь день.

## § 10. TALKING ABOUT FUTURE

### 10. 1. We use **Future Simple** when

- 1) we decide to do something **at the moment of speaking**; *We have no bread. I'll go and buy some*
- 2) we **offer** something; *I left my pen at home. – I'll give you mine.*
- 3) we **agree** or **refuse** to do something;  
*Can you give me that book? – OK, I'll bring it tomorrow. He won't help us. This car won't start.*
- 4) we **promise** to do something; *I'll visit him tomorrow.*
- 5) we **ask** somebody to do something **politely**; *Will you open the window?*
- 6) we talk of some **natural** event that we **can't control**. *The baby will be born after Christmas.*

### 10. 2.

- 1) We use **Future Continuous** for an **unfinished** action in the future.  
*He will still be sleeping at 6 o'clock tomorrow.*
- 2) We use **Future Perfect** for a **completed** action in the future.  
*He will have got up by this time tomorrow.*
- 3) We use **Future Perfect Continuous** for an action that will be **in progress** before a given moment in the future.  
*You will have been learning English for a year next September.*

### 10. 3. We use **Present Simple**

- 1) when something is certain to happen in the future and we can't change it, because it will happen according to a **time-table, program, calendar**, etc;  
*The match begins at 7 tomorrow. The train leaves in 2 hours. When does this film end?*
- 2) in the adverbial **clauses** of **time** and **condition**.  
*We'll begin the meeting when he comes. If the weather is better we'll go to the country.*

**Note.** We can also use other Present tenses in these clauses.

*I'll have a rest after I've done this job. I'll be washing up while you are clearing the table.*

### 10. 4. When we have already **decided or arranged** to do something **before**, we use:

- 1) Present Continuous (a future adverbial is necessary).  
*I am meeting him tomorrow morning.* (decided **and** arranged)
- 2) to be going to. *I am going to meet him (tomorrow).* (decided **but not** arranged)
- 3) Future Continuous. *I will be meeting him (tomorrow morning).* (will happen naturally)

### 10. 5. When we **predict future happenings**, we use

- 1) Future Simple (when we are not sure). *I think, he will like such a present.*
- 2) to be going to (when there's something in the present situation that makes us sure).  
*Look at these clouds. It's going to rain. It's 8 o'clock. We are going to be late.*

## EXERCISES

### Ex. 1. Translate into English.

1. Я никогда не был так счастлив. Я буду помнить этот день всю жизнь. 2. Завтра в это время я буду купаться в море. 3. Ты идёшь в магазин? Что ты собираешься купить? 4. Посмотри на этого шестилетнего мальчика. Он съест все наши пирожные. 5. Ты сможешь мне убрать квартиру в выходные? 6. Я вернусь в 3. Надеюсь, к этому времени ты приготовишь обед. 7. В начале мая будет уже 8 месяцев, как она учится в этом университете. 8. Завтра мы идём в кино. Фильм начинается в 7. Не опаздывай. 9. Прочитайте текст с начала до конца, пожа-



луйста. 10. Они собираются пожениться. Свадьба в следующую субботу. 11. Если ты зайдёшь ко мне в 2, я, наверное, всё ещё буду обедать. 12. Ты мне не поможешь? Банка никак не открывается. 13. Я передам твоё предложение Джеку. Я встречаюсь с ним сегодня. 14. Ты едешь слишком быстро. Мы попадём в аварию. 15. Когда мы доберёмся до города, солнце, наверное, будет уже заходить. 16. Он не собирается покупать сигареты, потому что он бросает курить. 17. Посмотри, какой сильный дождь. Мы промокнем насквозь. 18. Завтра приезжает тётя Эмили. Поезд приходит ровно в четыре часа. 19. Когда я приду домой, папа будет смотреть футбол, а мама шить новое платье к своему дню рождения. 20. Скоро будет уже полчаса, как ты делаешь себе причёску. Уже без четверти 9. Мы не успеем на наш автобус. 21. Ты переведёшь текст к двум часам? Звонок в пять минут третьего. 22. Я схожу в библиотеку в среду. Я обещаю. 23. Что ты делаешь сегодня вечером? Пойдешь со мной в клуб?

## ENGLISH TENSES IN THE ACTIVE VOICE

	<b>Simple</b>	<b>Continuous</b>	<b>Perfect</b>	<b>Perfect Continuous</b>
	facts, customary, repeated actions	actions unfinished at a given moment	actions completed by a given moment	actions that have been in progress before a given moment
<b>Present</b>	<b>I write</b> He <b>writes</b> <b>Do you write?</b> <b>Does he write?</b>  (usually, every day)	<b>I am writing</b> He <b>is writing</b> We <b>are writing</b>  (at this moment, now)	<b>I have written</b> He <b>has written</b>  (already, yet, often, just, today, this year)	<b>I have been writing</b> He <b>has been writing</b>  (for a long time, since 5)
<b>Past</b>	<b>I wrote</b> <b>Did you write?</b> He <b>didn't write</b>  (yesterday, long ago)	<b>I was writing</b> You <b>were writing</b>  (at 5 o'clock yesterday)	<b>I had written</b>  (by 5 o'clock yesterday)	<b>I had been writing</b>  (for two hours when they came)
<b>Future</b>	He <b>will write</b> He <b>won't write</b>  (tomorrow, soon)	He <b>will be writing</b>  (at this time tomorrow)	He <b>will have written</b>  (by 5 o'clock tomorrow)	He <b>will have been writing</b>  (for two hours when they come)

### Ex. 2. Fill the gaps with the correct form of the verb *eat*.

1. Where's he? He still ... 2. Next month he ... only vegetables, cereals and fruit for a year. 3. She usually ... very little. 4. What ... you ... for dessert? – I haven't decided yet. 5. She ... never ... frogs or snails in her life. 6. He ... for a while when he saw the waiter coming to him. 7. Look, Mum! I ... up the porridge. 8. They still ... when we entered. 9. When we came in, we saw he ... already ... his lunch. 10. What ... you ... now? 11. Don't call her at two. She ... 12. .... you ... yet? 13. I ... fish for lunch. It was delicious. 14. I not ... cakes for a long time. 15. She is on a diet. She ... only fruit for the last six days. 16. I'm afraid we ... all the oranges by tomorrow.

### Ex. 3. Translate into English using the verb *learn*.

1. Он учит английский. 2. Он учит английский с прошлого года. 3. Он учил английский в школе. 4. Когда мама пришла, он уже выучил английский. 5. Тише! Он учит английский. 6. Когда мы пришли, он учил английский. 7. Ты выучил английский? 8. Когда-нибудь я выучу английский. 9. Я выучу английский до того, как начнется фильм. 10. Завтра в это время он будет учить английский. 11. Он учил английский пять лет до того, как поехал за границу. 12. Первого сентября будет уже семь лет, как он учит английский.

## § 11. MODAL VERBS

Modal verbs are used to show the speaker's attitude towards the action.

The action itself is expressed by the infinitive of the notional verb, which follows the modal verb.

Modal verbs are not 'complete' verbs, because:

1. they lack most of the tense forms and don't have the passive voice
2. there is no – (e)s in the 3d person singular
3. we can't use them as infinitives
4. we don't use 'to'-infinitives after them (except ought)

### 11. 1. CAN (past form COULD, equivalent BE ABLE TO)

	meaning	examples	commentary
1	mental and physical <b>ability</b>	<i>Can you swim?</i> <i>He can speak six languages.</i> <i>He will be able to ride a horse soon.</i>	
2	possibility due to <b>circumstances</b>	<i>You can get there by bus.</i> <i>Can you come earlier tomorrow?</i> <i>I will be able to meet him next week.</i>	
3	<b>permission</b>	<i>Can I come in?</i> <i>You can play now.</i>	in informal situations
4	<b>request</b>	<i>Can you help me?</i> <i>Can you open the window?</i>	
5	<b>prohibition</b>	<i>You can't cross the street in the middle of the block.</i>	'cannot' is written as one word
6	<b>strong doubt</b> or <b>astonishment</b>	<i>Can he know it?</i> (неужели) <i>It cannot be.</i> (НЕ МОЖЕТ БЫТЬ)	in questions and negative sentences

### COULD

		meaning	examples	in Russian
1	could	<b>general ability</b> in the past	<i>He <b>could</b> read when he was 5.</i>	«МОГ»
2	was able to were able to	someone <b>managed</b> to do something in the past	<i>Though it was rather dark he <b>was able</b> to read the letter.</i>	«СМОГ»
3	couldn't	for <b>either</b> situation	<i>He <b>couldn't</b> read when he was 5.</i> <i>It was dark and he <b>couldn't</b> read the letter.</i>	«НЕ МОГ» и «НЕ СМОГ»
4	could	<b>suggestion</b> or <b>request</b>	<i>I <b>could</b> come tonight.</i> <i><b>Could</b> you do me a favour?</i>	«МОГ БЫ»

**Ex. 1. Ask all kinds of questions and make the sentences negative.**

1. Her son can play chess very well. 2. They could come to our place yesterday. 3. She'll be able to write her essay tomorrow. 4. We were able to speak to Jim. 5. He has always been able to help us.

**Ex. 2. Complete the sentences using *could* or *was/were able to*.**

1. He asked me to lend him \$100. I didn't have the sum, but I ..... give him \$50. 2. The fishing boat sank but fortunately the fisherman ..... swim to the shore. 3. The woman had a shock and ..... describe the thief to the police. She was just crying hysterically. 4. When she was young she ..... dance all night. 5. It was a fine day, so we ..... have a picnic and we enjoyed it very much. 6. He suddenly felt very bad, but he ..... finish his speech, although at the end of it he ..... hardly stand. 7. He spoke very little French when he left school, but he ..... understand the language. 8. He spoke very distinctly and we ..... understand everything. 9. I got to the station in time and ..... catch the 9.50 train. I was happy I didn't need to wait for the next one. 10. She ..... visit her friends every day before her marriage if she wanted to, but now she has a far busier life. 11. All the town hotels were full, but at last we ..... find two vacant rooms in a small hotel in the suburb. 12. Before this accident he ..... work fourteen hours a day if he had to. 13. When the garage had repaired their car they ..... continue their journey. 14. She had a restless night, though she ..... sleep for an hour before the dawn. 15. He was very strong, he ..... lift heavy things easily.

**11. 2. MAY (past form: MIGHT, equivalent: BE ALLOWED TO)**

	meaning	examples	commentary
1	<b>permission</b>	<i>May I come in?</i> <i>You may sit down here.</i> <i>He said we might take his car.</i>	more formal than <b>can</b>
2	<b>uncertain supposition</b>	<i>Where are you going in July?</i> <i>- Well, we may (might) go to Spain.</i> <i>It may (might) rain tomorrow.</i> <i>He may (might) be at home now.</i>	we use <b>might</b> as a synonym of <b>may</b> for the present situation to express higher degree of uncertainty
3	<b>reproach</b> («МОГ БЫ»)	<i>You might help me, but you don't.</i>	we use only <b>might</b>

**Note.** Mind the difference between the word **maybe** (=perhaps=МОЖЕТ БЫТЬ) and the two words **may be** (modal verb + infinitive = МОГУТ БЫТЬ)  
*Maybe they will come soon. They may be here soon. They may come soon.*

**Ex. 3. Ask all kinds of questions and make the sentences negative.**

1. He may come soon. 2. She may tidy her room later today. 3. They might return next week.

**Ex. 4. Insert *can, could, may, might* or their negative forms.**

1. Students ..... bring textbooks into the examination room. 2. - ..... you stand on your head? - I ..... when I was in my teens. 3. - ..... I smoke here? No, you ..... Smoking is not allowed. 4. - ..... you drive? - Yes, I .....drive, but I ..... do it very well. 5. No matter how hard I try, I ..... remember his address. 6. He .....answer the teacher's questions yesterday because he wasn't ready. 7. - ..... I come and see you tonight? - Do, please. 8. When I first went to Spain I .....understand some Spanish, but I ..... speak it. 9. He said we .....live in his flat for some time. 10. There was a lot of noise in the street last night and I ..... sleep. 11. .... I borrow your umbrella? I left mine at home. 12. .... you shut the window? It's becoming cold. 13. I don't believe you. He ..... be so cruel. 14. I'm not sure, but he ..... be in the pub now. 15. You ..... listen to him at least!

### 11. 3. MODALS OF OBLIGATION

**MUST** (equivalent: HAVE TO / HAVE GOT TO), **NEED**, **BE TO**, **SHOULD**, **OUGHT TO**;

	meaning	modals	examples	commentary
1	<b>obligation or necessity</b> that the speaker agrees to	must had to will have to	<i>If he's in trouble, we must help him.</i> <i>It's late, I must go now.</i> <i>It was late and I had to go.</i> <i>I'll have to help him.</i>	
2	<b>circumstantial necessity</b>	have to  have got to	<i>As I live far, I have to get up at 6.</i> <i>Do you have to go now?</i> <i>I didn't have to stay there.</i>  <i>I haven't got to get up so early.</i> <i>Have you got to do it?</i>	in Russian: «вынужден», «пришлось»
3	the <b>absence of necessity</b>	have to  need	<i>You <b>don't have to</b> learn the rule.</i>  <i>You <b>needn't</b> learn the rule.</i> <i>You <b>don't need to</b> learn the rule.</i>	<b>need</b> can be both <b>modal</b> and <b>notional</b>
4	<b>command</b>	must be to	<i>You <b>must</b> leave the room at once!</i> <i>You <b>are to</b> leave the room at once!</i> <i>You <b>mustn't</b> leave the room now!</i>	
5	<b>urgent request</b>	must	<i>You <b>must</b> certainly see this film.</i> <i>You are sure to like it.</i>	
6	<b>supposition</b> bordering on <b>assurance</b>	must	<i>He <b>must</b> know it. It's his job.</i> <i>He <b>must</b> be at home. It's 11 o'clock.</i>	
7	<b>necessity</b> as a result of <b>plan, agreement, arrangement, time-table</b>	be to	<i>We <b>are to</b> meet the delegation at 7.</i> <i>They <b>were to</b> go there together.</i>	
8	<b>advice or mild obligation</b>	should ought to	<i>You <b>should</b> see a doctor.</i> <i>You <b>shouldn't</b> go there alone.</i> <i>We <b>ought to</b> help our elderly parents.</i>	in Russian: «следует»

### 11.4. MODAL NEGATIVES

You can't go there.

You may not go there.

You mustn't go there.

You needn't go there.

You don't have to go there. }

You shouldn't (oughtn't to) go there.

There are rules, laws or circumstances that don't allow it.

The speaker doesn't allow it.

The speaker forbid something absolutely.

It isn't necessary to do it.

The speaker doesn't advise you to do it.

## JAZZ CHANT

### Mamma Knows Best

You shouldn't do it that way  
You ought to do it this way  
*You ought to do it this way*  
*You ought to do it my way*  
You shouldn't wear it that way  
You ought to wear it this way  
*You ought to wear it this way*  
*You ought to wear it my way*  
You shouldn't go with them  
*You ought to go with us*

You shouldn't take the train  
*You ought to take the bus*  
You shouldn't wear that hat  
*You ought to cut your hair*  
You shouldn't get so fat  
*You ought to eat a pear*  
You shouldn't do it that way  
*You ought to do it this way*  
*You ought to do it this way*  
You ought to do it my way.

## EXERCISES

### Ex. 5. Ask all kinds of questions and make the sentences negative.

1. He must be in time for his classes. 2. He has to work for his living. 3. We have got to go now. 4. They should take a taxi. 5. She ought to follow a diet. 6. They are to arrive at the station at 7.

### Ex. 6. Insert *must* or *have to* in a suitable form.

1. Fortunately his wife could drive, so he .....drive all the way himself. 2. You ..... certainly see our new house. It's gorgeous! It's terrific! 3. She ..... leave home at 7 every morning last year. 4. The apples were rotten. We ..... throw them away. 5. You ..... come to work in time. 6. She felt ill and ..... leave early. 7. The bus was half empty yesterday, so I .....stand. 8. Tomorrow is my day off. I'm so glad I .....get up early. 9. His wife is away. He .....cook his own meals. 10. You can finish this work tomorrow, you ..... do everything today. 11. Jimmy, you .....do what Mummy says. 12. He sees very badly, so he .....wear glasses all the time. 13. The buses were all full; I .....get a taxi. 14. Tell her that she .....come at once. I insist. 15. Passengers ..... be in possession of a ticket. 16. She lives a long way from the shops, but fortunately she .....do the shopping every day. 17. I got lost and .....ask the policeman the way. 18. I'm going to bed earlier today as I ..... catch the five o'clock train tomorrow morning. 19. Her father doesn't allow her to stay out late. She .....be in by nine o'clock every evening.

### Ex. 7. Insert *mustn't* or *needn't*.

1. You .....ring the bell. I have a key. 2. You .....drink this: it's poison. 3. You ..... drive fast; there's a speed limit here. 4. You .....drive fast; we have plenty of time. 5. You ..... write to him; he will be here tomorrow. 6. Students .....have textbooks at their exams. 7. You ..... make a noise or you'll wake the baby. 8. You .....take your umbrellas. It isn't going to rain. 9. You ..... do the whole exercise. Ten sentences will be enough. 10. Maggie, you .....tell lies to your parents. 11. You ..... turn on the light. It's not dark in the room. 12. You .....strike a match. The room is full of gas. 13. We .....make any more sandwiches. There are plenty of them. 14. You .....put salt in his food. Salt is very bad for him. 15. Danny, you .....play with matches. It's dangerous. 16. You ..... clean the windows. The window-cleaner is coming today. 17. I'll lend you the money and you .....pay me back till next month. 18. We .....climb any higher. We can see very well from here. 19. You ..... smoke in a non-smoking compartment. 20. I .....go shopping today. We have all the necessary things. 21. – I'm afraid, you've given me too much. – Well, you .....eat it all. 22. Harry, you ..... interrupt when your father is speaking. 23. If you want the time, pick up the receiver and dial 100; you .....say anything. 24. You .....worry. I will stand by you.

**Ex. 8. Insert suitable modals.**

1. I .....sharpen the pencils if you give me a knife. 2. The boss told the secretary, "You .....go home now." 3. The teacher warned the class, "If you make a spelling mistake, you .....write the correction three times." 4. My nephew .....do his homework unless his father helps him. 5. If I lend you my car you .....promise to drive it carefully. 6. He .....understand English when it's spoken slowly and distinctly. 7. .... you tell me the right time? 8. Little children ..... go to bed early. 9. I .....write to him because I don't have his address. 10. You .....play football in the street. 11. The child is very ill. The doctor says he ..... be taken to the hospital at once. 12. A man .....help his parents when they become old. 13. There are neither buses nor taxis, so we .....go on foot. 14. Everybody .....know a foreign language. 15. We ..... live without food and water. We .....eat and drink. 16. You .....drive a car at night without lights. 17. Tom's father told him he .....ask silly questions. 18. Man .....live by bread alone. 19. You .....sit here in your wet clothes; you .....catch cold. 20. They .....do all the exercises at once; two will be enough. 21. You .....do whatever you like. 22. We ..... leave yet; we have plenty of time before the train starts. 23. Why .....I go there? 24. You .....say anything. Just nod your head and he will understand. 25. - .....I use your phone? - You .....ask for permission. You .....use it whenever you like. 26. You .....take a horse to the water but you .....make him drink. 27. The ice is quite thick. We .....walk on it.

**Ex. 9. Insert suitable modals.**

1. She was ill and..... pass her exam together with her group, so she..... take it later. 2. He entered this institute 5 years ago and he .....be a graduate now. 3. You ..... take extra classes if you want to catch up with the group. 4. You ..... translate the text in writing, you ..... do it orally. 5. The teacher said, "You ..... look through your notes before answering, but you ..... read from your notebooks when you answer." 6. - ..... you repeat this phrase after me? - ..... you pronounce it louder? 7. He..... swot so much, he ..... have a nervous breakdown. 8. The dean explained to me that I ..... re-sit my exam in History. 9. He ..... speak Spanish fluently two years ago, but he ..... do it now. 10. I ..... rely on my memory, it often fails me. 11. When he went to University he ..... repeat his last year because of his illness. But then he .....do very well in his graduation exams. 12. I'm afraid she ..... fail to pass her test in Phonetics, then she ..... take the rest of her exams. She ..... wait till the end of the examination period. 13. - ..... I see the deputy dean? - I'm afraid you ..... He's in a hurry. He ..... be at the conference at 2 o'clock. .... you come tomorrow? 14. You ..... look up every word in the dictionary, you ..... try to guess the meaning of some words from the context. 15. We ..... meet after classes today, we have arranged to revise for our exam together. That just ..... help.

**Ex. 10. Paraphrase using modals.**

1. It's necessary for Jimmy to practise his phonetics. 2. He is not allowed to repeat the year. He'll be obliged to leave college. 3. The monitor is obliged to tell us about the changes in our timetable. 4. Are we allowed to use a rough copy? - No, you are not. 5. I advise you not to cross the mistakes, but to underline them. 6. Perhaps, he will do well in his entrance exams and become a student. 7. It's not necessary for her to undertake a preliminary course. 8. He is able to understand spoken Italian, but he isn't able to speak it. 9. They have decided to stay after classes and make the corrections. 10. Don't rely on your seatmate's help, do the test yourself! 11. It's impossible for me to give you a good mark for your essay. 12. See this film in the original, I insist! It's just wonderful! 13. It isn't necessary to copy out this poem. You have it in your books. 14. Your duty is to do your homework thoroughly.

**Ex. 11. Complete the dialogues and act them out.**

1. – Must I .....?  
– No, you needn't. You may just .....
2. – May I .....?  
– No, you mustn't, because .....
3. – Can I help you?  
– Do, please.  
– What can I do for you?  
– Could you just .....?
4. – You might .....!  
– Oh! I'm so sorry! Shall I .....?
5. – What's up?  
– You see, I can't .....  
– I guess I should (ought to) .....
6. – Where is she? She must be ....., but she isn't.  
– Well, then she may be .....  
– What?!

**Ex. 12. Translate into English.**

1. Несмотря на шторм, он смог доплыть до берега. 2. Он сможет свободно говорить по-французски, если проведёт несколько лет в Париже. 3. – Можно мне задать вам вопрос? – Да, пожалуйста. 4. Не надо спешить, у нас ещё много времени. 5. – Можно я ещё немного посмотрю телевизор? – Нет, нельзя. Ты должен немедленно идти спать. Завтра тебе придётся встать очень рано. 6. Груши были плохие. Нам пришлось их выбросить. 7. Сейчас у нас нет времени обсуждать эти проблемы, придётся обсудить их завтра. 8. Все студенты должны сдать курсовые работы вовремя. 9. Мы должны были встретиться около университета, но он не пришёл. 10. Вы непременно должны посмотреть этот фильм. Он вам обязательно понравится. 11. Я вынужден был остаться дома, так как чувствовал себя очень плохо. 12. Эта группа туристов должна прибыть завтра. 13. Какую машину вы хотите купить? – Ещё не знаю. Возможно, я куплю Мерседес (Mercedes). 14. Я думаю, вы можете сделать эту работу сами. 15. Когда он был молодым, он мог пройти 20 километров без отдыха. 16. Вы умеете кататься на коньках? 17. Он сказал, что мы можем пользоваться его машиной, когда захотим. 18. Вам пришлось долго ждать автобуса? 19. Можно мне поговорить с вами? 20. Я должен был дать ответ до двух часов. 21. Вам следует больше работать над фонетикой. 22. Осторожно, здесь лёд. Вы можете поскользнуться. 23. Он говорил по-немецки и смог объяснить полицейскому, что мы заблудились. 24. – Что будем делать сегодня? – Мы могли бы пойти в кино. 25. Вам не следует подходить близко к этой собаке. Она может укусить.

**Ex. 13. Translate into English.**

1. Вы обязательно должны прийти к нам на новоселье. Запишите наш телефон в записную книжку. 2. Нельзя пропускать занятия без уважительной причины. Вы не сможете хорошо сдать экзамены. 3. Можно мне пропустить семинар по истории? Я плохо себя чувствую. – Хорошо, но вам придется принести справку от врача. 4. Изучение истории может быть увлекательным. 5. Вам не надо бояться говорить по-английски с иностранцами, это может помочь вам улучшить произношение и разговорные навыки. Вы сможете научиться лучше выражать свои мысли. 6. Он не сможет сдать зачет по фонетике, так как пропускает много занятий и работает урывками. Ему придется ходить на дополнительные занятия, чтобы избавиться от фонетических ошибок. 7. В прошлом году он не мог хорошо говорить по-французски, ему не хватало беглости. 8. Он, должно быть, делает много ошибок по невнимательности. Он такой рассеянный! 9. Можно я посмотрю это слово в словаре? – Не надо. Я могу сказать вам перевод. 10. Староста должен приносить журнал группы. Это его обязанность. 11. Вам следует тренировать произношение каждый день. 12. Где я могу найти заведующего кафедрой? – Он может быть в деканате. У них должно быть совещание в 10. Вы сможете поговорить с ним после него. 13. Мы должны встретиться в 6.45 у входа в кинотеатр. Фильм начинается в 7.

## §12. THE SEQUENCE OF TENSES

### 12.1. THE GENERAL RULE

1. The sequence of tenses is observed in a complex sentence with an object clause. If the verb in the main clause is in one of the **past** tenses - a **past** or **future in the past** must be used in the subordinate clause.

The action in the subordinate clause may be simultaneous with the action of the main clause, may happen before or after it.

subordinate clause main clause	simultaneous actions	actions happened before	actions happened after
He said that	- he lived in London - she was sleeping	- he had already left home - it had been raining for 2 days	- he would come soon - he would be sleeping at 6 - he would have done the job by 5 - he'd have been learning French for 5 years by May

### 2. Tense changes in reported speech

**Present** becomes **past**, **past** becomes **past perfect**, **future** becomes **future-in-the-past**.

direct speech	reported speech
Present Simple I do ...	Past Simple I did ...
Present Continuous He is doing ...	Past continuous He was doing ...
Present Perfect We have done ...	Past Perfect We had done ...
Past Simple They did ...	Past Perfect They had done ...
Past Continuous She was doing ...	Past Perfect Continuous She had been doing ...
Future Simple I shall do ...	Future-Simple-in-the-past I should do ...
Future Continuous He will be doing ...	Future-Continuous-in-the-past He would be doing ...
Future Perfect They will have done ...	Future-Perfect-in-the-past They would have done ...
Future Perfect Continuous You will have been doing ...	Future-Perfect-Continuous-in-the-past You would have been doing ...



### 3. Time and place changes

We change some adverbs of time and place and demonstrative pronouns in reported speech.

These changes depend on the context and are not always necessary, especially in everyday speech.

direct speech	reported speech
now	then / at that moment
today	that day
tonight	that night
last night	the night before / the previous night
yesterday	the day before / the previous day
the day before yesterday	two days before
ago	before
tomorrow	the next day/ the following day
the day after tomorrow	two days later
here	there
this	that
these	those

#### Notes

1. We may ignore the sequence of tenses if the object clause expresses a general truth.

*The teacher told his pupils that the Volga flows into the Caspian Sea.*

2. Past Simple after **since** usually remains unchanged.

*She said to me, 'I have been waiting for you since I came back'.*

*She told me she had been waiting for me since she came back'.*

#### EXERCISES

##### Ex. 1. Choose the correct word.

- I knew that he had come two hours (ago, before).
- "I want to go there (now, then)!" she cried.
- I'm sure they'll return (tomorrow, the next day).
- We agreed we would meet (tonight, that night).
- He said he had seen (these, those) strange men (last week, the previous week).
- He wondered what game they were playing (now, at that moment).
- "Are you coming to the party (today, that day)?" he wondered.
- "He was sure they'd be there (today, that day), but nobody came," she explained.
- We had no idea that Jack had arrived (the day before yesterday, two days before).
- He supposed she would phone (the day after tomorrow, two days later).
- I suppose he phoned me (yesterday, the previous day) but I wasn't at home.
- It hasn't snowed (this, that) month.
- "It happened long (ago, before)," he confessed.
- He was happy the show had been a success (last night, the previous night).
- She was positive (this, that) man had been following her all (these, those) days.
- He said he'd give us lunch (tomorrow, the next day) but we never saw him again.
- The headmaster asked what we were doing (here, there) and we ran away.
- He says he and his wife got acquainted (last year, the previous year).
- She said her friend was in the army (now, then).

##### Ex. 2. Translate into English. Use all the 16 tense forms of the Active Voice.

- Они чувствовали себя очень усталыми, потому что шли уже четыре часа.
- Не успела я посмотреть на часы, как они пробили двенадцать.
- Я стану совершеннолетним в следующем месяце.
- Он собирает игрушечные машинки. Он собрал уже сто.
- Мы жили в этом городе двадцать пять лет.
- Я испеку торт к их приходу.
- Кто-то стучится в дверь. Должно быть это гости.
- Мне было интересно, будет ли он всё ещё играть в теннис, когда я вернусь.
- Она ждет вас с двух часов.
- Когда мы ей позвонили, она делала варенье. Она сказала, что в половине седьмого будет уже целый час, как она варит его.
- Он предупредил нас, что придет домой позже, чем обычно.
- В пять часов будет уже три часа, как он спит.
- Он думал, что построит дом к следующему лету.
- Я уверен, что дождь все ещё будет идти, когда закончится фильм.

### Ex. 3. Translate into English. Use all the 16 tenses of the Active Voice.

1. Он пожаловался, что следующим летом будет уже год, как он строит свой коттедж. 2. Он успешно сдал все экзамены, так как много работал с начала года. 3. Когда они появились, мы уже накрывали праздничный стол. 4. Моя старшая сестра прекрасно готовит. Её последний торт был самый вкусный из всех, что я когда-нибудь пробовала. 5. Она боялась, что сломанный цветок скоро погибнет. 6. – Что ты здесь делаешь? – Слушаю диалог. Через пять минут будет уже полчаса, как я слушаю его, но не могу понять последнюю фразу. 7. Он надеялся, что догонит группу к следующей сессии. 8. Я учился играть на гитаре три года. 9. Не успели часы пробить десять, как мы услышали стук в дверь. 10. Она вымоет посуду к тому времени, когда начнется фильм. 11. Если ты зайдешь за мной так рано, я всё ещё буду собираться на вечеринку. 12. Он рисует с детства. Его следующая выставка состоится в мае. 13. Нам было интересно, что он будет делать в это время завтра. 14. Ты когда-нибудь был за границей?

## 12. 2. REPORTED SPEECH

### 1. Statements

We use object clauses for reported statements.

Some verbs most commonly used to introduce reported statements are:

**to say (smth) to smb, to tell smb, to add that, to admit, to agree, to answer that, to assure smb, to boast, to complain (to smb), to confess (to smb), to convince smb, to decide, to deny, to doubt, to exclaim that, to explain (to smb), to find out, to hope, to inform smb, to insist, to know, to learn, to mean, to notice, to promise, to remark that, to remind smb, to reply that, to suggest to smb, to suppose, to suspect, to think, to understand, to warn.**

1. He said, 'I will come soon.'                      *He explained he would come soon.*  
*He remarked that he would come soon.*

2. He said, 'I haven't heard about it.'                      *He confessed he hadn't heard about it.*  
*He denied that he had heard about it.*

### 2. Exclamatory sentences

We use object clauses for reported exclamations.

1. She said, 'What a nice day!'                      *She exclaimed that it was a nice day.*

2. He said, 'I'm so happy!'                      *He exclaimed that he was very happy.*

### 3. Questions

When a question becomes a subordinate clause in the reported speech it has a direct word order.

Some verbs most commonly used to introduce reported questions are:

**to ask (спрашивать), to want to know, to wonder, not know, to try to find out.**

1. We use **if** or **whether** to introduce a **yes/no, choice or tag-question**.

*He said, 'Will you come soon?' - 'Yes, I will.'*                      *He asked if I would come soon. I said I would.*

*She said, 'Does he play tennis or baseball?'*                      *She didn't know whether he played tennis or baseball.*

*I said, 'He is a student, isn't he?'*                      *I wondered if he was a student.*

2. We use **what, who, how, where, when**, etc., to introduce a **wh-question**.

*He said, 'When did you come?'*                      *He wanted to know when I had come.*

*She said, 'Where is my bag?'*                      *She wondered where her bag was.*

*I said, 'Hello! How are you?'*                      *I greeted her and asked how she was.*

#### 4. Requests and commands

We use the **infinitive** to introduce requests and commands.

Some verbs most commonly used to introduce requests and commands are:

**to ask, to advise, to beg, to command, to order, to persuade smb, to tell, to forbid, to warn, to want, to wish.**

*They said, 'Mike, help us, please'.*

*They asked Mike to help them. / They wanted Mike to help them.*

*The policeman said, 'Leave the room.'*

*The policeman told everybody to leave the room. He ordered them to leave the room.*

*I said, 'Don't go home alone.'*

*I advised her not to go home alone. / I forbade her to go home alone.*

*He said, 'Good-bye, kids! Have a nice day!'*

*He said good-bye to the kids and wished them to have a nice day.*

#### EXERCISES

##### Ex. 1. Change the statements into reported speech using different reporting verbs.

1. Jack said to his father, "I have lost my notebook." 2. Henry said to me, "I didn't throw stones at your dog." 3. Bob said to us, "Ted doesn't sit next to me in the classroom." 4. I told the policeman, "I saw the thief in the garden." 5. He said, "I have eaten nothing for two days." 6. Jim's father said to him, "You haven't cleaned your shoes." 7. Mary said, "I won't wear this dress at the party." 8. My mother said to me, "I feel very tired. I have been tidying the flat all day." 9. My friend said to me, "We have got plenty of time to do this work." 10. I said to my sister, "I'll have done my homework by 7 o'clock."

##### Ex. 2. Make up sentences from the questions. Begin with: *Do you know..., I wonder..., I don't know..., Do you have any idea..., Tell me ..., I can't remember ..., I want to know..., Please explain ...;*

1. Where has he gone? 2. When are you going to leave? 3. Have you been to Los Angeles? 4. What does this word mean? 5. Why is he so angry? 6. How can I get to the nearest cafe? 7. Where can I get the recipe of this pudding? 8. Is she having a birthday party next Saturday? 9. When did your cousin marry? 10. Who is your cousin married to? 11. Why did they leave so early? 12. Has she written to you? 13. What's the time? 14. How old is your brother? 15. Why didn't you come yesterday? 16. Who is this woman?

##### Ex. 3. Change the yes/no and choice questions into reported speech using different reporting verbs.

1. I asked the elderly lady, "Are you feeling bad?" 2. The hotel manager asked the visitors, "Did you sleep well?" 3. He asked his wife, "Is the baby asleep or awake?" 4. The teacher asked Jake, "Did you come to school by bus or on foot?" 5. We asked Susan, "Will you go to Hawaii for your honeymoon?" 6. A man stopped me in the street and asked, "Have you got a match?" 7. She asked us, "Have you ever been to Haiti?" 8. Anthony's father asked him, "Do you want to be an actor or a singer?" 9. The teacher asked the pupils, "Do you spell 'swimming' with one 'm' or double 'm'?" 10. I asked my seatmate, "Do you like punk rock?" 11. She asked her son, "Are you going anywhere tonight?"

##### Ex. 4. Change the wh-questions into reported speech using different reporting verbs.

1. I asked my friend, "How do you feel after the holidays?" 2. Margaret asked her nephew, "Where are you going for the weekend?" 3. Ann asked me, "What will you have for dessert?" 4. George's father asked him, "Who did you go to the club with?" 5. We asked Robbie, "How long have you been swimming?" 6. I saw a cloud of smoke and asked, "What is burning?" 7. Mary's mother asked her, "Where are my glasses?" 8. I asked her, "Who gave you this watch?" 9. She asked me, "Whose

umbrella is it?" 10. Mr Smith asked his wife, "How many guests have you invited to the party?" 11. The policeman asked me, "How much money was there in your wallet?" 12. Clare asked her niece, "Who did you visit at the hospital?" 13. She asked her husband, "When will you give up smoking?" 14. There was a crowd in the street. I asked a passer-by, "What's the matter?" 15. I asked him, "Who are you looking at?" 16. We asked him, "Why have you been away all this time?" 17. We came to the door and Father asked, "Where is the key?" 18. The teacher asked the students, "What does this word mean?" 19. They asked us, "Since when have you been learning English?" 20. Grandfather asked, "Who's there?"

**Ex. 5. Change the imperative sentences into reported speech using different reporting verbs.**

1. I said to Jack, "Please, give me your dictionary." 2. The bus-conductor said to the passengers, "Don't get off the bus while it is going." 3. Mary said to her brother, "Take the letter to the post office, please." 4. The teacher said to Jerry, "Collect the papers and give them to me." 5. The old man said to the girl, "Don't run across the street." 6. I said to my friend, "Meet me outside the cinema at six sharp." 7. Diane's mother said to her, "Don't go without your coat." 8. Ben said to the policeman, "Tell me the time, please." 9. The teacher said to the students, "Open your books at page forty-four." 10. The monitor said to Nick, "Clean the blackboard, please." 11. I said to my sister, "Help me with clearing the table, will you?" 12. They said to Jane, "Don't speak so loudly." 13. We said to Nelly, "Don't give up."

**Ex. 6. Change into reported speech.**

1. She said, "These children are playing here now." 2. We wondered, "Have you been swimming here all this time?" 3. He explained, "I came to this place an hour ago." 4. She warned me, "Don't come here tomorrow." 5. My brother promised, "I'll play chess with you tonight." 6. My fellow-student reminded me, "I did well in my entrance exams last summer." 7. He told us, "I'll go to the river today in the afternoon." 8. He advised his son, "Don't sit up late tonight." 9. The pupil wanted to know, "Can I answer these questions orally now?" 10. She wondered, "Where have you been this week?" 11. His girlfriend asked, "Did you go to the movies yesterday?" 12. He confessed, "I did my homework two hours ago." 13. The mother warned her son, "Don't switch on the TV set now." 14. She wondered, "How did you get to the university today?" 15. The teacher asked me, "What time is it now?" 16. He said to us, "My wife is coming tomorrow." 17. The father asked him, "Put this bag here, please." 18. She asked me, "Where were you last month?" 19. I assured them, "I met him at this bus stop the day before yesterday."

**Ex. 7. Change into reported speech using different reporting verbs.**

1. "We have a lift but very often it doesn't work," her relatives said to her. 2. "What else did you see there?" the policeman asked me. 3. "Don't forget your sandwiches, Ted," said his mother. 4. "We have moved into a new flat. It's much better than our old one," said Lucy to her aunt. 5. "Nothing grows in my garden. It never gets any sun," she said to us. 6. "Who put salt in my coffee?" my elder brother said. 7. "Please, don't say anything to make your father angry," said the mother to her son. 8. "Did they understand what you have explained to them?" he asked me. 9. "My wife will meet me outside the prison," said Fred to his roommate. 10. "Don't make a sound," said the detective to his assistant. 11. "Why don't you travel first class?" I asked him. 12. "When you don't like the film do you stay to the end or walk out in the middle?" my cousin asked me. 13. "Wait for me after classes," she said to her boyfriend. 14. "What is your new house like?" we asked Meg. 15. "I overslept and missed my train today," she said to her boss. 16. "Don't climb this tree in your new trousers, George," said the father. 17. "Say Joe, have you got a computer?" Sally asked. 18. "Will you go to see the football match on Friday or on Saturday, James?" Grandpa asked.

## 12. 3. TO SAY, TO TELL, TO SPEAK, TO TALK

**I. TO SAY** – говорить, сказать, высказать конкретную мысль.

1. we use it to introduce both direct and reported speech

*The dean said, "You will take your exam tomorrow."*

*He says he has been to seven countries.*

2. When we mention the person addressed, we use the preposition 'to'

*Did she say anything to him? The teacher said to his pupils, "Let's get down to business."*

3. We use 'to say' in fixed expressions:

**to say yes, to say no, to say good-bye (hello, good night) to smb.,**

**to say a word to smb., not to say a word; Say it again.**

**What did he say? What does the letter say?**

**It goes without saying. They say... , Everybody says ... .**

**II. TO TELL** – рассказывать, сообщать, сказать.

1. We always use it with an object which mentions the person addressed (кому?) and without any preposition if it stands right after the verb.

*We told her all about this strange meeting. He told the children about his adventures.*

2. We can use it without an object in fixed expressions:

**to tell a story, a tale, a joke; to tell the time, the news;**

**to tell the truth; to tell a lie;**

**The book tells about ...**

**III. TO SPEAK** –

1. (обладать способностью) говорить

*Can your little brother speak? His cousin speaks two foreign languages.*

2. разговаривать, беседовать, говорить с кем-то (**to, with**) о чём-либо (**about**) (usually in rather formal situations)

*I shall speak to the manager about it.*

3. произносить речь, выступать

*He spoke at the teachers' meeting yesterday.*

4. We use it in fixed expressions:

**Strictly speaking, it was a mistake.**

**Frankly speaking, I didn't tell you the truth.**

**Speak up.**

**IV. TO TALK** – разговаривать, беседовать (in informal situations)

*I like to talk to him. When they meet they can talk for hours.*

We use it in fixed expressions:

**to talk business; to talk shop (informal); to talk nonsense;**

**to talk politics, books, fashion, etc (informal);**

**to talk smth over; Stop talking.**

**EXERCISES. Fill in tell, say, speak or talk.**

### Ex. 1

1. What are you ..... about? 2. I suspect, he didn't ..... the truth yesterday. 3. They ..... good-bye and left the room. 4. Do you ..... French? 5. Frankly ..... , I don't like him. 6. Will you ..... me the time, please? 7. He never ..... at the meetings, he is too shy. 8. Stop ..... ! I can't hear what the lecturer is ..... . 9. Please, ..... us a story! 10. Ann never ..... a word about it. 11. After dinner they sat and ..... about old days. 12. He caught a cold and ..... in a hoarse voice. 13. I was too angry to ..... anything. 14. Strictly ..... , he isn't our relative at all. 15. You can't ..... me a lie. 16. It was a tale Jim liked to ..... 17. My little nephew can't ..... yet. 18. What does the telegram .....? 19. Don't ..... shop at the party.

### Ex. 2

1. .... up! I can't hear you. 2. Whenever they meet they always ..... music. 3. He came and ..... the news. 4. Now ..... me why you are so unhappy. 5. He ..... his son's future worried him. 6. This song ..... about love and death. 7. They ....., hot dogs are junk food. 8. I'm afraid I can't ..... well. 9. 'Don't ..... me lies', she ..... . 10. Will you ..... it in plain English, please? 11. It goes without ..... we should ..... it over with your relatives. 12. She ..... no to all my suggestions. 13. What does this notice ..... ? I'm not wearing my glasses. 14. He ..... with a Swedish accent. 15. She left the room without ..... a word. 16. I have nothing to ..... you. I have nothing to ..... at all. 17. Who ..... at the conference tomorrow? 18. Strictly ....., she isn't a beauty, but she's very charming. 19. ... what you know about it.

### Ex. 3

1. He can read and translate English but he can't ..... it. 2. The weather forecast ..... it will rain tomorrow. 3. .... to me about something, I'm so lonely. 4. Her Mom always ..... her not to ..... to strangers. 5. It goes without ..... you must be in time. 6. Please, let's not ..... shop at table. 7. Do all Englishmen ..... the same? 8. .... good night to everybody, honey, and go to bed. 9. When they meet they can ..... for hours. 10. The teacher ..... the lesson was over and ..... us to go home. 11. What did she ..... ? I didn't hear. 12. To ..... the truth, Mike drives me wild. 13. She ..... hello and went to her desk. 14. Don't ..... me anything about him. 15. Just go and ..... a word to her. 16. Stop ..... and ..... us the new rule. 17. Frankly ....., I'm mad about him. 18. Everybody ..... he ..... three languages. 19. He always ..... us interesting stories.

## 12. 4. ПРЕДЛАГАТЬ

### 1. OFFER –

предлагать *свои* услуги, *свою* помощь, *свои* вещи;

*He offered me a cup of coffee. He offered his help to me. He offered us to buy tickets to a movie.*

### 2. SUGGEST –

выдвигать *идею, план* (которые может реализовать *кто-то другой*).

*He suggested a walk to me. He suggested (their) buying tickets. He suggested to us (that) she should buy the tickets. He suggested she buy the tickets. He suggested she bought tickets.*

### 3. PROPOSE –

1. has the same meaning as SUGGEST (in official situations).

*The government proposed a vote of confidence.*

2. we use it in the meaning «делать предложение» and «сказать тост».

*He proposed to her, but she refused to marry him. He proposed a toast to the Queen.*

## EXERCISES

### Ex. 1. Complete the sentences with *offer* or *suggest*.

1. I .....we should choose some other club to go to. 2. He .....us his assistance. 3. They just ..... Mike a good job. 4. The doctor .....I keep to the bed. 5. Mother .....me some medicine. 6. My uncle..... to give me a lift in his car. 7. My brother .....changing the subject of the conversation. 8. Who ..... that stupid idea? 9. My seatmate .....to help me with grammar. 10. Liz .....a spare pen to me. 11. The monitor ..... a picnic at the weekend. 12. The salesman ..... some English books in the original. 13. His friend .....to go there instead of him. 14. Mother .....we have lunch. 15. She .....to bring the dessert. 16. He .....to pay the fare as I had no small change. 17. He .....they should go home. 18. The plan which you.....is very interesting. 19. No one .....him a seat. 20. The coach .....that we should run another mile and then have a short rest. 21. He .....his Granny to carry her heavy shopping bag home. 22. They .....a new method of cleaning roads. 23. The school doctor .....I see a dentist. 24. She refused to take anything he .....her. 25. He .....their taking part in the show. 26. She .....to me finding a new job. 27. He .....we present her with a new CD of her favourite group.

### Ex. 2. Translate into English using *offer* or *suggest*.

1. В начале зимних каникул он предложил всей группе поехать в Петербург. 2. Она плохо выглядела, и я предложила вызвать врача. 3. Он предложил мне билет на 10-часовой сеанс, но я отказался, так как это было слишком поздно. 4. Когда он закончил институт, ему предложили поехать работать на Дальний Восток. 5. Они предложили поехать за город. 6. Когда в троллейбус вошла пожилая женщина, он встал и предложил ей место. 7. Молодой человек предложил проводить её домой. 8. Я не знаю, что приготовить на обед, предложите что-нибудь. 9. Кто предложил это название для вашего кафе? 10. Так как погода сегодня хорошая, я предлагаю прогулку в парк. 11. Он предложил развести костер. 12. К чаю она предложила нам печенье, которое испекла сама.

### Ex. 3. Change into reported speech using *offer* or *suggest*.

**A.** 1. He said, 'Let's do the homework together.' 2. She said, 'Let's sing this song'. 3. She said, 'Let me sing the song.' 4. She said, 'Let Mary sing this song.' 5. The hostess said, 'Take another piece of cake'. 6. Mike said, 'Let's visit Jane, she is ill.' 7. Mike said, 'Let me visit Jane, I live near her place.' 8. The boss said, 'I have a very important task for you, James.' 9. She said, 'Why not go home? It's late.' 10. The mother said, 'Will you have another cup of tea, Mike?' 11. He said to me, 'Take my ticket to the cinema, I can't go'. 12. The guide said to the tourists, 'Let's visit the Hermitage now.' 13. I said to my mother, 'Let me help you about the house'. 14. My friend said, 'Why not take a taxi?' 15. The teacher said, 'Peter, recite a poem.' 16. He said to us, 'Let's rest a little'. 17. The students said, 'Why not go to this club tonight'. 18. She said to us, 'I'll stay at home and prepare dinner.' 19. The boy said to his friends, 'Let me make a fire.'

**B.** 1. Mike said, 'Let me help you with your English.' 2. He said, 'Let's go to Baskin Robins.' 3. She said, 'Let Peter play the guitar.' 4. Mary said, 'Let's translate this song into Russian.' 5. The hostess said to us, 'Have some more chicken.' 6. She said, 'Let's have some chicken for the second course.' 7. She said, 'Let me lay the table for dinner.' 8. The teacher said, 'I can explain this rule once again.' 9. He said to Jenny, 'Take a seat and have a rest.' 10. She said, 'Why not open the champagne, Jack?' 11. He said to me, 'I want to give you this CD. You are sure to like it' 12. The guide said to the tourists, 'Let's go sightseeing after lunch.' 13. He said to her, 'Let me carry this heavy bag.' 14. His friend said, 'Why not have a bite?' 15. The teacher said, 'Jim, take this piece of chalk and begin writing.' 16. He said to her, 'Let's dance to this beautiful music.' 17. The student said, 'I shall do this exercise orally.' 18. She said to us, 'Leave him alone.' 19. The boy said to Tom, 'Let me paint the fence.'

C. 1. "Have another helping of the salad," said the hostess to her guest. 2. "Let's sit down to table," said the hostess to her guests. 3. "Let Mary lay the table for dinner," said Father. 4. "Let them help with cooking," said Jane. 5. "Let me help you with cutting the carrots," said my sister to Mother. 6. "I'll pour out coffee and hand around the sandwiches," she said to them. 7. "Why not pick some strawberry in the garden?" I said to my cousin. 8. "Help yourself to some fish and chips, please," said my friend. 9. "Let's take a look at the menu first, honey," he said. 10. "Will you take our menu, please," said the waitress to us. 11. "Mom, let us clear the table ourselves," said the kids. 12. "Let Granny make some more pancakes," said Sue. 13. "Let him make breakfast himself," said Mrs Spears. 14. "What about dining out together?" said the boss to his secretary. 15. "Let me wash the dishes after supper," said the husband to his wife. 16. "I'll add some vegetable oil to this salad," said the cook. 17. "Next time you should put some pepper into this soup," she said. 18. "Children, let me treat you to some ice-cream," said Joan's aunt.

**Ex. 4. Change into reported speech using the verbs:**

*deny, convince, warn, agree, admit, remark, insist, add, complain, remind, promise, inform, decide, reassure.*

1. "I'll give you the lower marks if you cheat," said the teacher to his pupils. 2. "I have never met this man before," she said. 3. "The patient feels much better now," said the doctor to Alice. 4. "I'll bake a cherry pie tomorrow," said Mother, "and I'll need some help." 5. "My speech at the wedding was a bit too long," said my friend. 6. "I still think, that it was just a careless mistake," said the student. 7. "You are right, their son is very stubborn and naughty," said the nurse. 8. "Don't forget, you'll have to get up earlier than usual tomorrow," said Daddy to me. 9. "My parents don't understand me," said Brenda to her friend. 10. "I'll vacuum the carpets as soon as I have a bite," said Jimmy. 11. "You must help my son to catch up with the group," said Mrs Smith to the teacher. 12. "We caught the thief at the station," said Poirot to the police inspector. 13. "Jesus doesn't want me for a sunbeam," said Kurt Cobain.

**Ex. 5. Change into reported speech using the verbs:**

*to command, to admit, to beg, to forbid, to suggest, to remind, to wonder, to advise, to offer, to complain, to be afraid;*

1. "Don't forget to cool the vegetables before cutting them," said the cook to me. 2. "Men think of nothing but money," said Lady Hoggin to Poirot. 3. "Don't eat so much ice-cream, Tom, you may catch a cold," said Aunt Polly. 4. "You should add some oil to this salad," said Stella. 5. "Everybody, freeze!" said the hijacker. 6. "Have you met any nice girls, Elmer?" said Mrs Colt. 7. "Have another bar of chocolate, honey," said Russ to Janet. 8. "Let George peel the potatoes today," said Father. 9. "Money can't buy me love," said Paul McCartney. 10. "Mama, let your son grow," said James Hetfield.

**Ex. 6. Change into reported speech using the verbs:**

*to offer, to suggest, to invite, to complain, to warn, to deny, to teach, to remind, to admit, to add, to advise, to promise, to wonder;*

1. "Hardly had I begun reading my book when I bumped into a cow," said Mr Bumble. 2. "Help yourself to whiskey, Ben," said Jenny, "it's on the shelf." 3. "Margaret, Barbara, come into the garden!" said Mark. 4. "Let's dance under the stars, Martha," said Charles. 5. "I don't want clothes, money and a big house," said Fiona. 6. "I will be very careful," said Sir Hoggin to Poirot. 7. "I'll begin shooting if you move an inch," said the policeman to the robber. 8. "Don't forget, man doesn't live by bread alone," said the butcher to his customers. 9. "Since my baby left me I've been losing my mind," said David sadly. 10. "Be yourselves no matter what they say," said Sting to Englishmen in New York. 11. "Will the world end in fire or ice?" said Robert Frost. 12. "You should learn to forgive," says Jesus to us.



## §13. THE PASSIVE VOICE

	Simple (Indefinite)	Continuous	Perfect
	<b>facts, customary, repeated</b> actions	actions <b>unfinished</b> at a given moment	actions <b>completed</b> by a given moment
<b>Present</b>	The letter <b>is written</b> The letters <b>are written</b> I <b>am shown</b> the letters	The letter <b>is being written</b> They <b>are being written</b> I <b>am being shown</b> the letters	The letter <b>has been written</b> The letters <b>have been written</b>
<b>Past</b>	The letter <b>was written</b> The letters <b>were written</b>	The letter <b>was being written</b> They <b>were being written</b>	The letter <b>had been written</b>
<b>Future</b>	The letter <b>will be written</b> I <b>shall be shown</b> the letters		The letter <b>will have been written</b> I <b>shall have been shown</b> the letters
<b>Future in the Past</b>	The letter <b>would be written</b> I <b>should be shown</b> the letters		The letter <b>would have been written</b> I <b>should have been shown</b> the letters

### FORMATION

We use the auxiliary verb **be** and the **past participle** of the notional verb to form the passive voice.  
*The house **was built** last year. New houses **are built** every year. A new school **will be built** here.*

Sometimes in informal spoken English we can use **get** instead of **be** with verbs of action.  
*Our dog **got run** over by a car. There was a fight at school but nobody **got hurt**.*

### USE

1. We use the passive voice when it's **not important** or it's not known **who or what** did the action. Only the transitive verbs which take an object can be used in the passive.  
*His article **was published** yesterday. Paper **is made** from wood. She **will be met** at the station.*  
Intransitive verbs (*to arrive, to become etc*) can't be used in the passive.

2. We use **by** to say who did something or what caused the action and we use **with** for the instrument of the action.  
*The house was built **by** my father. The house was destroyed **by** fire. The letter was written **with** the pencil.*  
Compare: *The fire was put out **by** water. The fire was put out **with** water.*

4. We use the passive infinitive (*to be done*) after modals and some other verbs.  
*This work must **be done** in time. The music could still **be heard**. I want **to be left** alone.*

5. If the verb has two objects and it is possible to make two passive sentences, it is more usual to begin the passive sentence with the person.  
*They offered him this job yesterday. He was offered this job yesterday.  
(*This job was offered to him yesterday.*)*

6. The verbs which take prepositional objects can be used in the passive in English.  
Mind the place of the preposition.  
*He is often laughed **at**. He was much spoken **about**. Will the doctor be called **for**?*

7. The English passive sentence is not always translated into Russian in the passive voice.  
*I wasn't told about the meeting. Мне не сказали о собрании.*  
There are sentences in the active voice which have a passive meaning.  
*The door opened. These clothes wash well. Дверь открылась. Эта одежда хорошо стирается.*

## EXERCISES

### Ex. 1. Change into the passive.

A. 1. They often invite me to their parties. 2. People speak English in different parts of the world. 3. We use milk to make butter. 4. They build a lot of new houses in this district every year.

B. 1. They built this house in 1998. 2. Somebody locked the front door. 3. Someone broke my pen yesterday. 4. They punished the boy for that. 5. They finished their work in time.

C. 1. People will forget it very soon. 2. They will translate this book next year. 3. They will tell you when to come. 4. They will build a casino here. 5. Someone will ask him about it.

D. 1. Somebody has invited her to the party. 2. No one has seen him anywhere this week. 3. They have done all the exercises in writing. 4. They haven't yet told him about it.

E. 1. They had done everything before we came. 2. I thought they had already sent the letter. 3. Somebody had informed them of the news. 4. They told me they had seen you in Oxford Street.

F. 1. I will have finished the work by 5 o'clock. 2. They will have repaired the car by the next weekend. 3. They will have built the summer house by June.

G. 1. They are constructing some new metro lines now. 2. He is signing your papers at the moment. 3. Wait a minute. They are examining the last student now. 4. We couldn't use the lift, they were repairing it. 5. They were still typing the documents when I came.

H. 1. We were sure they would prepare everything. 2. He knew they would ask him that question. 3. We hoped the present would please her. 4. I had no idea if he would write the essay.

I. 1. He promised he would have drawn the portrait by Monday. 2. She said she would have done her homework by 8 o'clock. 3. He explained they would have do the job by next week.

### Ex. 2. Change into the passive.

1. Do they often use their swimming pool? 2. Whom do they want on the phone? 3. What kind of books do they sell here? 4. Did they do the task yesterday? 5. Did he write all the exercises at the lesson? 6. Will they translate this article today? 8. Will they discuss these problems tomorrow? 9. When will they meet her at the station? 10. Have you made the coffee yet? 11. Has he done his exercises yet? 12. What have they written? 13. What is she cooking for lunch? 14. Are they singing this song? 15. Is he asking any questions? 16. Had they eaten their breakfast by ten?

### Ex. 3. Change into the passive.

1. They gave Danny a snowboard for his birthday. 2. She offered us a cup of coffee. 3. He promised his son a new bicycle. 4. Somebody will show her the way to the railway station. 5. Nobody has sent him the invitation to the party. 6. Some people told them the sad news. 7. They always ask the students not to be late. 8. Someone taught him German at school. 9. They will present her with a box of chocolates. 10. They will have sent us the postcard by Christmas. 11. They have recommended Jane some new magazines. 12. Nobody is asking them any questions about it. 13. He offered me a chair. 14. We gave him all the money. 15. They have shown him the new flat.

### Ex. 4. Make up sentences in the passive.

1. ? has translated Shakespeare's poems into many languages. 2. ? will open the new university next October. 3. ? hasn't found the lost child yet. 4. The letters will be ready in five minutes. ? is typing them. 5. ? wants him on the phone. 6. You can't go into the room. ? is washing the floor. 7. When the doctor came to see the baby, ? was feeding him. 8. ? killed thirty people and ? injured sixty-five in that terrible railway accident. 9. ? can't learn a language in a few months

**Ex. 5. Make up sentences in the passive.**

*Model: their son – at the station – were (meet) – Mr and Mrs Brown*

*At the station Mr and Mrs Brown were met by their son.*

1. will be (teach) – Mr Green – this class – next year.
2. this film – at least a million people – has been (see).
3. prefer – a man – to be (teach) – most boys.
4. was (blow) off – my hat – the wind.
5. an earthquake – was almost (destroy) – the city.
6. her birthday – her friends – wasn't (forget).
7. children – their grandparents – are often (spoil).
8. a snake – have never been (bite) – I.
9. just a few students – was (do) – this difficult exercise.
10. were (shake) – all the houses in the street – the explosion.
11. the teacher – who behave badly – are sometimes (send) – the pupils – out of class.
12. this book – a very young author – was (write).
13. was badly (cut) – the broken glass – his face.
14. at two a.m. – the bell ringing – was (wake) up – the doctor.

**Ex. 6. Change into the passive. Mind the place of a preposition in a passive sentence.**

1. They laughed at him.
2. They spoke to each student.
3. They will look after the dog well.
4. They sent for the doctor immediately.
5. Everybody was listening to her attentively.
6. Everybody looked at her with interest.
7. Nobody took notice of the little boy.
8. They lost sight of the boat in the fog.
9. Why are they laughing at her?
10. I wonder whether they will listen to him.
11. Scientists often refer to his works.
12. No one has ever spoken to me in such a way.
13. If they send for you, don't refuse to come.
14. They will comment on your essays.
15. Why is he always finding fault with me?
16. When I came, everyone was looking for the cat.
17. They made a fool of him.
18. You can rely on him in any situation.
19. We must put an end to these fights.
20. We should pay attention to these exceptions.
21. He has thought of a very good plan.

**Ex. 7. Use the active or passive infinitive.**

1. We didn't want (see) him at the party.
2. Gerry didn't want (see).
3. She didn't allow her things (touch).
4. The work can (do) in two days.
5. They'll have (do) this job next week.
6. She tried to convince me that his invitation should (accept).
7. The books may (put) on this shelf.
8. She can't (take) care of the children, she's too busy.
9. The children must (look) after.
10. The dress must (make) by the birthday party.
11. Can it (do) today?
12. I didn't expect it (do) so soon.
13. He decided (start) as soon as possible.
14. The flower seems (break).
15. He wants (ask) you to dinner.
16. He wouldn't like (take) to hospital.
17. I don't want (misunderstand).

**Ex. 8. Translate into English.**

1. Когда обсуждался этот вопрос?
2. Такие вопросы часто обсуждаются на наших встречах.
3. Он надеялся, этот вопрос будет обсуждён до его прихода.
4. Какой вопрос сейчас обсуждается?
5. Этот вопрос уже обсудили.
6. Следующий вопрос будет обсуждаться завтра.
7. Когда я пришёл, этот вопрос ещё обсуждали.
8. Когда я ушёл, этот вопрос ещё не обсудили.
9. Этот вопрос обсудят к пяти часам.
10. Я был уверен, этот вопрос не будут обсуждать.

**Ex. 9. Translate into English using the passive infinitive**

1. Это письмо надо отправить немедленно.
2. Эта статья не может быть переведена так скоро.
3. Этот ответ должен быть найден.
4. Карандаш, кажется, сломан.
5. Его можно тоже пригласить.
6. Это правило нужно запомнить.
7. Цветы можно поставить на окно.
8. Он хочет, чтобы его послали за границу.
9. Ему должны сказать правду.
10. Я хочу, чтобы меня поняли.
11. Я не люблю, когда меня не понимают.
12. Это можно легко понять.
13. Это нужно объяснить всем.
14. Этот текст можно перевести за полчаса.
16. Эти вещи надо унести.

**Ex. 10. Translate into English using all the 10 tense forms of the passive.**

1. Мост через реку всё ещё строится. Говорят, его построят к началу мая.
2. Вчера он заснул в троллейбусе, и его высадили на последней остановке.
3. Вас встретят у входа в гостиницу и отвезут на вокзал.
4. Когда я подошёл к перекрёстку, повреждённую (damaged) машину уже убрали. В толпе обсуждались подробности (details) аварии.
5. Большинство студентов, не имеющих квартир в городе, обеспечиваются комнатами в общежитии.
6. Мы надеялись, что

дачу отремонтируют к каникулам. 7. Стол уже накрыт. Пора обедать. 8. Он боялся, что над ним будут смеяться, если он расскажет об этом случае. 9. Эти деньги нельзя тратить. Надо положить их в банк. 10. Если ты занят, можно отложить встречу.

**Ex. 11. Put the verb into the correct form, passive or active.**

1. The rooms (clean) every day. 2. The forests (cover) a great part of Siberia. 3. In winter the ground (cover) with snow. 4. He (meet) by his uncle at the airport tomorrow. 5. He (meet) his uncle at the airport tomorrow. 6. They already (invite) thirty people to the wedding. 7. They already (invite) to the wedding. 8. The roof of the house (repair) now. 9. Wonderful music (play) when we came in. 10. When we entered the pupils (describe) the picture. 11. We (begin) to do the exercises after all the new words (write) on the blackboard. 12. A lot of fish always (catch) in this lake. 13. He has already warned us that they (not make) the suit by the end of the week. 14. The lightning (strike) his house during yesterday's thunderstorm. 15. Fred (wake) up by the ringing of his alarm clock. 16. A loud noise (wake) him up in the middle of the night. 17. Look! The man (disappear)!

**Ex. 12. Translate into English.**

1. У него было неприятное чувство, что над ним смеются. 2. Он опоздал на урок, так как застрял в лифте и просидел там час. 3. Я не могу поехать на реку на велосипеде, его ремонтируют. 4. Ты видела его сегодня? Он изменился до неузнаваемости. 5. Этот магазин закрывается в восемь часов. У нас мало времени. 6. Лучше бы ты не дремал в автобусе, ты можешь проехать свою остановку. 7. В январе будет уже полгода, как он водит машину. 8. Ей обещали, что её брючный костюм будет сшит к концу месяца. 9. Он повернул за угол, но никого не увидел. Незнакомец исчез. 10. Движение на этой улочке меньше, чем на нашей. 11. Он сказал мне, что я сбился с пути, и предложил меня подвезти. 12. Вас просят к телефону.

**Ex. 13. Compare these two pictures. What has been done to the house?**



**Use the words:** the front door, the bathroom, the fence, the roof, central heating, the grass; paint, modernize, put in, retiler, cut, repair;

## §14. IRREGULAR VERBS

<b>Infinitive</b>	<b>Past Simple</b>	<b>Participle II</b>	<b>Translation</b>
1. be	was/were	been	быть, находиться
2. bear	bore	borne/born	приносить, выносить, родить
3. beat	beat	beaten	бить
4. become	became	become	становиться
5. begin	began	begun	начинать
6. bite	bit	bitten	кусать
7. blow	blew	blown	дуть
8. break	broke	broken	ломать, разбивать, прерывать
9. bring	brought	brought	приносить
10. build	built	built	строить
11. burn	burnt (burned)	burnt (burned)	жечь, гореть
12. burst	burst	burst	лопнуть
13. buy	bought	bought	покупать
14. cast *	cast	cast	бросать, отбрасывать
15. catch	caught	caught	ловить, поймать
16. choose	chose	chosen	выбирать
17. come	came	come	приходить, приезжать
18. cost	cost	cost	стоять
19. cut	cut	cut	резать
20. deal	dealt	dealt	раздавать, рассматривать, иметь дело
21. dig	dug	dug	копать
22. do	did	done	делать
23. draw	drew	drawn	рисовать, тащить
24. dream	dreamt (dreamed)	dreamt (dreamed)	мечтать, видеть сны
25. drink	drank	drunk	пить
26. drive	drove	driven	водить, ехать, гнать
27. eat	ate	eaten	есть
28. fall	fell	fallen	падать
29. feed	fed	fed	кормить
30. feel	felt	felt	чувствовать
31. fight	fought	fought	драться, сражаться
32. find	found	found	находить
33. fly	flew	flown	летать
34. forbid	forbade	forbidden	запрещать
35. forget	forgot	forgotten	забывать
36. forgive	forgave	forgiven	прощать
37. freeze	froze	frozen	замерзать
38. get	got	got	получать, добираться, становиться
39. give	gave	given	давать
40. go	went	gone	идти
41. grow	grew	grown	расти
42. hang	hung (hanged)	hung (hanged)	висеть, вешать (казнить)
43. have	had	had	иметь
44. hear	heard	heard	слышать
45. hide	hid	hidden	прятать
46. hit	hit	hit	ударять, попадать
47. hold	held	held	держать
48. hurt	hurt	hurt	причинять вред, боль
49. keep	kept	kept	хранить
50. know	knew	known	знать
51. lay	laid	laid	класть

<b>Infinitive</b>	<b>Past Simple</b>	<b>Participle II</b>	<b>Translation</b>
52. lead	led	led	вести
53. learn	learnt (learned)	learnt (learned)	учить (что-то)
54. leave	left	left	оставлять, покидать, уезжать
55. lend	lent	lent	давать в долг
56. let	let	let	позволять, пускать
57. lie	lay	lain	лежать
58. light	lit (lighted)	lit (lighted)	освещать, зажигать
59. lose	lost	lost	терять, проигрывать
60. make	made	made	делать
61. mean	meant	meant	значить, иметь ввиду
62. meet	met	met	встречать, знакомиться
63. pay	paid	paid	платить
64. put	put	put	класть, ставить
65. read	read	read	читать
66. ride	rode	ridden	ездить, ехать верхом
67. ring	rang	rung	звонить, звенеть
68. rise	rose	risen	подниматься, вставать
69. run	ran	run	бежать
70. say	said	said	говорить, сказать
71. see	saw	seen	видеть
72. sell	sold	sold	продавать
73. send	sent	sent	посылать
74. set	set	set	устанавливать
75. shake	shook	shaken	трясти
76. shine	shone	shone	светить, сиять
77. shoot	shot	shot	стрелять
78. show	showed	shown	показывать
79. shut	shut	shut	закрывать
80. shrink	shrank	shrunk	уменьшать(ся), садиться (о материи)
81. sing	sang	sung	петь
82. sink	sank	sunk	опускаться, тонуть
83. sit	sat	sat	сидеть
84. sleep	slept	slept	спать
85. slide	slid	slid	скользить
86. smell	smelt	smelt	пахнуть, нюхать
87. speak	spoke	spoken	говорить
88. spend	spent	spent	тратить
89. spread	spread	spread	распространять(ся)
90. stand	stood	stood	стоять
91. steal	stole	stolen	красть
92. strike	struck	struck	ударить
93. swear	swore	sworn	клясться, проклинать, ругаться
94. sweep	swept	swept	мести
95. swim	swam	swum	плавать
96. take	took	taken	брать
97. teach	taught	taught	учить(кого-то), преподавать
98. tear	tore	torn	рвать
99. tell	told	told	рассказывать, сказать
100. think	thought	thought	думать
101. throw	threw	thrown	бросать
102. understand	understood	understood	понимать
103. wake	woke (waked)	woken (waked)	просыпаться, будить

104. wear	wore	worn	носить (на себе)
105. weep	wept	wept	плакать
106. win	won	won	выигрывать, побеждать
107. write	wrote	written	писать

**cast** \* can be part of compound verbs like *broadcast*, *forecast*, etc, which don't change their form either: *The weathermen forecast some rain yesterday. This song was broadcast last month.*

**NOTE.** Mind the difference:

feel – felt – felt – feeling – чувствовать  
 fall – fell – fallen – falling – падать  
 fill – filled – filled – filling – заполнять

lay – laid – laid – laying – положить  
 lie – lay – lain – lying – лежать  
 lie – lied – lied – lying – лгать

fly – flew – flown – flying – летать  
 flow – flowed – flowed – flowing – течь

rise – rose – risen – rising – подниматься  
 raise – raised – raised – raising – поднимать

leave – left – left – leaving – оставлять  
 live – lived – lived – living – жить

strike – struck – struck – striking – ударить  
 stroke – stroked – stroked – stroking – ласкать  
 (a strike – забастовка; a stroke – удар)

## EXERCISES

### Ex. 1. Translate into English.

#### 1. be

- 1) Где ты был вчера? 2) Где ты был всё это время? 3) Где он? Где они? Где я?
- 4) Где ты будешь завтра? 5) Быть или не быть?

#### 2. bear

- 1) Она родила ему сына. 2) Он родился в прошлом году. 3) Я не могу выносить такой шум.
- 4) Теперь они несут потери. (the losses)

#### 3. beat

- 1) Смотри! Они выбивают ковры. 2) Они выбили ковры. 3) Они выбивали ковры вчера.
- 4) Они выбивают их каждый месяц.

#### 4. become

- 1) Он стал врачом. 2) Она стала бабушкой вчера. 3) Он становится рассеянным.
- 4) Он краснеет каждый раз, когда видит её.

#### 5. begin

- 1) Уроки начинаются в половине девятого. 2) Урок уже начался. 3) Он начался в восемь.
- 4) Поторопись! Урок начинается.

#### 6. bite

- 1) Наша собака кого-то кусает. 2) Эта собака не кусается. 3) Эта собака его укусила.
- 4) Эта собака укусила его час назад.

#### 7. blow

- 1) Здесь часто дуют ветры. 2) Сегодня дует сильный ветер. 3) Сегодня не было сильного ветра. 4) Вчера дул сильный ветер.

#### 8. break

- 1) Кто разбил окно? 2) Кто разбил окно вчера? 3) Послушай, кто-то бьёт окна в доме.
- 4) Он разбивает сердца девушкам.

#### 9. bring

- 1) Он приносит мне цветы. 2) Завтра он приносит нам билеты. 4) Посмотри, что он принёс.
- 5) Он принёс мне книгу вчера.

**10. build**

- 1) Они строят дачу.
- 2) Они ещё не построили дачу.
- 3) Они построили дачу два года назад.
- 4) Они строят дачи.

**11. burn**

- 1) Она сожгла все его письма.
- 2) Что-то горит.
- 3) Они жгут листья в саду каждую осень.
- 4) Этот дом сгорел очень давно.

**12. burst**

- 1) Посмотри! Он прямо лопаётся от гордости. (of pride)
- 2) Шарик (balloon) лопнул.
- 3) Такие шарики не лопаются.
- 4) Шарик лопнул вчера.

**13. buy**

- 1) Мы покупаем здесь хлеб.
- 2) Что ты купил?
- 3) Он давно купил машину.
- 4) Где он? – Он что-то покупает в супермаркете.

**14. cast**

- 1) Он не отбрасывает тени.
- 2) Что они передают по радио?
- 3) Они уже передавали эту песню.
- 4) Он бросил взгляд на них и вышел. (cast a glance at)

**15. catch**

- 1) Она простудилась.
- 2) Она простудилась на прошлой неделе.
- 3) Она часто простужается.
- 4) Полиция всё ещё ловит его?

**Ex. 2. Translate into English.****16. choose**

- 1) Ты уже выбрал книгу?
- 2) Он всё ещё выбирает.
- 3) Он давно выбрал имя своему сыну.
- 4) Он всегда выбирает лучшее.

**17. come**

- 1) Вчера он пришёл поздно.
- 2) Он часто приходит поздно.
- 3) Посмотри! Он уже пришёл.
- 5) Джим! Где ты? – Иду!

**18. cost**

- 1) Сколько это стоит?
- 2) Это стоило меньше в прошлом году.
- 3) Этот дом никогда столько не стоил.
- 4) Это стоит денег.

**19. cut**

- 1) Он порезал палец.
- 2) Где она? – Она режет хлеб.
- 3) Он сильно порезал руку на прошлой неделе.
- 4) Этот нож режет всё.

**20. deal**

- 1) Я ещё не имел с ними дело.
- 2) Он никогда не раздает (out) комплименты
- 3) В детстве она обращалась с нами справедливо (fairly).
- 4) Сейчас они рассматривают жалобы. (with complaints)

**21. dig**

- 1) Зачем ты копаешь здесь?
- 2) Он перекопал весь сад.
- 3) Он копает сад каждую весну.
- 4) В субботу он копал эти клумбы.

**22. do**

- 1) Я сделал уроки.
- 2) Что ты делаешь сегодня вечером?
- 3) Он занимается спортом каждый день.
- 4) Он сделал это вчера.

**23. draw**

- 1) Он хорошо рисует.
- 2) В юности он хорошо рисовал.
- 3) Посмотри! Он нарисовал мой портрет.
- 4) Что ты рисуешь?

**24. dream**

- 1) Вечно ты мечтаешь.
- 2) Я никогда не мечтала об этом.
- 3) Он мечтал об этом в детстве.
- 4) Она мечтает стать актрисой.

**25. drink**

- 1) Я не пью тёплое молоко.
- 2) Кто пил кофе за завтраком?
- 3) Что это он пьёт?
- 4) Он никогда не пил французское вино.

**26. drive**

- 1) Ты слишком быстро едешь.
- 2) Он хорошо водит машину?
- 3) Он уже водил грузовик?
- 4) В молодости он водил такси.



**27. eat**

1) Она мало ест. 2) Посмотри, как он ест! 3) Я всё съел. Спасибо. 4) Они съели все фрукты вчера. 5) Он не ест мясо.

**28. fall**

1) Спасите! Я падаю! 2) Посмотри, кто-то упал. 3) Он часто падает на этих коньках. 4) Вчера он упал и сломал ногу.

**29. feed**

1) Ты покормил кошку? 2) Мы кормим кошку дважды в день. 3) Я кормила её утром. 4) Смотри! Он кормит нашу кошку.

**30. feel**

1) Как ты себя чувствуешь сейчас? 2) Он чувствовал себя плохо вчера. 3) Я никогда не чувствовал себя так хорошо.

**Ex. 3. Translate into English.****31. fight**

1) С кем ты подрался? 2) Иногда он дерётся с ними. 3) Он дрался с ними вчера. 4) Посмотри! Он с кем-то дерётся!

**32. find**

1) Я нахожу эту книгу скучной. 2) Я нашёл ключ. 3) Он давно нашёл работу. 4) Вечно он ко мне придирается! (find fault with)

**33. fly**

1) Эти птицы улетели на юг. 2) Смотри! Птицы летят. 3) Эти птицы улетают на юг каждую осень. 4) Эти птицы давно улетели.

**34. forbid**

1) Они запрещают ей приходить поздно. 2) Кто запретил тебе приходить к нам? 3) Вчера он запретил ей выходить. 4) Вечно ты все нам запрещаешь!

**35. forget**

1) Я всегда забываю погасить свет. 2) Я забыл позвонить ему вчера. 3) Я забыла принести тебе книгу.

**36. forgive**

1) Прости меня, пожалуйста. 2) Она простила его? 3) Он давно простил вас. 4) Я прощаю тебя. 5) Он никогда не простит её.

**37. freeze**

1) Замри! 2) Посмотри, она замерзает. 3) Озеро замёрзло. 4) Оно замерзает каждую зиму. 5) Река замёрзла месяц назад.

**38. get**

1) Стало темно. 2) Становится поздно. 3) В декабре рано темнеет. 4) В пять часов уже стемнело. 5) Она получила письмо.

**39. give**

1) Кто дал тебе мой адрес? 2) Он дал мне слово вчера. 3) Он часто даёт нам книги. 4) Вечно он даёт тебе дурацкие советы!

**40. go**

1) Куда ты идёшь? 2) Он уже ушёл. 3) Он поехал на вокзал в три часа. 4) Он ходит в этот парк каждое воскресенье. 5) Уходи!

**41. grow**

1) Что ты выращиваешь в саду? 2) Он всё ещё растёт. 3) Он уже вырос. 4) Она выращивала розы много лет назад.

**42. hang**

1) Его картины висят в Британском музее. 2) Кто повесил эту картину? 3) Я повесил её вчера. 4) Что ты вешаешь на стену?

**43. have**

1) Мы обедаем в два. 2) Сейчас он принимает ванну. 3) Ты уже позавтракал? 4) Летом он отдыхал на море.

**44. hear**

- 1) Ты слышал крик? 2) Я слышал, он уже приехал. 3) Я вас не слышу.  
4) Я услышал это вчера. 5) Он хорошо слышит?

**45. hide**

- 1) Что ты спрячешь за спиной? 2) Он спрятал сокровища (treasure) на острове в 1783.  
3) Он прячет деньги здесь. 4) Ты спрятался?

**Ex. 4. Translate into English.****46. hit**

- 1) Он всегда попадает в цель (target). 2) Она ударила грабителя (robber) и убежала. 3) Он попал в цель? 4) Смотри! Она строит ему глазки! (hit on smb)? 5) Убирайся! (the road)

**47. hold**

- 1) Он никогда не держал в руках оружие. (gun) 2) Смотри! Она держит что-то в руке.  
3) Она всегда держит сумку в руках. 4) Он держал её за руку вчера. (by the hand)

**48. hurt**

- 1) Твои слова причиняют мне боль. 2) Он всех обижает. 3) Он обидел её вчера.  
4) Он тебя обижал когда-нибудь?

**49. keep**

- 1) Что ты хранишь здесь? 2) Они держали собаку год назад. 3) Он всегда держал слово.  
4) Что ты скрываешь от меня?

**50. know**

- 1) Он не знает вас. 2) Я знаю его с детства. 3) Я знал об этом много лет назад.  
4) Теперь она тоже это знает. 5) Вы знаете её?

**51. lay**

- 1) Сейчас она накрывает на стол. 2) Он накрыл на стол? 3) Она накрывала на стол вчера.  
4) Она всегда накрывает на стол.

**52. lead**

- 1) Пять лет назад он вёл тихую жизнь. 2) Он никогда не вёл такую жизнь. 3) Она ведёт тихую жизнь.  
4) Завтра он показывает нам дорогу.

**53. learn**

- 1) Он учит английский в школе. 2) Она никогда не учила языки. 3) Я выучил текст вчера.  
4) Он всё ещё учит слова.

**54. leave**

- 1) Она уезжает завтра. 2) Он уехал на прошлой неделе. 3) Он уезжает из города каждое лето.  
4) Поезд уже ушёл?

**55. lend**

- 1) Он даёт деньги займы. 2) Он уже дал мне денег займы. 3) Вчера он дал мне денег займы.  
4) Завтра он даёт нам деньги займы.

**56. let**

- 1) Он разрешил нам прийти вчера. 2) Он никогда не разрешал нам играть здесь.  
3) Он разрешает нам брать его машину.

**57. lie**

- 1) Что лежит на столе? 2) Эти книги всегда лежат на столе. 3) Вчера они лежали здесь.  
4) Они никогда здесь не лежали.

**58. light**

- 1) Вечером мы зажгли свечи. 2) Мы только что зажгли свечи. 3) Мы зажигаем свечи.  
4) Мы зажигаем свечи каждый вечер.

**59. lose**

- 1) Я потеряла ключи. 2) Я потеряла ключи вчера. 3) Вечно я всё теряю! 4) Иногда он теряет терпение. 5) Он потерял голову.

**60. make**

- 1) Ты делаешь ошибку. 2) Ты сделал ошибку в тесте позавчера. 3) Иногда он делает ошибки.  
4) Он уже сделал ошибку.

### Ex. 5. Translate into English.

#### 61. mean

- 1) Что ты имеешь в виду? 2) Он имел это в виду, когда говорил с тобой.
- 3) Они никогда не имели это в виду.

#### 62. meet

- 1) Когда ты встречаешься с ним? 2) Он встречает её каждый день. 3) Они встретились в субботу. 4) Они ещё не встретились.

#### 63. pay

- 1) Я заплатила за квартиру неделю назад. 2) Мы платим каждый месяц. 3) Он уже заплатил?
- 4) Он платит сейчас.

#### 64. put

- 1) Ты сложил книги в сумку? 2) Он всегда кладёт сахар в кофе. 3) Он давно положил деньги в банк. 4) Что ты кладёшь в карман?

#### 65. read

- 1) Она много читает. 2) Я не читала эту книгу. 3) Что ты читаешь сейчас?
- 4) Он читал такие книги в детстве.

#### 66. ride

- 1) Он ездил на велосипеде летом. 2) Он не ездит верхом. 3) Кто это едет верхом?
- 4) Она никогда не ездила на мотоцикле.

#### 67. ring

- 1) Кто-то звонит в дверь (to ring the doorbell). 2) Телефон звонил? 3) Твои друзья звонят каждые 5 минут. 4) Тебе кто-то звонил вчера.

#### 68. rise

- 1) Солнце встало. 2) Посмотри! Солнце встаёт. 3) Солнце встаёт на востоке.
- 4) Солнце давно встало, а ты всё ещё спишь.

#### 69. run

- 1) Он быстро бегает. 2) Кто бегал здесь вчера? 3) Куда ты бежишь? 4) Он когда-нибудь бегал на соревнованиях? (at competitions)

#### 70. say

- 1) Что ты сказал? 2) Он этого не говорил. 3) Что он говорит? 4) Он всегда говорит спасибо.
- 5) Он давно это сказал.

#### 71. see

- 1) Ты видишь его вон там? 2) Я не видела его сто лет. 3) Я вижу её каждый день.
- 4) Я видела их вместе два дня назад.

#### 72. sell

- 1) Они продают книги. 2) Какие книги они сейчас продают? 3) Они уже продали эту книгу.
- 4) Они её продали вчера.

#### 73. send

- 1) Ты вызвал (send for) врача? 2) Они послали ему письмо в среду. 3) Они редко шлют нам письма. 4) Завтра я посылаю ему письмо.

#### 74. set

- 1) Он ставит часы по радио. 2) Они уже назначили дату? 3) Они накрывают на стол.
- 4) Вчера они назначили дату свадьбы.

#### 75. shake

- 1) Почему ты трясешься? 2) Он пожал ему руку и ушёл. 3) Он всегда трясётся на экзаменах.
- 4) Он уже пожал им руки?

### Ex. 6. Translate into English.

#### 76. shine

- 1) Солнце светит сегодня. 2) Солнце светит ярко летом. 3) Вчера солнце светило тоже.
- 4) Сегодня не было солнца.

#### 77. shoot

- 1) Он стрелял вчера. 2) Кто стреляет в лесу? 3) Он плохо стреляет. 4) Кто ещё не стрелял?

**78. show**

- 1) Он редко показывает эти фото. 2) Что он показывает гостям? 3) Он уже показал нам дом.
- 4) Он показал им сад весной.

**79. shut**

- 1) Кто закрыл дверь? 2) Кто закрыл утром дверь? 3) Кто закрывает дверь по вечерам?
- 4) Поторопись! Я закрываю дверь.

**80. shrink**

- 1) Смотри! Рубашка села после стирки. 2) Шерстяные вещи садятся от горячей воды.
- 3) Джемпер сел после стирки вчера.

**81. sing**

- 1) Она хорошо поёт. 2) Кто это поёт? 3) На её дне рождения мы пели наши любимые песни.
- 4) Мы ещё не пели эту песню.

**82. sink**

- 1) Смотри! Корабль утонул. 2) *Титаник* утонул много лет назад. 3) Такие корабли не тонут.
- 4) Спасите! Тону!

**83. sit**

- 1) Кто это сидит в углу? 2) Кто сидел здесь в прошлый раз? 3) Кто сидит за этой партой?
- 4) Я здесь никогда не сидел.

**84. sleep**

- 1) Он ещё спит. 2) Он плохо спал ночью. 3) Он ещё не спал сегодня. 4) Вчера он спал три часа. 5) Он часто спит после обеда.

**85. slide**

- 1) Кто там катается на льду? 2) Они скатились с горки (down the hill)?
- 3) Они катались здесь неделю назад. 4) Они катаются здесь зимой.

**86. smell**

- 1) Вкусно пахнет. 2) Что за цветы ты нюхаешь? 3) Эти цветы пахли сильнее вчера.
- 4) Я никогда не нюхал эти цветы.

**87. speak**

- 1) Он говорит на трёх языках. 2) О чём он говорит сейчас? 3) Он уже говорил с ними?
- 4) Они разговаривали вчера.

**88. spend**

- 1) Сколько денег ты потратил? 2) Она тратит много денег. 3) Она давно всё истратила.
- 4) Она уже тратит эти деньги.

**89. spread**

- 1) Эта новость быстро распространяется. 2) Она распространяет сплетни (gossip).
- 3) Орёл расправил крылья (wings) и улетел. 4) Он уже намазал масло на хлеб.

**90. stand**

- 1) Что стоит в твоей комнате? 2) Кто это стоит за углом? 3) Он стоял здесь утром.
- 4) Телевизор здесь никогда не стоял.

**Ex. 7. Translate into English.****91. steal**

- 1) Кто-то украл эти деньги. 2) Он ворует деньги. 3) Кто-то украл эти деньги в четверг.
- 4) Смотри! Он крадёт её деньги!

**92. strike**

- 1) Эти часы бьют каждый час. 2) Часы давно пробили полночь. 3) Часы бьют полночь.
- 4) Часы уже пробили полночь.

**93. swear**

- 1) Смотри! Он клянется говорить правду. 2) В суде (in the court) он клялся на Библии.
- 5) Он много ругается. 6) Он никогда не клялся говорить правду.

**94. sweep**

- 1) Кто обычно подметает двор? 2) Он только что подмёл пол. 3) Она уже подметает пол.
- 4) Он подметал двор утром.

**95. swim**

1) Он плывёт сюда. 2) Он плохо плавает. 3) Он плавал здесь летом. 4) Он здесь не плавал.

**96. take**

1) Кто взял мой словарь? 2) Я взял эту книгу в библиотеке вчера.  
3) Он ведёт их в театр завтра. 4) Он берёт здесь книги.

**97. teach**

1) Она преподавала историю в прошлом году. 2) Он преподаёт языки. 3) Она нас не учила.  
4) Он сейчас не преподаёт.

**98. tear**

1) Она рвёт его письма, не читая. (without reading) 2) Он порвал её письмо.  
3) Он прочитал письмо и порвал его. 4) Чьё письмо ты рвёшь?

**99. tell**

1) Он давно сказал нам об этом. 2) Он что-то говорит им. 3) Он часто рассказывает сказки.  
(tales) 4) Он уже всё рассказал нам.

**100. think**

1) О чём ты думаешь? 2) Он не думает о ней. 3) Я никогда не думал об этом.  
4) Я думал об этом в прошлом году.

**101. throw**

1) Смотри! Он забросил мяч в корзину. (basket) 2) Он хорошо бросает мяч.  
3) Он выбросил мусор вчера. 4) Что он бросает из окна?

**102. understand**

1) Я давно это понял. 2) Сейчас я не понимаю тебя. 3) Ты всегда меня понимал.

**103. wake**

1) Он ещё не проснулся. 2) Он проснулся в 6. 3) Он просыпается. 4) Он просыпается рано.

**104. wear**

1) Она не носит джинсы. 2) Она носила это пальто зимой. 3) Что на ней надето сегодня?  
4) Он никогда не носил очки.

**105. weep**

1) Кто-то там плачет. 2) Он не оплакивает (for) её. 3) Кто-то плакал ночью.  
4) Она никогда не оплакивала (over) свою судьбу (fate).

**106. win**

1) Кто выиграл? 2) Кто выиграл вчера? 3) Кто выигрывает? 4) Они часто выигрывают.

**107. write**

1) Он плохо пишет. 2) Я уже всё написал. 3) Они писали это вчера. 4) Он всё ещё пишет.

**Ex. 8. Choose the correct item.**

1. He (felt, fell, filled, fall, fallen) down on the ice and (broke, broked, broke, broken) his leg.
2. Do you (feel, fell, fall, fill) better today?
3. I'll have to (buy, bye, by) a new exercise book, as I've (felt, filled, fallen) the old one.
4. He (fell, felt, filled, fallen) in love with her at first sight.
5. I'm going to (feel, fall, fell, fill, full) my car with petrol at the nearest station.
6. Being far away from home, Mary (feel, felt, fell, fills) homesick at times.
7. Where is Mom? – She is (lying, laying, laid, lain) the table in the dining room.
8. She (laid, lay, lain, lied) the table and (laid, lay, lain, lied) down on the sofa to have a short rest.
9. He has never (laid, lain, lied, lay) to us so far.
10. A thick carpet (lay, lays, lied, lie, laid) in the middle of the room.
11. Why are your clothes (laying, lieing, lying, lain) on the floor, Tony?
12. Where does John (live, leaved, lives)?
13. The train has already (left, lived, leaved) the platform, hasn't it?
14. Who (lived, leave, left) the umbrella in the hall?
15. Who (lives, leaves, leave) in this house?
16. The (leafs, leaves, lives) on the trees turn yellow and red in autumn.

**Ex. 9. Choose the correct item.**

1. The birds from the wood (flew, flow, flowed, flown) to the warm countries long ago.
2. Spread your wings and (flow, fly, flown, flew) away.
3. The cage is empty. The bird has (flied, flowed, flown, flew) away.
4. The sun (rise, rises, roses, raises, raise, raised) in the East.
5. He (raised, rose, rised) to his feet and went out of the room.
6. He (raised, rised, rose) his arm and the car stopped.
7. Don't (rise, raise) this chest. It's too heavy.
8. The plane (rised, raised, rose, rosed) higher and higher and disappeared in the distance.
9. This year the prices have (raised, risen, rosen, rised) by 13 %.
10. He (fell, fall, fallen) and (struck, strucked, striked, stroke) his head against the edge of the table.  
The (strike, stroke, struck) was very bad.
11. This tower clock (strucks, strikes, strokes) every half an hour.
12. He (striked, stroked, stroke, struck) the dog and it wagged its tail happily.
13. The railway workers went on (strike, stroke, struck) on Monday.

**§15. CORRECTION WORK****Topic Home****CORRECTION WORK 1**

1. He has no many relatives here.
2. He'll get up more early than usually tomorrow.
3. She preffered this way of traveling.
4. We had a dinner in afternoon.
5. Who did such many mistakes in the test?
6. There mother doesn't look at her age.
7. There are less students in the group today.
8. Neither his friends nor he were right.
9. The hankerchieves are on the shelves.
10. He is lieing on the grass and looking on the sky.
11. What a pleasure! What a fun! What a luck! What a pity!
12. Tell me if he comes soon.
13. I shall meet with him as soon as he'll come back.

**CORRECTION WORK 2**

1. I can't to translate this text without dictionary.
2. Give me the both halves of this pear.
3. I'm hearing you very good.
4. USA is the country in the North America.
5. Buy two loafes of bread and three kilos of tomatos.
6. He's respected by his colleges.
7. This coat cost a lot of in the last year.
8. Is she studing french or german?
9. Open your books on page fourty four.
10. Mister Smiths' son is a lawyer.
11. Hurry up! The film already begins!
12. His dog is more happy than your one.
13. Her of- fice is in three-minute's walk from here.
14. Where is the Duchess? – She walks in the garden with Philip.
15. I feel badly today.

**Topic Daily Programme****CORRECTION WORK 3**

1. She felt on the icy road and broked her leg.
2. Mary plays a piano, but very bad.
3. How much time is it now?
4. Come at my place in any time you like.
5. If you want to get thinner, you should make more exercises.
6. Are you comming, Mary, deer?
7. There is nothing more pleasant than to have a walk in the warm summer evening.
8. It's time to live your bed and have a breakfast.
9. In the evening after a short quite rest, I do a homework.
10. Me takes fourty minutes to get ready.
11. Do you read this books for a pleasure or are they on the programe?
12. He has woke up yet. He is a early bird.

**CORRECTION WORK 4**

1. He is feeling badly today, let him to go home now.
2. Who did sweep the floor by this broom?
3. Mum knitted when he was coming in.
4. How much tomatos have you bought?
5. Has you ever been in Spain? – Yes, I've been there last year.
6. My nephew is a lot of taller than your one.
7. Granny baked an apple pie when the telephone rung.
8. She was woke up at 7 o'clock on yester- day morning.
9. The nearest restaurant is in twenty-minutes' walk from here.
10. How many time have it taken you to do this correction work?

## Topic Meals

### CORRECTION WORK 5

1. That was hers nephew, wasn't he? 2. Scarcely had he drank his beer than the waiter came. 3. I never have neither coffee nor tea for the breakfast. 4. Why you are eating only vegetables? 5. Do you like go by foot? 6. There is just the time to go to the bed. 7. He adviced her to do shopping after breakfast. 8. Have you been in Prague yet? 9. What else towns have you visit? 10. He had to do breakfast himself, hadn't he? 11. She had cafe on breakfast. 12. Here spoons are. 13. I won't have any soap for the first corse today.

### ☛ CORRECTION WORK 6.

### Fast Food & Takeaways

Most people no what a hot dog is. Its a sausage in a roll. But do you know why is it called a hot dog? Well, the long red sausage which goes into a hot dog is called a frankfurter. It got it's name from the German town of Frankfurt. Sausages were very popular in the 1900s. But hot frankfurters were dificult to sail in crowds. One men, Harry M. Stevens, had the job of feding the crowds in baseball games. He had idea. Why not to put the frankfurters in long hot bread rolls? This maid them easy to cell. Stevens aded mustard and called them "redhots". The redhots had a hot and spice test and became very popular. But in 1903 an american cartoonist drew a long German sausage dog in place of the frankfurter. They were both long and German. So, a frankfurter in a roll soon became know as a hot dog. It was joke, but some people realy thought the sausages contained dog meet. For a while sales of hot dogs fail. But no for long.

## Topic Study

### CORRECTION WORK 7

1. She tought us the English. 2. He missed much classes and legged behind the group. 3. Have you resitten your exam on Latin yet? 4. He relied on his memory but it failed him. 5. Why are you lagging behind? Hurry up! 6. She must be on a holliday now. 7. They haven't to go to school today, they are on a holiday. 8. He cought up with the group, did he? 9. She leaved the school last year and entered this university. 10. I studied to ride a bike when I was six years. 11. He mustn't work – he's rich enough. 12. You don't need to do this exercise in the writing, do it oraly. 13. He got an excellent mark for his essay. 14. She had to take spare classes, hadn't she?

### CORRECTION WORK 8

1. He learns at the school. 2. She leged behind the group. 3. I read english books in original and in the translation. 4. They stayed away at the seminar in Russian language. 5. Fonetics comes easy for him. 6. He has never felt embarassed or tounge-tired. 7. I will be hearing the last news at this time tomorrow. 8. My cat is more lazy than her one. 9. Pronunciation is her weak point. 10. Practice this grammar in the written form. 11. He recited this poem when we were comming in. 12. She hanged the teacher's every word. 13. Have you ever sitten up late? 14. No pain, no gain. 15. We have to write frequent tests and dictations, don't we?

## Topic Clothes & Shopping

### CORRECTION WORK 9

1. That trouser suite costed a lot, didn't it? 2. He payed for his shoping and left the shop. 3. She weighted hundred kiloes. 4. The waiter suggested her another dishes. 5. I won't meet with him again. 6. He had ate all, but was still siting at the table. 7. He asked her if she was wanting a coffee. 8. Her appartment was quiet small. 9. She offered her guest to take another piece of cake. 10. I'm thinking he said the truth. 11. I told I would have returned by midnight. 12. He replied nothing.

### **CORRECTION WORK 10**

1. She had better buy something cheaper, wouldn't she? 2. He wondered whose that car was. 3. She paid for the trousers suit at the lady's wear department. 4. It happened long time ago. 5. Unfortunately she had got no jewellery at home. 6. This striped blouse is very becoming to you. 7. He has a good taste in clothes. 8. Let's take these French shoes with taped toe. 9. Though she can afford buying expensive clothes, she always looks badly. 10. He reminded to us to buy a today's newspaper. 11. He says he won't have time for it.

### **Topic Town**

#### **CORRECTION WORK 11**

1. The teacher explained us that the earth moves round the sun. 2. He suggested me to take a taxi. 3. When I looked back he already disappeared about the corner. 4. Fred learns to drive a car now. 5. The town is situated in very picturesque place and famous for its history. 6. My car is repairing now. 7. Walk down the street two blocks. 8. There is no traffic lights on the crossroads. 9. I found myself in the part of the town where I've never been before. 10. You had better not to watch the TV set so much. 11. Get off at the stop but two. 12. If I press for time today I will take a taxi, it's only ten-minutes' drive from my place.

#### **CORRECTION WORK 12**

1. He will able to drive a truck soon. 2. Take number 64 bus and go so far as the square. 3. He'd rather not stay after the classes, hadn't he? 4. The classroom has just cleaned, the floor has washed. 5. The notice was written by a red pen. 6. This article of his is never referred to. 7. We surprised to see him wearing so strange clothes. 8. This crossroads are very dangerous. 9. The passer-by didn't know where was the town centre. 10. How many are you paid for your job? 11. Are you travelling for business or for pleasure? 12. If there is a traffic light, wait when the light changes to green. 13. He was awoken by terrible noise.

### **Topic Weather**

#### **CORRECTION WORK 13**

1. The sun shone brightly on the sky. 2. They swam in the lake and laid in the sun. 3. It rained heavily all day yesterday. 4. I wasn't agree with him. 5. He said her he didn't take anything out from the case yet. 6. What a bad weather we are have today. 7. He slipped on the stone and fell to the ground. 8. When the clock stroke four, the rain have already stopped. 9. Look, the sun had already risen. 10. It's beginning to rain hard, let's take a shelter.

#### **CORRECTION WORK 14**

1. Sky is overcast by low black clouds. 2. We hadn't time to wait for him. 3. Another men came and said him to follow them. 4. What about to go to the seacoast this summer? 5. It's warm and sunny today. 6. He forgot his phone on his desk. 7. What a lovely weather we are having today! 8. The air is such fresh in a sunny morning like that. 9. Autumn have come and the streets are maddy. 10. It will be a lot of snow next weekend.

#### **REVISION CORRECTION WORK 15**

1. There was less people than usual in the hall. 2. Hardly we had greeted the boss when Jack run into the room. 3. At this time yesterday first question was discussed. 4. How bright sunshine! What blue sky! What a green grass! 5. He wanted to know what was Ann doing tomorrow. 6. The new game has just downloaded, so the computer has used now. 7. He was very tired. He has been studying too much. 8. Repeat these rules at the home, please. 9. All the documents are in the bank's saves. 10. There are a lot of good advise in this book. 11. No one of us knew where did he live. 12. Neither her relatives nor she have a rest on the seaside. 13. Relax yourself and feel yourself at home. 14. He is the friend of us, isn't he? 15. These are so beautiful houses! It's such hot! We have so many time! 16. I have met him in this cafe another day. 17. She goes to the fitness centre each other day and she very enjoys it. 18. We can't afford buying this house.



## CORRECTION WORK KEYS

### KEY 1

1. He **doesn't** have many relatives here. 2. He'll get up **earlier** than **usual** tomorrow. 3. She **preferred** this way of **travelling**. 4. We had \_ dinner in **the** afternoon. 5. Who **made so** many mistakes in the test? 6. **Their** mother doesn't look \_ her age. 7. There are **fewer** students in the group today. 8. Neither his friends nor he **was** right. 9. The **handkerchiefs** are on the **shelves**. 10. He is **lying** on the grass and looking **at** the sky. 11. What a pleasure! What \_ fun! What \_ luck! What a pity! 12. Tell me if he **will come** soon. 13. I shall meet \_ him as soon as he **comes** back.

### KEY 2

1. I can't \_ translate this text without **a** dictionary. 2. Give me the both **halves** of this pear. 3. I **hear** you very **well**. 4. **The** USA is **a** country in \_ North America. 5. Buy two **loaves** of bread and three kilos of **tomatoes**. 6. He's respected by his **colleagues**. 7. This coat cost a lot \_ last year. 8. Is she **studying French** or **German**? 9. Open your books **at** page **forty-four**. 10. **Mr Smith's** son is a lawyer. 11. Hurry up! The film **is** already **beginning!** 12. His dog is more happy than **yours**. 13. Her office is \_ **three minutes'** walk from here. 14. Where is the Duchess? – She **is walking** in the garden with Philip. 15. I feel **bad** today.

### KEY 3

1. She **fell** on the icy road and **broke** her leg. 2. Mary plays **the** piano, but very **badly**. 3. **What** time is it now? 4. Come **to** my place \_ any time you like. 5. If you want to get thinner, you should **take** more **exercise**. 6. Are you **coming**, Mary, **dear**? 7. **Nothing is** more pleasant than to have a walk **on a** warm summer evening. 8. It's time to leave your bed and have \_ breakfast. 9. In the evening after a short **quiet** rest, I do \_ homework. 10. **It** takes **me forty** minutes to get ready. 11. Do you read **these** books for \_ pleasure or are they on the **program (= programme)**? 12. He has **woken up already**. He is **an** early bird.

### KEY 4

1. He is feeling **bad** today, let him \_ go home now. 2. Who \_ **swept** the floor **with** this broom? 3. Mum **was knitting** when he **came** in. 4. How **many tomatoes** have you bought? 5. - **Have** you ever been **to** Spain? – Yes, I **was** there last year. 6. My nephew is a lot \_ taller than **yours**. 7. Gran-ny **was baking** an apple pie when the telephone **rang**. 8. She \_ **woke** up at 7 o'clock \_ yesterday morning. 9. The nearest restaurant is \_ **twenty minutes'** (= **a twenty-minute**) walk from here. 10. How **much** time **has** it taken you to do this correction work?

### KEY 5

1. That was **her** nephew, wasn't **it**? 2. Scarcely had he **drunk** his beer **when** the waiter came. 3. I \_ have neither coffee nor tea for \_ breakfast. 4. Why **are** you only **eating** vegetables? 5. Do you like **to go on** foot? 6. **It's** just the time to go to \_ bed. 7. He **advised** her to do **the** shopping after breakfast. 8. Have you been **to** Prague yet? 9. What **other** towns have you **visited**? 10. He had to **make** breakfast himself, **didn't** he? 11. She had **coffee for** breakfast. 12. Here **are the** spoons. 13. I won't have any **soup** for the first **course** today.

**KEY 6.** Most people **know** what a hot dog is. **It's** a sausage in a roll. But do you know why **it's** called a hot dog? Well, the long red sausage which goes into a hot dog is called a frankfurter. It got **its** name from the German town of Frankfurt. **The** sausages were very popular in the 1900s. But hot frankfurters were **difficult to sell** in crowds. One **man**, Harry M. Stevens, had the job of **feeding** the crowds in baseball games. He had **an** idea. Why not \_ put the frankfurters in long hot bread rolls? This **made** them easy to **sell**. Stevens **added** mustard and called them "redhots". The redhots had a hot and **spicy taste** and became very popular. But in 1903 an **American** cartoonist drew a long German sausage dog in place of the frankfurter. They were both long and German. So, a frankfurter in a roll soon became **known** as a hot dog. It was **a** joke, but some people **really** thought the sausages contained dog **meat**. For a while sales of hot dogs **fell**. But **not** for long.

### KEY 7

1. She **taught** us \_ English. 2. He missed **a lot of** classes and **lagged** behind the group. 3. Have you **re-sat** your exam **in** Latin yet? 4. He relied on his memory but it failed him. 5. Why are you **lag-ging** behind? Hurry up! 6. She must be on \_ **holiday** now. 7. They **don't have** to go to school today, they are on \_ holiday. 8. He **caught up** with the group, **didn't** he? 9. She **left** \_ school last year and **entered** this university. 10. I **learned** to ride a bike when I was six years **old** (= **when I was six**). 11. He **needn't** work – he's rich enough. 12. You don't need to do this exercise in \_ writing, do it **orally**. 13. He got an **excellent** mark for his **essay**. 14. She had to take **extra** classes, **didn't** she?

### KEY 8

1. He **goes to** \_ school. 2. She **lagged** behind the group. 3. I read **English** books in **the** original and in \_ translation. 4. They stayed away **from** the seminar **on the** Russian language (**on Russian**). 5. **Phonetics** comes easy **to** him. 6. He has never felt embarrassed or **tongue-tied**. 7. I will be **lis-tening to** the **latest** news at this time tomorrow. 8. My cat is **lazier** than **hers**. 9. **Pronunciation** is her weak point. 10. Practise this grammar in \_ written form. 11. He **was reciting** this poem when we **came in**. 12. She **hung on** the teacher's every word. 13. Have you ever **sat up** late? 14. No pains, no gains. 15. We have to write frequent tests and dictations, don't we?

### KEY 9

1. That trouser **suit cost** a lot, didn't it? 2. He **paid** for his **shopping** and left the shop. 3. She **weighed a** (=one) hundred **kilos**. 4. The waiter **offered** her another **dish** (=some other dishes). 5. I won't meet \_ him again. 6. He **had eaten** all, but was still **sitting** at the table. 7. He asked her if she **wanted** (some) coffee. 8. Her **apartment** was **quite** small. 9. She offered her guest \_ another piece of cake. 10. I **think** he **told** the truth. 11. I **said** I would have returned by midnight. 12. He **replied** nothing.

### KEY 10

1. She'd better buy something **cheaper**, **hadn't** she? 2. He wondered whose **car that was**. 3. She **paid** for the **trouser** suit at the **ladies'** wear department. 4. It **happened a** long time ago. 5. **Unfor-tunately** she had \_ no jewellery at home. 6. This **striped** blouse is very **becoming** to you. 7. He has \_ good taste in clothes. 8. Let's take these **French** shoes with **a tapered** toe. 9. Though she can afford **to buy** expensive clothes, she always looks **bad**. 10. He reminded \_ us to buy \_ today's newspaper. 11. He says he won't have time for it.

### KEY 11

1. The teacher explained **to** us that the earth moves round the sun. 2. He suggested **taking** a taxi. (=He suggested **we should take** a taxi). 3. When I looked back he **had** already disappeared **around** the corner. 4. Fred **is learning** to drive a car now. 5. The town is situated in **a** very picturesque place and **is** famous for **its** history. 6. My car is **being repaired** now. 7. Walk **two blocks** down the street. 8. There **are** no traffic lights on the crossroads. 9. I found myself in the part of the town where I **had** never been before. 10. You had better not \_ watch \_ TV \_ so much. 11. Get off at the **next** stop but two. 12. If I **am pressed** for time today, I will take a taxi, it's only **ten minutes'** drive from my place.

### KEY 12

1. He will **be** able to drive a truck soon. 2. Take **a** number 64 bus and go **as** far as the square. 3. He'd rather not stay after \_ classes, **would** he? 4. The classroom has just **been** cleaned, the floor has **been** washed. 5. The notice was written **with** a red pen. 6. This article of his is never referred to. 7. We **were** surprised to see him wearing **such** strange clothes. 8. This crossroads **is** very dangerous. 9. The **passers-by** didn't know where the town centre **was**. 10. How **much** are you paid for your job? 11. Are you travelling **on business** or for pleasure? 12. If there **are** traffic lights, wait **till** the light changes to green. 13. He was **woken** by **a** terrible noise.

### KEY 13

1. The sun **shone** brightly **in** the sky. 2. They **swam** in the lake and **lay** in the sun. 3. It rained **heavily** all day yesterday. 4. I **didn't** agree with him. 5. He **told** her he **hadn't taken** anything out of the case yet. 6. What **\_\_** bad weather we are **having** today. 7. He slipped on the stone and **fell** to the ground. 8. When the clock **struck** four, the rain **had** already stopped. 9. Look, the sun **has** already **risen**. 10. It's **beginning** to rain **hard**, let's take **\_\_** shelter.

### KEY 14

1. **The** sky is overcast **with** low black clouds. 2. We **didn't have** time to wait for him. 3. **Other** men came and **told** him to follow them. 4. What about **going** to the **seacoast** this summer? 5. It's **warm** and **sunny** today. 6. He **left** his phone on his desk. 7. What **\_** lovely **weather** we are having today! 8. The air is **so** fresh **on** a sunny morning like that. 9. Autumn **has** come and the streets are **muddy**. 10. **There** will be a lot of snow next weekend.

### KEY 15

1. There **were fewer** people than usual in the hall. 2. Hardly **had** we greeted the boss when Jack **ran** into the room. 3. At this time yesterday **the** first question was **being** discussed. 4. **What** bright sunshine! **What a** blue sky! **What \_** green grass! 5. He wanted to know what **Ann** was doing **the next day**. 6. The new game has just **been** downloaded, so the computer **is being** used now. 7. He was very tired. He **had** been **studying** too much. 8. **Revise** these rules at **\_** home, please. 9. All the documents are in the **safes of the bank**. 10. There **is** a lot of good **advice** in this book. 11. **None** of us knew where he **lived**. 12. Neither her relatives nor she **has** a rest on the seaside. 13. Relax **\_** and feel **\_** at home. 14. He is **a** friend of **ours**, isn't he? 15. These are **such** beautiful houses! It's **so** hot! We have **so much** time! 16. I **met** him in this cafe **the other** day. 17. She goes to the fitness centre **every** other day and she enjoys it **very much**. 18. We can't afford to **buy** this house



## §16. TEST REVISION

Do the tasks and check with the key

### TEST REVISION 1

#### Task 1. Fill in prepositions or adverbs where necessary.

1. Let's hang the mirror ..... these two shelves. 2. What is there ..... the middle ..... the bedroom? 3. .... the right there is a wash basin, ..... the left ..... the wash basin there is a bath. 4. The picture is ..... the desk. 5. They moved ..... the beginning ..... the week. 6 Mum is back ..... work ..... the holidays. 7. Their flat is ..... the outskirts ..... London. 8. I've tidied the room and everything is ..... its place now. 9. Their flat is ..... the suburbs, quite far ..... the city. 10. Take the notebook ..... the bag and put it ... the desk drawer.

#### Task 2. Ask all kinds of questions.

1. There are two large windows in the room.
2. His shirts are in the drawer.

#### Task 3. Translate into English.

1. Сегодня мы идем на новоселье к нашим родственникам. Они переехали где-то в конце прошлого месяца. Насколько я знаю, у них теперь удобная полнметражная квартира с отдельными комнатами. Она гораздо больше нашей. Они немного расстроены тем, что квартира расположена на окраине города, довольно далеко от центра. Но с этим ничего не поделаешь, и, кроме того, прямо за углом автобусная остановка и станция метро. В их квартире еще очень мало мебели и много места. Я мало что еще могу сказать о ней, надеюсь скоро увидеть все сама.

2. Их дача уютнее и комфортабельнее, чем наша. Это современный двухэтажный коттедж в пригороде. В нем все современные удобства: газ, электричество, центральное отопление, горячая и холодная вода. Окна выходят на речку. Дом спланирован так, чтобы было легко хозяйничать. Пол покрыт ламинатом и паркетом, стены покрашены или оклеены обоями.

3. Ее старшую сестру зовут Кейт. Она старше ее на четыре года. Они очень разные. Кейт выше, тоньше в талии, ее волосы светлее и длиннее. Я думаю, она самая хорошенькая и умная девушка в группе. Вся семья ей очень гордится.

4. Посмотри на фотографии. На этой фотографии наша кухня. Это самая маленькая комната в квартире, здесь не очень много мебели, только самое необходимое, но светлый кухонный гарнитур и яркие занавески на окнах делают ее уютной. Слева от раковины новая электрическая плита. Стены выложены кафелем.

5. Наша квартира в новом высотном, четырнадцатизэтажном доме. В доме есть лифт и мусоропровод. Окна квартиры выходят на оживленную улицу. Самая большая и красивая комната – наша гостиная. В ней стоит мебельная стенка, состоящая из нескольких секций: серванта, платяного шкафа и застекленного книжного шкафа. Слева стоит диванчик и маленький столик. В правом углу – телевизор. Нет ничего приятнее, чем посмотреть хороший фильм в свободное время.

6. В холодильнике много молока. Молоко в холодильнике. Студенты в комнате. В аудитории двести тринадцать много студентов. Мы много пели и танцевали. У меня нет мела, дай мне немного. В этой комнате столько же парт, сколько в той. Мой тест хуже твоего. Твой тест лучше моего.

## TEST REVISION 2 / 3

### 1. Fill in prepositions or adverbs if necessary:

1. We shall go ... ..the library ..... the break or ..... classes. 2. They arrived ..... Rome .....a sunny summer morning ..... last week. 3. He woke ..... .. eight ..... the morning, but he didn't get ..... at once. 4. Though it was half ..... two, he was not ..... a hurry to leave ..... the office. 5. She rests ..... two .....six .....every day. 6. He will return ..... four days. 7. - ..... what time did Fred arrive ... ..the meeting? - ..... a quarter ... five. We were waiting ..... him. 8. She is too pressed ..... time to tidy ..... her flat ..... weekdays, she does it .....weekends. 9. You can enter ..... the university ..... any time. 10. Come ..... my place ..... Sunday. 11. He'll stay ..... Rome ..... a day or two.

### 2. Use the verbs in brackets in the correct form.

1. It (be) three months since he (begin) driving his new car.
2. She never (make) fish pies, but she (to bake) meat pies several times.
3. He (want) to travel about the world for many years.
4. I (to boil) the potatoes as soon as you (to peel) them.
5. Hardly I (to taste) the salad when the waiter (to bring) the second course.
6. She hopes she (to lay) the table by the time the guests (to come).
7. It's the second time Jim (fail) his History exam.

### 3. Translate into English:

1) Чем позже ты встанешь, тем меньше времени у тебя будет, чтобы собраться. 2) Если ты не будешь больше двигаться, ты потолстеешь. 3) Спроси ее, вымоет ли она посуду. Если она вымоет посуду и вытрет пыль, я помою пол и полью цветы. 4) Я собираюсь пойти за покупками. Ты пойдешь со мной? 5) Вчера она стирала постельное белье, а сейчас она гладит его. 6) Я слышала, ты вчера была в новой парикмахерской. У тебя такая красивая прическа! – Я рада, что тебе нравится. 7) Ни мои подруги, ни я не шьем одежду сами. 8) Она так плохо чувствовала себя вчера, а сегодня чувствует себя еще хуже. 9) Он такой ленивый! Он совсем не помогает родителям по дому. 10) У меня нет ни времени, ни желания вязать или шить, но я люблю готовить. 11) Вчера она упала и растянула лодыжку, и сейчас она лежит на диване и смотрит телевизор. 12) Он чистит ковры каждый месяц. Мы тоже. Он не делает зарядку. Я тоже. 13) В прошлом году он занимался ремонтом сам. 14) Сколько времени? – Уже половина восьмого. Пора просыпаться и вставать. – Уже встаю. 15) Если ты проспичь и не успеешь на автобус, ты приедешь в университет позже обычного и опоздаешь на занятия. 16) Сегодня я иду к своему племяннику на новоселье. Мне нужно сходить в парикмахерскую. 17) Завтра у него день рождения. Что ему подарить? – В прошлом году он поступил в институт иностранных языков. Подари ему какую-нибудь хорошую английскую книгу в оригинале. 18) Он дал мне такой хороший совет! Этот совет такой хороший! Это такая чудесная новость! Здесь столько народа! Он так хорошо говорит по-французски! Ты так прекрасно выглядишь! 19) Я оставил тетрадь дома. Он тоже. Он никогда не пьет кофе. Она тоже. Ее бабушка плохо видит. Моя тоже. Сейчас они не слушают музыку. Мы тоже. 20) Ты можешь ответить на эти вопросы быстрее и легче чем я. 21) Ни он, ни я не устали. Ни я, ни он не устали. Ни он, ни они не ложатся спать так рано. Ни мои родители, ни Джон не ездят за город в будние дни. 22) Она ещё не накрыла на стол. Она все ещё режет хлеб. Я надеюсь, она все приготовит к приходу гостей. 23) Садись за стол. – Я не очень голодный. Я только хочу перекусить. – Ты так мало ешь! Ты на диете? 24) Я предпочитаю яблоки апельсинам. О бананах не может быть и речи. 25) Я люблю жареную картошку. – Они тоже. Я не ем блины в столовой. Они не вкусные. – Я тоже. Он пьет овощной сок, а я предпочитаю фруктовый сок. 26) Кто ходит по магазинам в вашей семье? – Мама. Кто украшает елку? – Я. Кто сейчас дома? – Мои родители. Кто приготовил обед? – Бабушка.

## TEST REVISION 4

### 1. Use the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

1. Somebody (to strike) the man on the head when he (to go) to his car.
2. He (to get married) some day if he (to meet) a girl of his dream.
3. They (to celebrate) their engagement next Saturday.
4. He seldom (to call) on us when he (to live) next door.
5. I know very well what my grandparents (to do) when I (to come) to their place tonight: Grandma (to knit) and Granddad (to watch) football on TV.
6. Why you (to walk) so fast? You (to follow) anybody?  
– No, I (to hurry) to the Drama theatre. The play (to begin) in 5 minutes.
7. What you (to do) at 7 yesterday? I (to phone) you, but nobody (to take) the receiver.  
– No wonder. I (to have) a bath and (to listen) to the radio and (not to hear) the phone.
8. He is tired. He (to walk) for two hours.
9. Her hands were dirty. She (to work) in the garden all day long.
10. They (sell) books for ten years by the next January.

### 2. Translate into English

1. Сын нашего директора школы – уже пятикурсник. Ни его однокурсники, ни он не знают, где будут работать, когда закончат университет.
2. Что мне делать? У меня проблемы с грамматикой. Я не сдал зачет.  
– Возможно, староста тебе поможет. Он прекрасно ориентируется в английском и ему легко даются письменные работы.
3. Вам не надо брать книгу по домашнему чтению в библиотеке. Я раздам вам книги сама. Когда у нас по расписанию следующее занятие по домашнему чтению?
4. Они познакомились, когда сдавали вступительные экзамены. Он одолжил ей лишнюю ручку. Когда они поступили на наш факультет, то оба попали в одну группу. Теперь они лучшие друзья, и она помогает ему с его произношением: они слушают диалоги, тренируют звуки и интонацию.
5. Наше общежитие находится в десяти минутах ходьбы от университета.
6. Ему пришлось много заниматься дополнительно и учить наизусть, чтобы не отстать от группы.
7. Ты опять не конспектировал на лекции по психологии! Ты такой ленивый и безответственный! Ты должен ловить каждое слово преподавателя.
8. Возьмите свой журнал группы и сдайте ваши зачетные книжки в деканат.
9. Ты будешь учиться на подготовительных курсах в начале июля, чтобы улучшить свои знания?
10. Ему хорошо дается английский, но ему не хватает беглости в речи..
11. – Почему он сидит допоздна каждый вечер? – Он учит немецкий. Хочет попробовать переводить с немецкого. Возможно, у него это получится.
12. На семинаре по лингвистике преподаватель сказал нам, что все студенты должны заниматься какой-нибудь научной работой.
13. Ты не присутствовал на нескольких занятиях по фонетике без уважительной причины, не так ли? Когда ты собираешься догонять группу и избавляться от ошибок?
14. Надо было делать перевод письменно или устно?
15. Давайте приступим к работе. Сегодня мы задаем вопросы по тексту и инсценируем диалог на странице сорок четыре. Кто хочет начать? Не спешите. Работайте самостоятельно.
16. Сегодня мы закончим урок раньше, чем обычно. Давайте напишем тест. Оставьте поля с левой стороны. Нумеруйте предложения, пожалуйста. Надеюсь, вы сделаете в нем меньше ошибок, чем в прошлом. Вы можете пойти домой, когда подпишете свои работы и сдадите их мне. Не списывайте, работайте самостоятельно.
17. Есть проблемы? Не отвечайте все одновременно, по одному, пожалуйста. Давайте посмотрим вместе и попробуем разобраться. Достаточно. Давайте пойдём дальше. Не шумите. Давайте зададим вопросы к этому предложению.

## TEST REVISION 5

### 1. Change into the reported speech using the given verbs:

*to offer, to beg, to wonder, to promise, to add, to suggest, to complain, to deny, to order, to want to know, to remind;*

1. "Mummy, do give me another glass of juice, please", said Johnny.
2. "Have some more salad, Mary", said the lady.
3. "Don't forget, children, it's never too late to learn", said the teacher.
4. "I'll dust the furniture tomorrow, Mom", said Wendy.
5. "Put the knife on the floor, Bill, and don't say a word", said the officer.
6. "Let's have a picnic on Saturday", Father said.
7. "I've never been to this place before", said Paul.
8. "Are you playing golf today, Harry?" said Mrs Roberts.
9. "My children never stop running and shouting", said Meg to her cousin.
10. "Whose car is this?" said Mike, "It looks so strange."

### 2. Translate into Russian

1. - Почему ты такой грустный? – У меня болит голова. Я слишком долго ходил по магазинам. – Купил что-нибудь? – Костюм-тройку и галстук в тон.
2. – Мне пришлось зайти в булочную по дороге домой. – Мне тоже. У нас кончился хлеб.
3. Я не хочу надевать ни шляпу, ни платок в такое прекрасное весеннее утро.
4. - Я предлагаю пойти в отдел женской одежды. Мне нужна юбка и блузка в пастельных тонах. - А я хочу купить вечернее бархатное платье.
5. – Она не может позволить себе купить этот шелковый бежевый костюм. Он слишком дорогой. – Она может купить его в кредит. Он ей идет и как раз впору.
6. Я бы хотела купить туфли из кожи, а не из замши. Они практичнее и лучше носятся. Неудивительно, что они пользуются большим спросом.
7. Она одевается со вкусом. Я никогда не видела её плохо одетой.
8. Тебе следует сшить эту юбку самой. Это будет гораздо дешевле.
9. Вся повседневная одежда здесь. Выбирайте и примеряйте. Цены разумные.
10. Почему ты все ещё в халате и тапочках? Я смотрю, ты не торопишься. А спектакль начинается ровно в семь.
11. - Ты ходила в продуктовый магазин? – Да, ещё я купила свежую газету в киоске. – Где мама? - Она тоже ушла за покупками. Ей нужны пуговицы и бельё.
12. Я никогда не носил пижаму. Дома я ношу футболку и шорты.
13. Когда я увидел его, на нем были тёмно-синие джинсы, темно-серый в полоску пуловер и кроссовки.
14. Эти кожаные перчатки не подходят к твоей новой шляпе. К тому же, они тебе малы. Какой размер перчаток ты носишь?
15. - Интересно, где мои деньги? – Я видел их на столике в гостиной. – Я хочу купить выходные туфли на высоком каблуке с заостренным носком. Они сейчас в моде. – Сколько они стоят? Давай я подарю тебе их на день рождения. – Лучше подари мне серебряную цепочку или французские духи.
16. Врач сказал, что она не поправится, пока не сядет на диету. Она весит 70 кг.
17. Вчера целый день она шила себе новые брюки. Она сказала, что закончит их к выходным.
18. Не успели мы войти в обувной отдел, как я увидела эти сандалии. К сожалению, у них не было моего размера.
19. Он заплатил наличными, взял свои покупки и вышел.
20. Она замужем с прошлого года. Её муж старше её на шесть лет.

## TEST REVISION 6

### 1. Put the verb in brackets into the correct form.

1. The floor in the house (to wash) every other day. Mrs Simpson (to wash) it herself.
2. The document (to arrive) at 5 o'clock yesterday. It (to translate) by Miss Osborn at once.
3. She told us that he (to have) a car accident a week before and (to take) to hospital.
4. He says that I (to invite) to take part in the next conference too.
5. The boy told us that his grandparents (to die).
6. I was sure that I (to follow). When I (to come out) I (to see) two suspicious looking people. I (to pass) them by but when I (to turn) round the people (to disappear).
7. I can't scan the texts for you now, my computer (to use). They said it (to be) free in an hour.
8. I (not to be) to your place for a long time. Now I see it (to change). The rooms (to redecorate) and a new suite of kitchen furniture (to buy).
9. The car must (to repair) as soon as possible.  
– They promise that everything (to do) by the weekend.
10. If I (finish) earlier tomorrow we (to eat out) together.

### 2. Translate into English.

1. У тебя есть свободное время сегодня? Давай пойдем в оперный театр. Я не был там целую вечность. Его недавно отстранили и, говорят, он изменился до неузнаваемости. Нам потребуется примерно полчаса, чтобы добраться туда на автобусе. Остановка в пяти минутах ходьбы от здания театра.
2. У меня было странное чувство, что за мной следят. На перекрестке я оглянулся, но увидел только нескольких прохожих, которые шли по тротуару по направлению к подземному переходу. Когда я оглянулся опять, они исчезли.
3. Они решили остановиться в гостинице «Россия». На следующий день они поехали осматривать достопримечательности. Москва произвела на них большое впечатление. Особенно они интересовались историческими памятниками известным людям.
4. Был час пик. Даже на окраине движение было гораздо интенсивнее, чем обычно. Обычно я езжу на работу на трамвае № 17, а потом пересаживаюсь на автобус № 4. Но вчера все трамваи были переполнены, и я не мог войти. На остановке я увидел своего соседа. «Я не могу тебя подвезти, мою машину ремонтируют», сообщил мне он. «Когда ты будешь ездить на своей новой машине?» поинтересовался он. «Я только учусь её водить. Надеюсь, что получу права к следующему месяцу», объяснил я.
5. – Извините, как добраться до университета? Я приезжий и мне кажется, я сбился с пути.  
– Это недалеко отсюда. Пройдите один квартал по этой улице и поверните направо на перекрестке. Вы увидите здание университета слева. Вы его не пропустите.
6. Будь осторожнее, когда пойдешь в школу, соблюдай правила дорожного движения. Если тебе надо перейти улицу, пользуйся переходами. Сначала посмотри налево, потом направо. Если есть светофор, дожись, когда загорится зелёный свет.
7. Он пожаловался, что застрял в пробке вчера и опоздал на работу.
8. В три часа будет уже полчаса, как он учит этот диалог. Он должен быть выучен к завтрашнему дню.
9. Ему пришлось закрыть все двери и окна в доме самому, не так ли?
10. Она предложила ему купить эти серые туфли в тон его новому костюму-тройке. Он померил их, и сказал, что они ему малы.
11. Много новых дач построено в нашей деревне, с тех пор как ты уехал.
12. У него болит голова, он слишком долго писал сочинение. Ему надо сделать перерыв и отдохнуть.
13. Мы можем пойти пешком, но если у вас мало времени, мы возьмём такси.



## TEST REVISION KEYS

### KEY 1

#### Task 1

1. Let's hang the mirror between these two shelves. 2. What is there in the middle of the bedroom? 3. On the right there is a wash basin, to the left of the wash basin there is a bath. 4. The picture is above the desk. 5. They moved in at the beginning of the week. 6. Mum is back to work after the holidays. 7. Their flat is on the outskirts of London. 8. I've tidied the room and everything is in its place now. 9. Their flat is in the suburbs, quite far from the city. 10. Take the notebook out of the bag and put it into / in the desk drawer.

#### Task 2

##### Sentence 1

1. There are two large windows in the room, aren't there? 2. Are there two large windows in the room? 3. Are there two or three windows in the room? 4. What is there in the room? 5. How many windows are there in the room? 6. What kind of windows are there in the room?

##### Sentence 2

1. His shirts are in the drawer, aren't they? 2. Are his shirts in the drawer? 3. Are his shirts in the drawer or on the shelves? 4. What is in the drawer? 5. Where are the shirts? 6. Whose shirts are in the drawer?

#### Task 3

1. We are going to the house-warming party to our relatives today. They moved in somewhere at the end of last month. As far as I know, now they have a comfortable full-sized flat with separate rooms. It's much larger than ours. They are a little upset that the flat is on the outskirts of the town, rather far from the centre. But this can't be helped and, besides, there is a bus stop and an underground station just round the corner. There is very little furniture and a lot of room in their flat so far. There is little else I can say about it, hope to see it all for myself soon.

2. Their country house is cosier and more comfortable than hers. This is a modern two-storey (two-storeyed) cottage in the suburbs. It has all modern conveniences: gas, electricity, central heating, hot and cold water supply. The windows overlook a river. The house is planned so as to make house-keeping easy. The floor is covered with laminate and parquet, the walls are painted or papered.

3. Her elder sister's name is Kate. She is four years older than her. They are very different. Kate is taller, thinner at the waist, her hair is fairer and longer. I think, she is the prettiest and the most intelligent girl in the group. All the family is very proud of her.

4. Look at the photos. There is our kitchen in this photo. It's the smallest room in the flat, there isn't much furniture in it, only the most necessary things, but the light suite of kitchen furniture and the bright curtains on the windows make it cosy. There is a new electric cooker to the left of the sink. The walls are tiled.

5. Our flat is in a new high-rise fourteen-storey block of flats. There is a lift and a rubbish chute in the house. The windows of the flat overlook a busy street. The largest and the most beautiful room is our lounge. There is a wall unit in it consisting of several sections: a sideboard, a wardrobe and a glass-fronted bookcase. On the left there is a settee and a small table. There is a television in the right hand corner. Nothing is more pleasant than to watch a good film in your free time.

6. There is a great deal of milk in the fridge. The milk is in the fridge. The students are in the room. There are plenty of students in room one-two-three. We sang and danced a lot. I have no chalk, give me a little. There are as many desks in this room as in that one. My test is worse than yours. Your test is better than mine.

## KEY 2 / 3

### 1.

1. We shall go to the library during the break or after classes. 2. They arrived in Rome on a sunny summer morning last week. 3. He woke up at eight in the morning, but he didn't get up at once. 4. Though it was half past two, he was not in a hurry to leave the office. 5. She rests from two till six every day. 6. He will return in four days. 7. - What time did Fred arrive at the meeting? - At a quarter to (past) five. We were waiting for him. 8 She is too pressed for time to tidy up her flat on weekdays, she does it at weekends. 9. You can enter the university any time. 10. Come to my place on Sunday. 11. He'll stay in Rome for a day or two.

### 2.

1. It **is** three months since he **began** driving his new car.  
2. She **has** never **made** fish pies, but she **has baked** meat pies several times.  
3. He **has wanted** to travel about the world for many years.  
4. I **will boil** the potatoes as soon as you **peel** them.  
5. Hardly **had I tasted** the salad when the waiter **brought** the second course.  
6. She hopes she **will have laid** the table by the time the guests **come**.  
7. It's the second time Jim **has failed** his History exam.

### 3.

1) The later you get up the less time you will have to get ready. 2) If you don't take more exercise you will get fat. 3) Ask her if she will wash the dishes. If she washes up and dusts the furniture I shall wash the floor and water the houseplants. 4) I am going to do the shopping. Will you come with me? 5) Yesterday she washed the bed linen and now she is ironing it. 6) - I hear you were at the new hairdresser's yesterday. You have such a nice haircut! I am glad you like it. 7) Neither my friends nor I make our own clothes. 8) She felt so bad yesterday and today she feels (is feeling) even worse. 9) He is so lazy. He doesn't help his parents about the house at all. 10) I have neither time nor wish to knit or to sew, but I enjoy cooking. 11) Yesterday she fell and sprained her ankle, now she is lying on the sofa and watching TV. 12) He vacuums carpets every month. So do we. He doesn't do his exercises. Neither do I. 13) Last year he did repairs (redecorated) himself. 14) - What's the time? (What time is it?) - It's half past seven already. It's time to wake up and get up. - I am getting up already. 15) If you oversleep and miss your bus you will arrive at the university later than usual and will be late for your classes. 16) Today I am going to my nephew's housewarming. I must go to the hairdresser's. 17) - Tomorrow he has his birthday. What shall I give him? - Last year he entered the Institute of Foreign Languages. Give him some good English book in the original. 18) He gave me such good advice! This advice is so good! This is such wonderful news! There are so many people here. He speaks French so well! You look so wonderful! 19) I left my exercise book at home. So did he. He never drinks coffee. Neither does she. Her granny doesn't see well. Neither does mine. They are not listening to music now. Neither are we. 20) You can answer these questions quicker (more quickly) and easier (more easily) than me. 21) Neither he nor I am tired. Neither I nor he is tired. Neither he nor they go to bed so early. Neither my parents nor John goes to the country on weekdays. 22) She hasn't laid the table yet. She is still cutting bread. I hope she'll have prepared everything before guests come. 23) Sit down to table. - I'm not very hungry. I just want to have a bite. - You are such a light eater! Are you on a diet? 24) I prefer apples to oranges. Bananas are out of the question. 25) I like fried potatoes. - So do they. I don't eat pancakes in the canteen. They aren't tasty. - Neither do I. He drinks vegetable juice, and I prefer fruit juice. 26. Who goes shopping in your family? - Mother does. Who decorates the fir tree? - I do. Who is at home now? - My parents are. Who prepared dinner? - Granny did.

## KEY 4

### 1

- 1 Somebody **struck** the man on the head when he **was going** to his car.
- 2 He **will get married** some day if he **meets** a girl of his dream.
- 3 They **are celebrating** their engagement next Saturday.
- 4 He seldom **called** on us when he **was living** (= **lived**) next door.
- 5 I know very well what my grandparents **will be doing** when I **come** to their place tonight: Grandma **will be knitting** and Granddad **will be watching** football on TV.
- 6 – Why **are you walking** so fast? **Are you following** anybody?  
- No, I **am hurrying** to the Drama theatre. The play **begins** in 5 minutes.
- 7 – What **were you doing** at 7 yesterday? I **was phoning** you, but nobody **took** the receiver.  
- No wonder. I **was having** a bath and **listening** to the radio and **didn't hear** the phone.
8. He is tired. He **has been walking** for two hours.
9. Her hands were dirty. She **had been working** in the garden all day long.
10. They **will have been selling** books for ten years by the next January.

### 2.

1. The headmaster of our school's son is a fifth-year student already. Neither his fellow-students nor he knows where they will work when they graduate from the university
2. What should I do? I have problems with grammar. I haven't passed the oral test.  
– The monitor may (=might) help you. He is at home in English and tests come easy to him.
3. You don't have to borrow the book on Home Reading from the library. (=You needn't borrow the book ...) I'll give you out the books myself. When do we have our next class in Home Reading according to our timetable?
4. They met when they were taking their entrance exams. He lent her his spare pen. When they entered our faculty they both got into one group. Now they are best friends and she helps him with his pronunciation – they listen to dialogues, practise their sounds and intonation.
5. Our hostel is ten minutes' walk from the university. (= Our hostel is a ten-minute walk from the university.)
6. He had to take a lot of extra classes and learn by heart not to fall behind the group.
7. You didn't take notes at the lecture on Psychology again! You are so lazy and slap-dash! You must hang on the teacher's every word.
8. Take your group register and hand in your record books to the dean's office.
9. Will you take a preliminary course at the beginning of July to improve your knowledge?
10. He does well in English, but his speech lacks fluency.
11. – Why does he sit up late every evening? – He learns German. He wants to try to translate from German. He may be able to do it.
12. At the seminar on Linguistics the teacher told us that all the students had to do some research work.
13. You stayed away from several classes in Phonetics without a good excuse, didn't you? When are you going to catch up with the group and get rid of your mistakes?
14. Did we have to translate orally or in writing? (= Were we to translate...).
15. Let's get down to business. Today we are asking questions about the text and acting out the dialogue on page forty-four. Who wants to begin? Take your time. Do it on your own.
16. Today we'll finish the lesson earlier than usual. Let's do a test. Leave a margin on the left-hand side. Number your sentences, please. I hope you'll make fewer mistakes in it than you made in your last one. You may go home when you put your names on your papers and give them to me. Don't cheat, work on your own.
17. Any problems? Don't all answer at once. One at a time, please. Let's take a look at it together and see if we can figure it out. That'll do. Let's move on now. Let's quiet down now. Let's ask questions to this sentence.

## KEY 5

1. Johnny **begged** his mother to give him another glass of juice
2. The lady **offered** Mary some more salad.
3. The teacher **reminded** the children that it's never too late to learn.
4. Wendy **promised her** mother to dust the furniture the next day.  
Wendy promised her mother she would dust the furniture the next day.
5. The officer **ordered** Bill to put the knife on the floor and not to say a word.
6. Father **suggested** having a picnic on Saturday.  
Their father suggested they (should) have a picnic on Saturday.
7. Paul **denied** he had ever been to that place before.
8. Mrs Roberts **wanted to know** if Harry was playing golf that day.
9. Meg **complained** to her cousin that her children never stopped running and shouting.
10. Mike **wondered** whose car that was and **added** that it looked **very** strange.

1. – Why are you so sad? – I have a headache. I have been shopping for too long. – Did you buy anything? – A three-piece suit and a tie to match.
2. - I had to drop in at the baker's on the way home. – So did I. We had run out of bread.
3. I don't want to put on either a hat or kerchief on such a fine spring morning.
4. – I suggest going to the ladies' wear department. I want a skirt and a blouse in pastel shades. – And I want to buy an evening velvet dress.
5. – She can't afford this beige silk suit. It's too expensive. – She can buy it on credit. It's becoming to her and fits her perfectly.
6. I'd like to buy leather shoes and not suede ones. They are more practical and wear better. No wonder they are in great demand.
7. She has good taste in clothes. I have never seen her badly-dressed.
8. You should make this skirt yourself. It will be much cheaper.
9. All the casual clothes are here. Choose and try them on. The prices are reasonable.
10. Why do you still have your dressing gown and slippers on? I see you aren't in a hurry. And the performance starts at seven sharp.
- 11.- Have you been to the food shop? – Yes, and I've also bought the latest newspaper on the newsstand. – Where is Mom? – She has also gone shopping. She wants some buttons and undies.
12. I have never worn pyjamas. At home I wear a T-shirt and shorts.
13. When I saw him he was wearing dark-blue jeans, a dark-grey striped pullover and trainers.
14. These leather gloves don't go with your new hat. Besides, they are tight on you. What size gloves do you wear?
15. - I wonder where my money is? – I've seen it on the small table in the sitting room. – I want to buy high-heeled court shoes with a tapered toe. They are in fashion now.  
– How much are they? Let me give them to you for your birthday. – You'd better give me a silver chain or French perfume.
16. The doctor said she wouldn't get better until she kept to a diet. She weighs 70 kilos.
17. She made her new trousers all day yesterday. She said that she would have finished them by the weekend.
18. Scarcely had we entered the footwear department when I saw these sandals. Unfortunately they didn't have my size.
19. He paid in cash, took his shopping and left.
20. She has been married since last year. Her husband is six years older than her.

## KEY 6

### 1.

1. The floor in the house **is washed** every other day. Mrs Simpson **washes** it herself.
2. The document **arrived** at 5 o'clock yesterday. It **was translated** by Miss Osborn at once.
3. She told us that he **had had** a car accident a week before and **had been taken** to hospital.
4. He says that I **will be invited** to take part in the next conference too.
5. The boy told us that his grandparents **had died**.
6. I was sure that I **was being followed**. When I **came** out I **saw** two suspicious-looking people. I **passed** them by but when I **turned** round the people **had disappeared**.
7. I can't scan the texts for you now, my computer **is being used**. They said it **would be** free in an hour.
8. I **haven't been** to your place for a long time. Now I see it **has changed**. The rooms **have been redecorated** and a new suite of kitchen furniture **has been bought**.
9. The car must **be repaired** as soon as possible.
  - They promise that everything **will have been done** by the weekend.
10. If I **finish** earlier tomorrow we **will eat** out together.

### 2.

1. Do you have spare time today? Let's go to the opera house. I haven't been there for ages. It has recently been restored and they say it has changed out of all recognition. It will take us about half an hour to get there by bus. The bus stop is five minutes' walk from the building of the theatre.
2. I had a strange feeling that I was being followed. On the crossroads I turned round, but I only saw some passers-by who were going on the pavement in the direction of the subway. When I turned round again they had disappeared.
3. They decided to put up at the hotel "Rossiya". The next day they went sightseeing. Moscow made a great impression on them. They were especially interested in historical monuments to famous people.
4. It was the rush hour. Even on the outskirts the traffic was much heavier than usual. Generally I go to work by tram 17 and then change to bus 4. But yesterday all the trams were overcrowded and I couldn't get on. I saw my neighbour at the stop. "I can't give you a lift, my car is being repaired", he informed me. "When will you ride in your new car?" he wondered. "I am just learning to drive. I hope I will have got my driving licence by next month," I explained.
5. Excuse me, how can I get to the university? I am a stranger here and I think I am out of my way.
  - It's not far from here. Walk one block down this street and turn right on the crossroads. You will see the building of the university on the left. You won't miss it.
6. Be more careful when you go to school, observe the traffic rules. If you have to cross the street use the crossings. First look to the left, then to the right. If there are traffic lights, wait till the light changes to green.
7. He complained that he had got stuck in the traffic jam the day before and had been late for work.
8. By three o'clock he will have been learning this dialogue for half an hour already. It must be learned by tomorrow.
9. He had to lock all the doors and windows in the house himself, didn't he?
10. She suggested he should buy these grey shoes to match his new three-piece suit. He tried them on and said they were tight on him.
11. Many new country houses have been built in our village since you left.
12. He has a headache, he has been writing his essay for too long. He should have a break and take a rest.
13. We can go on foot, but if you are pressed for time we shall take a taxi.

## REVISION EXAMINATION TEST

### Ex. 1. Put the verb in brackets into the correct form.

1. He (to travel) since he (to come) of age. He already (to be) to twelve countries.
2. When he (to enter) the room it was full of people, everybody (to dance).
3. Hardly we (to get) down to business when the door (to open) and Jim (to appear).
4. When I looked in I (to see) that the students already (to write) the dictation and (to take) a rest.
5. If he (to return) earlier tomorrow we (to go) shopping.
6. The spring just (to set) in and look – the snow (to turn) to slush.
7. We were sure that she (to fail) her exam in Literature the next week.
8. I think he (to finish) redecorating by next Friday.
9. The new block of flats still (to build) across the street, only five storeys (to build) so far.
10. Don't come at seven, I still (to sleep) at this time. I never (to get) up so early.
11. Hush! I (to hear) some noise. Somebody (to move) upstairs.
12. You (to ask) this question at your tomorrow's exam. They always (to ask) students about it.
13. Next month they (to study) French for two years already.
14. He was very tired. He (to work) at his report all day.
15. I wonder when you (to start) dieting. It's high time you lost some weight.

### Ex. 2. Change into reported speech, using the following verbs:

*to explain, to complain, to wonder, to ask, to doubt, to remind, to beg, to wish, to add, to promise, to tell, to say.*

1. "I have never met this strange man before," said my friend to me.
2. "Don't forget to switch off the light when you leave, Jake," said the mother.
3. "I'm not sure that they went straight to the station yesterday," said the landlady to us.
4. "Where are my glasses?" said Jean.
5. "Don't pick up the receiver. I'll do it myself," said the police officer.
6. "I'll give up smoking tomorrow, Mother," said Mike.
7. "He eats like a pig," said Sheila to her girlfriend.
8. "Leave me alone, please!" she said to him.
9. "Did you throw the chewing-gum on the floor?" said Miss Luke to Sue.
10. "Good-bye, children! Have a nice day!" said the teacher.

### Ex. 3. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form.

1. He (study) Spanish since he (become) twelve. He (speak) Spanish correctly and fluently.
2. When he (appear) in the yard an hour ago the children (fight) with snowballs.
3. If she (fail) her exam tomorrow she (re-sit) it in autumn.
4. Listen! I (hear) some music. Lucy (play) the piano downstairs.
5. When they (enter) the hall yesterday the meeting (begin) already. At that moment the first question (discuss).
6. No sooner the bell (ring) than the children (run) out of the room.
7. I wonder when she (learn) to cook herself at last.
8. When I looked into the classroom I saw that the students already (get) down to business.
9. Next week they (travel) about Europe for three months already.
10. At this time tomorrow I (swim) in the lake or (lie) in the sun.
11. She promised that she (buy) something tasty for supper.
12. I hope you (invite) to this party too. I don't want to go without you, I (know) nobody there.
13. He was very upset. He (translate) the poem for an hour but (not, make) much progress yet.
14. They say they (sell) all the books by next Monday.
15. You can't make a call. The line (engage).

**Ex. 4. Change into reported speech with the verbs: say, wonder, want to know, ask, greet, thank, offer, suggest, remind, refuse, confess, explain, promise, wish, add.**

Mike called his friend last Saturday. "Hello, Jack. What are you doing now?" he said. "Let's go to the dance club tonight. They have a good show there." "I can't go," said Jack. "I must write my paper on History." "Are you joking?" said Mike. "You sat up late at it every evening last week." "But I haven't finished it yet", said Jack. "Can I help you with your paper?" said Mike. "Thanks," said Jack. "Go to the hostel and take my book about Peter the Great from Steve." "OK, I'll do it," said Mike. "Have a good time at the club," said Jack. "Bye!"

**Ex. 5. Choose the correct form.**

1. They arrived ... Boston ... a dull rainy day.  
a) at b) on c) in d) to
2. We have ... exams in winter than in summer.  
a) fewer b) less c) lesser d) smaller
3. The hostess ... us a delicious apple pie.  
a) suggested b) proposed c) offered d) offered
4. He slipped on the icy path and ... down.  
a) fallen b) fell c) falled d) felt
5. He had ... his story from beginning to end.  
a) repeat b) to repeat c) revise d) revising
6. I am the greatest, ... I?  
a) amn't b) am not c) am d) aren't
7. She's never ridden a motorbike before, ... she?  
a) is b) has c) does d) was
8. Let's not wait ... him, I don't want to be late ... the lesson.  
a) to b) at c) for d) –
9. He's been invited to ... . They are having a party.  
a) the Clarks b) the Clark c) the Clark's d) Clarks
10. They like going for long walks. So ... Mike.  
a) is b) likes c) do d) does
11. Buy some bread ... the food shop ... your way ... home.  
a) on b) in c) at d) –
12. What ... sights did you see there?  
a) other b) the other c) another d) else
13. We can't ... him. He is ... awful.  
a) to forget b) forgive c) forgiving d) forgave  
a) so b) such c) as d) a very
14. His car is faster than ... .  
a) her b) hers c) her one d) hers one
15. You'd better ... at home today, you look ... .  
a) stay b) to stay c) stayed d) leave  
a) bad b) badly c) worse d) worse than usually.
16. She is ... girl I have ever seen.  
a) the most pretty b) a most pretty c) the prettyist d) the prettiest
17. – ... I do the whole exercise in writing?  
– No, you .... not. You ... do only half of it.  
a) can b) may c) must d) need
18. Will three ... be enough?  
a) kilos of potatos b) kiloes of potatoes c) kilos of potatoes d) kiloes of potatos
19. She never listens ... the radio ... the morning.  
a) on b) in c) at d) to
20. She goes ... once a month.  
a) in this hairdresser's b) to this hairdresser's c) in this hairdressers' d) at this hairdresser

21. Here ... the money. Put ... in some safe place.  
 a) is b) are c) has d) does  
 a) them b) they c) it d) its
22. Why are you unusually ... today. What ... you?  
 a) quite b) quit c) quits d) quiet  
 a) is happened to b) was happened with c) has happened to d) happened with
23. ... always a lot of snow in the forest in winter.  
 a) It is b) There is c) There are d) This is
24. All her clothes ... in the wardrobe.  
 a) are b) is c) has d) have
25. He had to give up smoking, ... he?  
 a) hadn't b) had c) didn't d) did
26. Neither his friends nor he ... this music.  
 a) likes b) like c) don't like d) doesn't like
27. Nobody knew about it, ...?  
 a) did he b) didn't he c) did they d) did anybody
28. We wondered whose ... .  
 a) bag was it b) bag it was c) was this bag d) bag is it
29. What ... sultry weather we are having today!  
 a) the b) a c) an d) –
30. No one could do it better, ... .  
 a) could he b) could they c) did they d) couldn't they
31. What ... has he told you about?  
 a) else b) other c) another d) the other
32. A beautiful thick carpet ... on the floor.  
 a) lay b) lays c) laid d) lied
33. There ... people at the lecture today.  
 a) are little b) is little c) are few d) is few
34. He doesn't want to play classical music. He ... prefer to be a jazz musician.  
 a) might b) may be c) ought d) has to
35. He ... revise these rules more thoroughly if he wants to write his test well.  
 a) ought b) should c) would better d) better
36. He should ... at home for another week.  
 a) stay b) to stay c) leave d) staying
37. He works ... at his graduation thesis.  
 a) hard b) hardly c) heavy d) a lot of
38. The university is ... from my place.  
 a) a half an hour's walk b) in an hour and a half's walk  
 c) half an hour's walk d) hour and a half's walk
39. Last month he ... ill and lagged behind the group.  
 a) felt b) fell c) had fallen d) caught
40. It's ... here today. Where ... everybody?  
 a) so quiet b) such quiet c) so quite d) quit  
 a) are b) is c) do d) does
41. ... Thames is ... most important river in ... Great Britain.  
 a) the b) a c) an d) –
42. When I saw my colleague he was ... the boss.  
 a) talking b) speaking to c) discussing to d) saying to
43. His hair ... too long. He should have ... cut.  
 a) are b) is c) has d) do  
 a) it b) them c) they d) its



# PHONETICS

## ENGLISH TO JAZZ

### UNIT 5. EATING OUT

#### ITEM 1. WHAT WOULD YOU LIKE TO EAT?

- What would you like to eat?
- I think, I'll have a steak.
- A steak? Rare, medium, perhaps, well done?
- I'd like a steak. I'd like it rare.
- Rare, medium, well done.  
Rare, medium, well done.
- I'd like a steak. I'd like it medium.
- I'd like it medium. I'd like a steak.
- I'd like it well done.  
I'd like it well done.
- The steak is excellent. It's delicious.  
Delicious and excellent. Excellent. Delicious. Excellent.

#### ITEM 2. MASHED POTATOES

- Which vegetables are you gonna have: potatoes, beans or some peas?  
Beans or potatoes? Potatoes or beans?
- I'd like potatoes. Mashed potatoes. I'd like mashed potatoes. A lot of potatoes.

#### ITEM 3. I HAVEN'T DECIDED YET

- What are you gonna have for dessert?
- I haven't decided yet.
- What are you gonna drink?
- I haven't decided yet.
- What are you gonna have for lunch?
- I haven't decided yet.
- Not yet. Not yet. I haven't decided yet.

#### ITEM 4. PLEASE, PASS THE SALT

- Please, pass the water.
- Here you are.
- Please, pass the salt.
- There you are.
- Please, pass the wine.
- Here it is. Here it is.
- Please, pass the pepper.
- Yes, sure. Here it is.
- Wine and water.
- Sure. Here they are. Sure. Certainly.  
Here they are. Sure. Certainly. Sure.  
There it is. Certainly. Here it is.

#### ITEM 5. ENGLISH MUFFIN

- What kind of toast would you like?
- What do you have?
- We have white toast, rye toast, whole wheat. We have English muffins.  
White toast and English muffins.  
English muffins, wheat, rye, white.  
English muffins, wheat, rye, white.
- I'll have a wheat toast.  
I'll have a wheat toast.  
I'll have it. I'll have it.
- OK
- And I'll have an English muffin.
- OK

#### ITEM 6. HOW DO YOU WANT YOUR EGGS?

- How do you want your eggs?
- Sunny side up, over easy.  
Sunny side up, over easy.
- How do you want your coffee?
- Black.
- How do you want your coffee?
- Black.

### UNIT 6. TALKING ABOUT WEATHER

#### ITEM 1. NICE DAY TODAY

- It's a nice day today, isn't it?
- It certainly is. It's a beautiful day.
- Nice day today, isn't it? Nice day. Nice day. Nice day today, isn't it?
- Yes, it is. Clear, blue sky. Yes, it is.  
Not a cloud in the sky.

#### ITEM 2. IT'S COLD OUTSIDE

- It's cold outside. It's cold. Cold.  
Cold outside.
- Bitter, bitter, bitter cold outside.
- I'm freezing. Let's go inside.
- Let's go inside. I'm freezing too.
- It's cold outside. It's cold. Cold.  
Cold outside.
- Bitter, bitter, bitter cold outside.
- I'm freezing. Let's go inside.
- Let's go inside. I'm freezing too.

ITEM 3. HOT, MUGGY DAY

- Hot, muggy day. It's much too humid and it's much too hot.
- It sure is. It sure is.

ITEM 4. IT LOOKS LIKE RAIN

- Is it gonna rain? Is it gonna rain? It looks like rain. It looks like rain.
- I hope not.
- Do you think it's gonna be a nice day?
- I hope so.  
That's what the weatherman says.
- Is it gonna rain? Is it gonna rain? It looks like rain. It looks like rain.
- I hope not.
- Do you think it's gonna be a nice day?
- I hope so.  
That's what the weatherman says.

**UNIT 7.**

**INVITING, ACCEPTING & REFUSING**

ITEM 1. I'D LIKE TO INVITE YOU TO A RECEPTION FRIDAY NIGHT

- I'd like to invite you to a reception at my house Friday night. Can you come?
- I'd be glad to come. Thank you.
- I'd like to invite. I'd like to invite you. I'd like to invite you to my house Friday night. Can you come? Can you come?
- I'd be glad to come. Thank you.

ITEM 2. WOULD YOU LIKE TO JOIN US?

- Would you like to join us for dinner tonight at the Steak House?
- I'd love to. But I'm afraid, I can't. I'm leaving tonight.
- Would you like to join us? Would you like to join us for dinner tonight?
- I'd love to. But I'm afraid, I can't. I'd love to, but ...

ITEM 3. LET'S HAVE LUNCH TODAY

- Let's have lunch today.
- OK.
- Let's have dinner tonight.
- All right.
- Let's have lunch together some day.
- OK.
- You'll call me or I'll call you?
- I'll call you.  
When is the best time to call?
- I'm usually home after seven. I'm usually home after seven.

ITEM 4.

I FEEL LIKE GOING TO THE DISCO TONIGHT

- How about going to the disco tonight?
- That sounds great. That sounds like fun. Sounds good. Sounds great. Sounds like fun. I'll call you.
- I feel like going to the disco tonight.
- I do too. Let's go.
- I don't feel like studying tonight.
- Neither do I. Let's go.

ITEM 5.

CAN YOU COME OVER FOR DINNER TONIGHT

- Can you come over for dinner tonight?
- I'd like that very much.  
I'd like that very much.
- Can you come over for a drink tomorrow?
- I'd love to. I'd love to.
- Can you come over?  
Can you come over?  
Can you come over for a drink tonight?
- I'd like that very much. I'd love to. I'd love to. I'd like that very much.
- Can you come over for lunch tomorrow?
- I wish I could. But I'm afraid I can't.
- That's too bad.
- I really wish I could.  
Can I take a raincheck?
- A raincheck?
- A raincheck.
- Sure. You are welcome.
- I wish I could, but I'm afraid I can't. I really wish I could, but I'm afraid I can't.
- That's too bad. Too bad. That's too bad.

ITEM 6. I'M FAMISHED

- I'm famished. Are you hungry?
- Yes, I am very hungry.
- I'd like to take you to a good Chinese restaurant.
- Sounds great. Thank you.

ITEM 7. I'M SO HUNGRY, I COULD EAT A COW

- I'm starving. How about you?
- Yeah. I'm so hungry, I could eat a cow.
- Good. Let's go to a very nice place. A very nice place. Let's go. Let's go. It's my treat this time.
- It sounds great. It sounds good. Thank you.

## UNIT 8. APOLOGIZING

### ITEM 1. I'M SORRY, I'M LATE

- I'm sorry.
- That's all right.
- I'm very sorry.
- That's quite all right.
- I'm sorry, I'm late.
- That's all right.
- I'm really sorry.
- That's quite all right.
- I'm terribly sorry.
- Never mind. That's all right.
- Don't worry about it.
- Think nothing of it.
- I'm sorry. I'm very sorry. I'm really sorry. I'm terribly sorry.

### ITEM 2.

#### I'M AFRAID, I OWE YOU AN APOLOGY

- I'm afraid, I owe you an apology.
- What for?  
There's really nothing to apologize for.
- I apologize for losing my temper.
- That's all right. Don't worry about it.  
No problem.
- I'm sorry.  
I didn't mean to hurt your feelings.
- That's all right. No problem.  
Don't worry about it.

### ITEM 3. EXCUSE ME

- Excuse me.
- That's all right.
- Excuse me for a moment, please.
- That's all right.
- Excuse me for being late.
- Never mind. That's OK.
- Sorry about yesterday.
- Don't worry. It's OK.  
Think nothing about it.
- Sorry, I forgot to call.
- Sorry, I forgot to tell you.
- Sorry, I forgot to write you.
- Sorry, I forgot to inform you. Sorry, I forgot to answer your letter.
- Think nothing of it. Don't worry about it

### ITEM 4. IT'S ALL MY FAULT

- It's all my fault. I shouldn't have done it.
- Don't worry about it. It's all right.
- I'm terribly sorry. It's all my fault.
- Don't worry. You couldn't help it. It doesn't matter.
- I'm sorry.
- It's not your fault.

### ITEM 5. I SHOULDN'T HAVE DONE IT

- I'm sorry, I did it.  
I shouldn't have done it.  
I'm sorry, I said it.  
I shouldn't have said it.  
I'm sorry, I wrote it.  
I shouldn't have written it.
- That's all right. It's not important.  
Don't worry.  
You couldn't help it. It doesn't matter.  
Honestly, it really doesn't matter.
- I'm sorry, I didn't do it.  
I should have done it.
- That's all right. Never mind. It really doesn't matter. Don't worry about it. It's not your fault.
- I'm sorry, I didn't call you.  
I should have called you.
- That's all right. It doesn't matter.

### Ex. 1 Respond to the phrases

1. Can you come over to dinner tonight?
2. It looks like rain.
3. Please, pass the water.
4. I'm afraid I owe you an apology.
5. Nice day today, isn't it?
6. How do you want your coffee?
7. You'll call me or I'll call you?
8. I'm sorry I didn't mean to hurt you.
9. Bitter cold outside.
10. When is the best time to call?
11. Can I take a raincheck?
12. Hot muggy day.
13. How do you like your steak? Rare, medium or well done?
14. It's my treat this time.
15. Excuse me for a moment, please.
16. Which vegetables would you like?
17. I shouldn't have said it.

## Ex. 2 Translate into English

- Боюсь, я должен перед вами извиниться.
  - За что? Извиняться совсем не за что.
  - Я прошу прощения за то, что опоздал.
  - Пустяки! Не беспокойтесь об этом.
  - Что вы будете есть?
  - Я бы взял бифштекс. Я бы хотел прожаренный.
  - Бифштекс превосходный.
  - Что вы будете на десерт?
  - Я ещё не решил. Передайте вино, пожалуйста.
  - Да, конечно, вот оно.
2. - Это моя вина. Не надо было мне звонить ему.
- Не волнуйся. Ты не мог поступить иначе.
  - Ты очень добр. Большое спасибо за понимание. Я ценю это.
  - Все в порядке, не думай об этом.
  - Как насчёт того, чтобы сходить на дискотеку сегодня вечером? Совсем не хочется учиться.
  - Здорово! Я тебе позвоню.
3. - Простите меня, я не хотел вас обидеть.
- Все в порядке. Нет проблем.
  - Мне действительно очень жаль. Не надо было говорить это. Извините, что вышел из себя.
  - Это не ваша вина, что вы не могли сдержаться.
  - Вы были ужасно добры. Большое спасибо за беспокойство.
  - Никакого беспокойства. Был рад помочь.
  - Боюсь, мне пора идти. Не пропадайте.
  - Конечно. До свидания, желаю хорошего дня.
  - Спасибо, вам тоже. Передавайте привет жене.
4. - Жаркий, влажный день. Похоже, будет дождь.
- Надеюсь, что нет.
  - Вы думаете, будет хороший день?
  - Надеюсь, что да. Так говорят синоптики.
  - Я умираю с голоду. А вы?
  - Да, я очень голодный.
  - Я хотел бы вас пригласить в очень хороший китайский ресторан. Я угощаю.
5. - Вы сможете прийти на обед сегодня вечером?
- Я бы с удовольствием, но боюсь, что не смогу. Я уезжаю сегодня вечером.
  - Очень жаль.
  - Мне действительно хотелось бы. Может быть в другой раз?
  - Конечно, пожалуйста.
  - Мне жаль.
  - Ничего. Всё в порядке.
6. - Холодно на улице. Я замёрзла.
- Я тоже замёрзла. Давай зайдём в дом.
  - Я очень хочу есть. Я бы съела стейк.
  - Какие овощи ты будешь: картошку, фасоль или горошек?
  - Я буду пюре. Передай, пожалуйста, соль.
  - Вот. Какой кофе ты хочешь?
  - Чёрный.
7. - Хороший день сегодня, не правда ли?
- Да, конечно. Чудесный день. Чистое голубое небо. Ни облачка.
  - Я бы хотел пригласить вас на приём в моём доме в пятницу вечером. Вы сможете прийти?
  - Буду очень рад. Спасибо за приглашение. У вас новый дом?
  - Нет, мы просто сделали ремонт.
  - Хорошо сделано. Дом выглядит великолепно.
  - Спасибо. Вы очень добры.
8. - Давай пообедаем как-нибудь вместе.
- Хорошо.
  - Давай пообедаем сегодня.
  - Я бы с удовольствием, но боюсь я не смогу. Мне очень жаль.
  - Всё в порядке, не беспокойся. Как-нибудь в другой раз.
  - Ты позвонишь мне или я тебе?
  - Я позвоню. Когда лучше позвонить?
  - Я обычно дома после семи.
  - Боюсь, мне пора идти. Не пропадай.
  - Конечно. Пока. Увидимся.

## II. SHIP OR SHEEP?

Do the tasks. Learn the dialogues by heart.

### UNIT 1. [i:] SHEEP

#### IN A CAFE

**Christina:** 'What would you 'like to `eat, , Peter? The 'cheese 'sandwiches are the , cheapest.

**Peter:** →Er, a `cheese .sandwich, , please, Chri , stina.

**Christina:** Ja , nine? 'Would you 'like a 'beef , sandwich or a , cheese sandwich?

**Janine:** A `cheese .sandwich, , please.

**Peter:** 'What about `you, Chri , stina? 'Would you 'like , cheese or , beef?

**Waitress:** 'Are you 'all 'ready to , order? 'What would you 'like to , eat?

**Christina:** We'll 'have 'one 'beef , sandwich, 'two 'cheese , sandwiches and, →mmm, 'tea for , me.

**Janine:** 'Tea for 'me `too, , please.

**Peter:** , Yes, 'make that `three teas, , please.

**Waitress:** `One , beef sandwich, `two , cheese sandwiches and 'three , teas.

### UNIT 2. [ɪ] SHIP

#### Choose the correct word.

1. He wants a ship / sheep for his birthday.
2. That's a very small bin / bean.
3. Look at these chicks / cheeks.
4. That's a chip / cheap machine.
5. What a high hill / heel.
6. Don't eat that pill / peel.

#### THREE INTERESTING FILMS

**Bill:** 'Good `evening, Mrs , Lee.

**Gina:** 'Is 'Kim , in?

**Bill:** 'Is he 'coming to the `cinema, Mrs , Lee? It's the 'Children's `Film Festival.

**Mrs Lee:** 'Kim's , ill.

**Bill:** `Here he , is!

**Gina:** `Hi, , Kim!

**Kim:** `Hi, →Gina! `Hi, →Bill!

**Bill:** , Kim, we've 'got these 'three 'free , tickets | to 'see 'three 'prize-winning , films for `children!

**Mrs Lee:** , Listen, , Kim

**Kim:** 'Is it , interesting?

**Gina:** 'We 'think it , is. , First there's a 'short 'film about go'rillas and 'chimpan'zees in , Africa, and...

**Bill:** ... , then the , next film is a'bout the 'six 'best O'lympic gym , nastic competitions, and , then...

**Gina:** ... , then it's the , big film – 'The 'History of 'English , Cricket'.

**Kim:** ^Cricket!

**Bill:** It's a te'rrific , film.

**Mrs Lee:** If you're `ill, , Kim

**Gina:** It would be a 'pity to `miss , it.

**Mrs Lee:** 'Now , listen, you kids

**Bill:** And it be'gins in 'fifty , minutes.

**Mrs Lee:** `Kim!

**Kim:** , Quick! Or we'll 'miss the be'ginning of the go , rilla film!

### UNIT 3. [e] PEN

#### Choose the correct word.

1. Give me another pin / pen, please.
2. There's a pig / peg over there.
3. I buy them in tins / tens.
4. I'll just sit / set the alarm clock on the shelf.
5. He needs a new disk / desk.
6. She'll just pick / peck at her food.

#### FRIENDS

**Adele:** `Hi, ,Emma! `Hi, ,Ben! He ,llo, Emily! He `llo, ,Eddie! →Hi, everybody!

**Everybody except Kevin:** `Hi, A ,dele!

**Emily:** 'Nice to 'see you a `gain, A ,dele. ,Kevin, 'this is A ,dele. A ,dele, 'this is ,Kevin.

**Adele:** `Hi, ,Kevin. 'Are you 'listening to the 'Red 'Hot ,Chilli Peppers? It's 'terribly ,loud.

**Kevin:** ,Yes ... Is `that ,better? (uh-huh) Are 'you a 'friend of ,Emma's?

**Adele:** ,Yes.

**Kevin:** 'Emma 'said she had a `friend ,called A ,dele.

**Eddie:** 'Help your'self to 'Mexican `food, A ,dele. It's on the 'kitchen ,bench.

**Emily:** And there's 'French bread on the ,shelf.

**Ben:** 'Can I 'get you a `drink, A ,dele?

**Adele:** `Yes, ,thanks, ,Ben. Some lemo ,nade with a 'bit of 'ice in ,it.

**Emma:** 'Have you 'met my 'friend A `dele yet, ,Kevin?

**Kevin** ,Yes. I've just ,met her. She's 'very ,friendly.

**Ben:** 'How did you 'spend your `holiday, A ,dele?

**Adele:** I 'went to 'South A ,merica with my 'best ,friend ,Kerrie.

**Everybody;** ,Well!

**Emma:** We're 'all ,jealous.

**Eddie:** 'Was it `expensive?

**Adele:** 'Not ,very. But I 'spent ,everything. I 'haven't 'any 'money ,left.

### UNIT 4. [æ] MAN

1. I've bought a new pen / pan.
2. Did you see the men / man?
3. Did you say 'end' / 'and'?
4. I like the feta / fatter cheese.
5. Don't pet / pat the dog.
6. These are bad / bed clothes.

#### A BAD HIJACKER

**Ann:** `Alice! Per'haps that ,passenger | is a `hijacker!

**Alice:** 'Which ,passenger, Ann? 'That 'sad 'man with the `camera? He's 'wearing 'black 'slacks and a ,jacket.

**Ann:** `No. 'That ,fat lady | with the 'big 'black ,handbag | in her 'left ,hand.

**Alice:** 'Is she 'standing 'next to the `lavatory?

**Ann:** ,Yes. She's ,travelling | to 'Amster ,dam.

**Alice:** You're `mad, Anne. I 'don't under `stand.

**Ann:** You ,see, 'when she 'went `into the ,lavatory | she 'didn't ,have | that 'handbag in her ,hand, and `now she's ...

**Fat Lady:** `Everybody ,stand! 'I'm a `hijacker. And in 'this hand'bag I →have a ...

## UNIT 5. [ʌ] CUP

### Choose the correct word.

1. What a dirty cap / cup.
2. This hat / hut is too small.
3. There's a black bag / bug on the table.
4. They live in a mad / mud house.
5. I hang / hung my coat on the door.
6. The children ran / run quickly

### SHE DOESN'T LOVE HIM

**Jasmine:** 'Honey, 'why are you 'so \sad? 'Honey, 'why are you 'so un\happy?  
I 'don't under\stand.

**Duncan:** You 'don't \love me, \Jasmine.

**Jasmine:** But \Duncan, I 'love you 'very \much!

**Duncan:** 'That's un\true, \Jasmine. You 'love my \cousin.

**Jasmine:** \Justin?

**Duncan:** 'No, his \brother.

**Jasmine:** \Dudley?

**Duncan:** →No. 'Stop 'being, \funny, \Jasmine. 'Not\that \one. The \other brother, \Hunter.  
You 'think 'he's \lovely and 'I'm unat\tractive.

**Jasmine:** 'Duncan, 'that's 'utter \rubbish!

**Duncan:** And 'Hunter 'loves \you \too.

**Jasmine:** 'No, he \doesn't

**Duncan:** 'Yes, he \does.

**Jasmine:** \Duncan, 'just \once 'last 'month I 'had 'lunch with \Hunter. You 'mustn't \worry.  
I 'like \your company 'much \better than Hunter's. \Hunter's ...

**Duncan:** 'Oh, →just 'shut \up, Jasmine!

**Jasmine:** But \honey, I 'think you're \wonderful.

**Duncan:** →Oh, 'shut \up, Jasmine.

**Jasmine:** 'Now 'that's e\nough! You're 'just \jealous, Duncan. \You shut up!

## UNIT 6. [ɑ:] HEART

### Choose the correct word.

1. He's broken my hat / hut / heart.
2. That's a bad cat / cut / cart.
3. I gave him a cap / cup / carp.
4. There's a mouse in this bun / barn.
5. Why don't you come / calm down?
6. I don't like Patty's / parties.

### AT A PARTY

**Alana:** 'What a 'marvellous \party this is! I'm 'having 'so much \fun, Margaret.

**Margaret:** 'Where's your \glass, A \lana?

**Alana:** \Here you \are. \Thanks. 'That's e\nough.

**Martin:** A \lana! \Margaret! 'Come into the \garden. 'Tara \Darling and 'Markus  
\Marsh are 'dancing on the \grass.

**Margaret:** 'In the \dark?

**Martin:** They're 'dancing under the \stars.

**Alana:** Fan\stastic! And 'Bart 'Jackson is 'playing his gui\`tar.

**Margaret:** 'Just 'look at \Tara! She 'can't \dance but she 'looks 'very \smart.

**Martin:** 'Look at \Markus. 'What a 'fabulous \dancer!

**Alana:** 'What an at\tractive 'couple they \are! 'Let's 'take a \photograph of them.

## UNIT 7. [p] CLOCK

### Choose the correct word.

1. What a pretty little cat / cot.
2. He tried to put his head in a sack / sock.
3. The tap / top was made of metal.
4. Which Pat / pot do you want?
5. I liked the baddie / body in that film.
6. Write in black / block letters.

## TV ADVERTISEMENT FOR 'ONWASH'

**Voice A:** 'What's 'wrong with `you, Mrs Bloggs?

**Mrs Bloggs:** 'What's `wrong with ,me? I 'want a , holiday | from this 'horrible 'job of ↑washing , socks!

**Voice B:** 'Buy a 'bottle of ` `Onwash, Mrs Bloggs!

**Voice C:** , Onwash is 'so , soft and , strong.

**Voice D:** You 'don't 'want 'lots of 'hot 'water with ^Onwash!

**Voice A:** It's 'not a 'long , job with ^Onwash.

**Voice B:** 'Use 'Onwash , often.

**Voice C:** You 'won't be , sorry when you've 'got ^Onwash.

**Voice D:** 'Everybody 'wants , Onwash.

**Everybody:** ^Onwash is 'so , popular!

## UNIT 8. [ɔ:] BALL

### Choose the correct word.

1. My doctor doesn't like these spots / sports.
2. These pots / ports are very dirty.
3. Look at that white cod / cord on the water.
4. Mr Smith was shot / short.
5. The lion walked towards Tom and Rod / roared.
6. I said, "What a / water dog."

## SPORTS REPORT FROM RADIO STATION 4

**Announcer:** This ^morning the 'Roarers , football team ar'rived 'back from , York.

'Laura , Short is our `sports re , porter, and 'she was at the , airport.

**Laura Short:** Good , morning, listeners. 'This is 'Laura , Short. 'All the 'footballers are 'walking to , wards me. 'Here's 'George , Ball, the , goalkeeper. Good `morning, George.

**George Ball:** Good , morning. 'Are you a re , porter?

**Laura Short:** , Yes, George. I'm 'Laura , Short from 'Radio 'Station , four. 'Tell us about the , football match with , York.

**George Ball:** →Well, it was , awful. We , lost. And the 'score was 'forty- , four, , four. But it 'wasn't `my fault, , Laura.

**Laura Short:** 'Whose 'fault , was it, George?

**George Ball:** The , forwards.

**Laura Short:** The , forwards?

**George Ball:** , Yes, the , forwards. They were 'always 'falling , over or 'losing the , ball!



## UNIT 9. [ʊ] BOOK

### Choose the correct word.

1. That cock / cook is very noisy.
2. Lock / look it up carefully.
3. He is my god / good father.
4. How do you spell 'cod' / 'could'?

### A LOST BOOK

**Mr Cook:** 'Could you 'tell me 'where you've 'put my , book, Bronwen?

**Mrs Cook:** 'Isn't it on the ^bookshelf?

**Mr Cook:** , No. The 'bookshelf is 'full of your , cookery books.

**Mrs Cook:** 'Then you should 'look in the `bedroom, , shouldn't you?

**Mr Cook:** 'I've , looked. 'You 'took that , book and , put it somewhere, , didn't you?

**Mrs Cook:** The 'living-´ room?

**Mr Cook:** , No, I've , looked. 'I'm 'going to 'put ↑all my 'books in a , box and , lock it!

**Mrs Cook:** , Look, John. It's on the `floor | 'next to your , foot.

**Mr Cook:** , Ah! , Good!

## UNIT 10. [u:] BOOT

### Choose the correct word.

1. Look / Luke, I want you to come here.
2. That's full / fool.
3. Did you say 'pull' / 'pool'?
4. That's a fullish / foolish skirt?

### THE TWO RUDEST STUDENTS IN THE SCHOOL

**Miss Luke:** 'Good after , noon, girls.

**Girls:** 'Good 'after `noon, Miss →Luke.

**Miss Luke:** 'This ^afternoon | we're 'going to 'learn 'how to 'cook , soup. 'Turn on your com , puters and 'look at 'unit 'twenty- , two.

**Lucy:** Ex `cuse me, Miss Luke.

**Miss Luke:** , Yes, Lucy?

**Lucy:** There's some , chewing gum | on your `shoe.

**Miss Luke:** 'Who 'threw their 'chewing gum on the , floor? 'Was it , you, Lucy?

**Lucy:** `No, Miss Luke. It was , Susan.

**Miss Luke:** ^Who?

**Lucy:** 'Susan , Duke.

**Susan:** It 'wasn't `me, stupid. It was , Julie.

**Julie:** It was `you!

**Susan:** It `wasn't me. 'My 'mouth's , full of chewing gum. `Look, Miss , Luke!

**Julie:** 'Stop 'pulling my , hair, Susan. It was `you!

**Susan:** , You!

**Julie:** , You!

**Miss Luke:** Ex , cuse me! If 'you 'two con'tinue with this , rudeness, you can 'stay after , school in'stead of 'going to the , pool.

## UNIT 11. [ɜ:] GIRL

### Choose the correct word.

1. That's a very small bed / bird.
2. He's got a lot of buns / burns.
3. That's a very long ward / word.
4. Why don't you walk / work faster?
5. She always wears short / shirt dresses.
6. His name's John or / er Thomas, I think.

## THE WORST NURSE

**Sir Herbert:** , Nurse!

**Colonel Burton:** , Nurse! 'I'm , thirsty!

**Sir Herbert:** ^Nurse! My `head hurts!

**Colonel Burton:** 'Nurse 'Sherman 'always 'wears such 'dirty , shirts.

**Sir Herbert:** He 'never a'rries at 'work , early.

**Colonel Burton:** 'He and ... →er ... 'Nurse , Turner | 'weren't at , work on , Thursday, , were they?

**Sir Herbert:** , No, they , weren't.

**Colonel Burton:** 'Nurse , Sherman | is the 'worst 'nurse in the , ward, , isn't he, Sir Herbert?

**Sir Herbert:** 'No, he `isn't, Colonel , Burton. He's the 'worst ^nurse in the `world!

## UNIT 12. [eɪ] MALE

### Choose the correct word.

1. This student has a very bad pen / pain.
2. Let's sit in the shed / shade.
3. Please give me some more pepper / paper.
4. The children were let / late out from school.
5. Her letter / later writing is very good.
6. Open the door and get / gate ready to leave.

## AT THE RAILWAY STATION

**Mr Grey:** 'This 'train's , late! 'I've been 'waiting 'here for `ages.

**Porter:** 'Which ^train?

**Mr Grey:** The 'eight eigh , teen | to , Baker Street.

**Porter:** The `eight eigh , teen? I'm a'fraid, you've 'made a , mistake, sir.

**Mr Grey:** A mis , take? My `timetable , says: `Baker Street , train – 'eight eigh , teen.

**Porter:** 'Oh, , no. The 'Baker Street 'train 'leaves at '8. 0 , 8.

**Mr Grey:** At '8. 0 , 8?

**Porter:** They 'changed the 'time-table at the 'end of , April. It's the 'first of `May to , day.

**Mr Grey:** ^Changed it? 'May I 'see the 'new `time- , table? 'What does it , say?

**Porter:** It , says: 'Baker Street , train – '8.0 , 8.

**Mr Grey:** 'Oh , no, you're , right. The `train .isn't , late. , I am.

## UNIT 13. [aɪ] FINE

### Choose the correct word.

1. I want a new cart / kite.
2. The old lady was darning / dining.
3. What a big star / sty!
4. She has a good laugh / life.
5. This leather's hard / hide.
6. Do you like pa / pie?

### HEIDI, CAROLINE AND NIGEL

**Heidi:** `Hi, ,Nigel.

**Nigel:** `Hi, ,Heidi. `Hi, ,Caroline. 'You're 'looking ,nice, Caroline. 'Would you 'like some 'iced  
`coffee, Caroline?

**Caroline:** `No ,thanks, ,Nigel. I'm 'busy ,typing. I have 'ninety-'nine 'pages to 'type by ,Friday.

**Nigel:** 'Never ,mind. 'Do you 'like ,motorbike riding, Caroline?

**Caroline:** `Sometimes. ... `oh ... my ,mobile! He ,llo! ... `Hi, ,Riley! `Mmmm! ... I'd 'like ,that.  
,Mmmm ... at ,five ... at the ,library ... it's 'nine'teen ,High Street. 'Bye→bye!

**Nigel:** 'Would you 'like to 'come 'riding with ,me to.night, ,Caroline?

**Caroline:** `Not to.night, ,Nigel. I'm 'going for a ,drive with ,Riley.

**Nigel:** 'What about ,Friday?

**Caroline:** `Friday? I'm 'going ,climbing with ,Miles.

**Nigel:** All ,right then. `Bye.

**Heidi:** `Caroline, 'Nigel's 'put 'something be'hind your com ,puter.

**Caroline:** 'Is it 'something ,nice, Heidi?

**Heidi:** ,No. It's a ,spider.

## UNIT 14. [ɔɪ] BOY

### Choose the correct word.

1. I found this corn / coin in the garden.
2. The little boy was bawling / boiling with anger.
3. Look! It's all / oil on the floor!
4. Aw / Oi! You've broken that glass.
5. He is a terrible bore / boy.
6. Did you put all / oil of it in the salad?

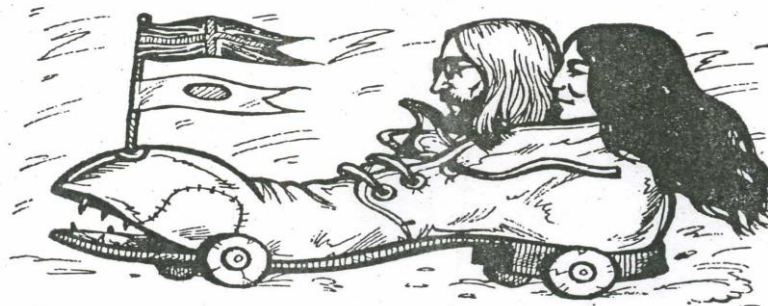
### JOYCE ROYAL'S ROLLS ROYCE

**Roy:** 'What a 'terrible `noise, Mrs Royal!

**Joyce:** 'Isn't it an ,noying, Roy? It's 'out of ,oil.

**Roy:** A 'Rolls ,Royce! 'Out of ,oil. And ,look! The 'water's `boiling! Per'haps you've 'spoilt the  
,motor. Or 'even des `troyed it. 'How disap ,pointing! It's 'such a 'beautiful 'Rolls `Royce! And a  
'Rolls 'Royce isn't a `toy!

**Joyce:** 'How disap ,pointing! I'll be 'late for my ap `pointment.



## UNIT 15. [aʊ] HOUSE

### Choose the correct word.

1. The bus drove into the car / cow.
2. There's a lot of grass / grouse near the farm.
3. Her bra / brow was white.
4. 'Ha!' / 'How!' he said loudly.
5. 'Ah!' / 'Ow!' he said, 'You hit me!'
6. Near the mountain there is a little tarn / town.

## A MOUSE IN THE HOUSE

**Mr Brown:** 'I've 'found a `mouse!

**Mrs Brown:** `Ow! You're `shouting | 'too `loudly. 'Sit `down | and 'don't `frown.

**Mr Brown:** I've 'found a `mouse | in the `house.

**Mrs Brown:** A `brown `mouse?

**Mr Brown:** `Yes. A 'little `round mouse. It's 'running a'round in the `lounge.

**Mrs Brown:** On the `ground?

**Mr Brown:** `Yes. It's 'under the `couch `now.

**Mrs Brown:** 'Well, 'get it `out.

**Mr Brown:** `How?

**Mrs Brown:** 'Turn the `couch .upside .down. 'Get it 'out `somehow. We 'don't 'want a `mouse in our `house. 'Ours is the 'cleanest 'house in the `town!

## UNIT 16. [ɜʊ] PHONE

### Choose the correct word.

1. They have a nice green fern / phone in the hall
2. You can have coffee. Or / oh, do you want tea?
3. It's a very heavy ball / bowl.
  4. Don't burn / bone the chicken.
  5. I walk / work / woke early in the morning.

## SNOW IN OCTOBER

**Joanna:** `Ah! `Joe! `Joe! `Joe! ^Hello,'wake `up, Joe!

**Joe:** →Oh! `What is it, Joanna?

**Joanna:** 'Look out of the `window.

**Joe:** `No. My 'eyes are `closed, and I'm 'going to 'go to `sleep again.

**Joanna:** `Oh! `Don't .go to .sleep, `Joe. 'Look at the `snow!

**Joe:** ^Snow? But it's 'only Oc `tober. I `know there's .no .snow.

**Joanna:** 'Come 'over to the `window, `Joe.

**Joe:** You're `joking, Joanna, there's 'no `snow.

**Joanna:** 'O.K. I'll 'put my 'coat `on and 'go `out and 'make a ^snowball and 'throw it at your `nose, Joe `Jones!

## UNIT 17. [iə] NEAR

### Choose the correct word.

1. I've just swallowed a bee / beer.
2. The tea / tear fell on the floor.
3. What a funny bead / beard.
4. That's a very unusual pea / pier.
5. There should be 2 E's / ears and you've only got 1
6. How are you, Dee / dear?

### A BEARDED MOUNTAINEER

**Mr Lear:** \ Ooh! 'Let's 'have a `beer .here, , dear.

**Mrs Lear:** 'What a 'good i `dea! They have 'very 'good \ beer here. We 'came 'here \ , last year.

**Mr Lear:** The 'atmosphere 'here is 'very \ clear.

**Mrs Lear:** 'But it's 'windier than `last \ , year.

**Mr Lear:** 'Two `beers, , please.

**Mrs Lear:** \ Look, dear! 'Look at 'that 'mountain \ eer 'drinking \ beer.

**Mr Lear:** \ Ooh! His 'beard is \ in his .beer. ... \ Sh! He 'might \ hear.

**Waiter:** 'Here you `are, , sir.'Two \ beers.

**Mr Lear:** \ Thank you. `Cheers!

**Mrs Lear:** \ Cheers! 'Here's to the 'bearded 'mountain \ eer!

## UNIT 18. [ɛə]

### Choose the correct word.

1. 'Three cheers / chairs', he said.
2. There was a small beer / bear on the table.
3. That's a very big pier / pear.
4. Look! It's here / hair.
5. Can I borrow your pen, please, Dan dear / Dare?
6. He said her name, but it wasn't clear / Claire.

### A PAIR OF HAIRCLIPS

**Mary:** I've 'lost 'two 'small \ hairclips, Claire. They're a \ pair.

**Claire:** 'Have you 'looked 'carefully \ everywhere?

**Mary:** \ Yes. They're 'nowhere \ here. They 'just 'aren't `anywhere!

**Claire:** 'Have you 'looked up \ stairs?

**Mary:** →Upstairs! →Downstairs! \ Everywhere! They 'just 'aren't `there!

**Claire:** \ Hmm! 'Are they `square, , Mary?

**Mary:** \ Yes. \ Why?

**Claire:** →Well, you're 'wearing 'one of them in your \ hair!

**Mary:** `Oh! 'Then 'where's the `other one?

**Claire:** It's 'over \ there. 'Under that \ chair.

**Mary:** \ Hm!

# INDEPENDENT WORK

## I. READING AND COMPREHENSION

### Text 1. ST. VALENTINE'S DAY

St. Valentine's Day has roots in several different legends that have found their way through the ages. One of the earliest popular symbols of the day is Cupid, the Roman god of Love, who is represented by the image of a young boy with bow and arrow.

Three hundred years after the death of Jesus Christ, the Roman emperors still demanded that everyone believe in the Roman gods. Valentine, a Christian priest, had been thrown in prison for his teachings. On February 14, Valentine was beheaded, not only because he was a Christian, but also because he had performed a miracle. He supposedly cured the jailer's daughter of her blindness. The night before he was executed, he wrote the jailer's daughter a farewell letter, signing it, "From Your Valentine." Another legend tells us that this same Valentine, well-loved by all, wrote notes from his jail cell to children and friends who missed him. Another Valentine was an Italian bishop who lived at about the same time. He was imprisoned because he secretly married couples, contrary to the laws of the Roman emperor. Some legends say he was burned at the stake.

February 14 was also a Roman holiday, held in honor of a goddess. Young men randomly chose the name of a young girl to escort to the festivities. The custom of choosing a sweetheart on this date spread through Europe in the Middle Ages, and then to the early American colonies. Throughout the ages, people also believed that birds picked their mates on February 14!

Whatever the odd mixture of origins, St. Valentine's Day is now a day for sweethearts. It is the day that you show your friend or loved one that you care. You can send candy to someone you think is special. Or you can send roses, the flower of love. Most people send "valentines," a greeting card named after the notes that St. Valentine wrote from jail. Valentines can be sentimental, romantic, and heartfelt. They can be funny and friendly. If the sender is shy, valentines can be anonymous.

Americans of all ages love to send and receive valentines. Handmade valentines, created by cutting hearts out of colored paper, show that a lot of thought was put into making them personal. Valentines can be heart-shaped, or have hearts, the symbol of love, on them. In elementary schools, children make valentines for their classmates and put them in a large decorated box, similar to a mailbox. On February 14, the teacher opens the box and distributes the valentines to each student. After the students read their valentines, they have a small party with refreshments.

You can write a short rhyme inside the heart:

*Roses are red, violets are blue,  
Sugar is sweet and so are you!*

Or you can buy valentines with messages in them. If you are shy, you can sign it, "Your Secret Admirer." For teenagers and adults, major newspapers throughout the country have a Valentine's Day offer. Anyone can send in a message, for a small fee of course, destined for a would-be sweetheart, a good friend, an acquaintance or even a spouse of fifty years. For a small fee, the message is printed in a special section of the newspaper on February 14.

### TRUE OR FALSE?

1. St Valentine's Day is a day for people to express their love.
2. Valentine was a Roman Emperor.
3. Valentine was executed because he wanted to marry the Emperor's daughter.
4. St Valentine's Day was celebrated in ancient Rome.
5. At American schools children have a fancy dress ball on this day.
6. 'Valentines' are small presents given on St Valentine's Day.
7. Newspapers print love messages on this day.
8. Nobody really knows the origin of this holiday.
9. The 14<sup>th</sup> of February is the day when birds come back from warm countries.
10. The symbols of St Valentine's Day are: a heart, a pumpkin, a rose and a black cat.

**Read and do the tasks**

**Task 1. MATCH THE BEGINNINGS & THE ENDINGS OF THE PROVERBS, IDIOMS, QUOTATIONS**

The heart that once truly loves ... .. what a beautiful combination!  
 Who wants to live forever... .. soon hot and soon cold.  
 Absence makes the heart ... .. an easy game to play.  
 He is wearing his heart ... .. when love must die?  
 Love makes the world ... .. where it may not go.  
 Marriages are made ... .. in love and war.  
 Love will creep ... .. unlucky in love.  
 Lucky at cards, ... .. in lover's eyes.  
 Love and hate, ... .. never forgets.  
 Love conquers ... .. on his sleeve.  
 Love was such ... .. buy me love.  
 All you need is ... .. grow fonder.  
 Hasty love is ... .. doesn't rust.  
 Money can't ... .. out of mind.  
 Out of sight, ... .. in heaven.  
 Beauty lies ... .. go round.  
 All is fair ... .. blind.  
 Old love ... .. love.  
 Love is ..... kills.  
 Love ... .. all.



**Task 2. READ &**

**Distant Views** (by  
 Two sayings that I've  
 In puzzlement some-  
 Are Out of sight is  
 And Absence makes

They're opposite like  
 The very height of  
 No more alike than  
 Or large and small, or

To reconcile them,  
 It's not a thing I'm

**TRANSLATE THE POEM**

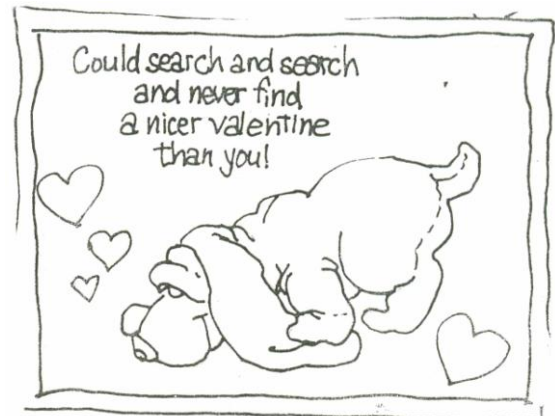
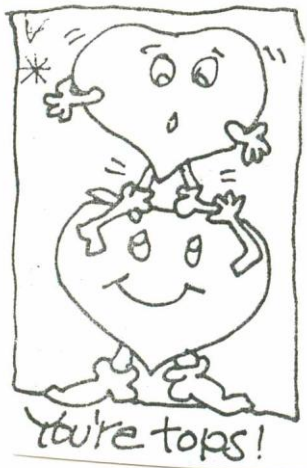


**Richard Armour)**  
 been inclined  
 times to ponder  
 out of mind  
 the heart grow fonder.

day and night,  
 contradiction,  
 black and white,  
 fact and fiction.

though, I've quit;  
 growing gray from,  
 found, at last, that it

For I have  
 Depends on WHOM you are away from.



## **Text 2. HOW WE KEPT MOTHER'S DAY** (*After Stephen Leacock*)

### **Read the text and do the tasks.**

Of all the different ideas that have appeared lately, I think the very best one is celebrating Mother's Day every year. We decided that we'd make Mother's Day a great holiday for all the family and do everything we could to make Mother happy. Father decided to take a holiday from his office, my sister Ann and I stayed at home from college, and Mary and my brother Will stayed at home from school. Mary and Ann bought new hats for the holiday. We wanted to buy a new hat for Mother, too, but she said she preferred to wear her old one, it was so becoming.

It was our plan to make it a day like Christmas or any other big holiday, and so we decided to decorate the house with flowers, and all that kind of things. We got Mother to do the decorations, because she always does it at Christmas.

We decided that we should get a car and take Mother for a beautiful drive into the country because she is busy in the house nearly all the time.

So we got everything ready for a trip, and we got Mother to make up a sort of lunch in case we got hungry, though of course we planned to come back home again to a big dinner in the middle of the day. Mother packed it all for us ready to put in the car.

Well, when the car came to the door it turned out that it was much smaller than we had thought and it was clear that we couldn't all get in.

Father said that he could just as well stay at home and spend time working in the garden, he wanted us to go and be happy and have a good day. But of course we all felt that it would never do to let Father stay at home, especially as we knew he wouldn't be happy if he did. Mary and Ann were prepared to stay and get dinner ready. They both said that Mother had only to say a word and they'd gladly stay at home and work. Only it was such a pity not to have a chance to wear the new hats they had bought. It was no use to leave Will and me, as we couldn't help in getting dinner ready.

So in the end it was decided that Mother would stay at home and just have a lovely restful day around the house, and get the dinner ready. The weather was just a little bit cold, though it was sunny, and Father was rather afraid that Mother might catch cold if she came.

So we all drove away with three cheers for Mother, and she stood and watched us from the veranda for as long as she could see us.

Well, – we had the loveliest day up among the hills. Father caught a lot of big fish, Will and I fished too, though we didn't get so many as Father, and the girls met a lot of people they knew and chatted with them and had a good time.

It was quite late when we got back, nearly seven o'clock, but Mother had guessed that we would be late, so she had made the dinner later so as to have it nicely ready and hot for us.

The dinner lasted a long time, and Mother had to get up and down a lot during the meal bringing things and taking them away, and when it was over all of us wanted to help to clear the table and wash the dishes, but Mother said that she would rather do it herself, and so we let her just to please her.

It was quite late when it was all over, and when we all kissed Mother before going to bed, she said it had been the most wonderful day in her life, and I think there were tears in her eyes.

### **Task 1. True or false?**

1. The author thinks that Mother's Day should become a national holiday.
2. Mother used Christmas decorations to make the flat look more beautiful.
3. It was decided that Mother would stay at home because it seemed the most reasonable thing to do.
4. The dinner was ready by the time the family came from the ride.
5. Mother did all the work to make this day a holiday.
6. Everything was done to make Mother happy.

### **Task 2**

1. What could the family do to make their mother really happy?
2. How do you celebrate Women's Day in your family?
3. On what holidays do people in Great Britain and the USA congratulate their mothers?  
When do they take place?



### **Text 3. APRIL FOOL'S DAY**

#### **Read and translate the text.**

Unlike most of the other non-foolish holidays, the history of April Fool's Day, sometimes called All Fool's Day, is not totally clear. There really wasn't a "first April Fool's Day" that can be pinpointed on the calendar. Some believe it sort of evolved simultaneously in several cultures at the same time, from celebrations involving the first day of spring.

The closest point in time that can be identified as the beginning of this tradition was in 1582, in France. Prior to that year, the New Year was celebrated for eight days, beginning on March 25. The celebration culminated on April 1. With the reform of the calendar under Charles IX, the Gregorian Calendar was introduced, and New Year's Day was moved to January 1.

However, communications being poor, many people did not receive the news for several years. Others, the more obstinate crowd, refused to accept the new calendar and continued to celebrate the New Year on April 1. These backward folk were labeled as "fools" by the general populace. They were subject to some ridicule, and were often sent on "fools errands" or were made the butt of other practical jokes.

This harassment evolved, over time, into a tradition of prank-playing on the first day of April. The tradition eventually spread to England and Scotland in the eighteenth century. It was later introduced to the American colonies of both the English and French. April Fool's Day is a fun little holiday, but a holiday on which one must remain forever vigilant, for he may be the next April Fool!

April Fool's Day developed into an international fun fest, so to speak, with different nationalities specializing in their own brand of humor at the expense of their friends and families.

In France today, April first is called "Poisson d'Avril." French children fool their friends by taping a paper fish to their friends' backs. When the "young fool" discovers this trick, the prankster yells "Poisson d'Avril!" (April Fish!)

Today Americans play small tricks on friends and strangers alike on the first of April. One common trick on April Fool's Day, or All Fool's Day, is pointing down to a friend's shoe and saying, "Your shoelace is untied." School children might tell a classmate that school has been cancelled. Whatever the trick, if the innocent victim falls for the joke the prankster yells, "April Fool!"

Practical jokes are a common practice on April Fool's Day. Sometimes, elaborate practical jokes are played on friends or relatives that last the entire day. The news media even gets involved. For instance, a British short film once shown on April Fool's Day was a fairly detailed documentary about "spaghetti farmers" and how they harvest their crop from the spaghetti trees.

College students set their clocks an hour behind, so their roommates show up to the wrong class – or not at all. Some practical jokes are kept up the whole day before the victim realizes what day it is. Most April Fool jokes are in good fun and not meant to harm anyone. The cleverest April Fool joke is the one where everyone laughs, especially the person upon whom the joke is played.

#### **Answer the questions:**

Do you ever play tricks on people on April Fools Day? Why or why not?

### **Text 4. WHAT MADE THE LITTLE DOG EXPIRE**

#### **Read the text and do the tasks**

The event I'm going to tell you about happened in England shortly after World War II. A certain English lady intended to give a party. She wanted to invite a number of friends for dinner and a game of bridge. It was easy enough to ask people to come, but far more difficult to provide a meal for them. However, on the very morning of the party the problem was unexpectedly solved.

"There is a man, Ma'am, at the back door, offering to sell mushrooms," the maid-servant announced.

The lady, accompanied by her little terrier, came down to the kitchen and found there a rather strange-looking man with a basket over his arm. The lady knew nothing about mushrooms and inquired the man if they were not poisonous. The man reassured her that they weren't and named such a small price for the whole lot that the lady readily paid the money at once, ordering her servant to empty the basket and return it to its owner. While the servant was emptying the basket she dropped a mushroom, and the fox terrier immediately ate it.

"There, that dog knows what's good," the stranger said. Putting the money, into his pocket, he laughed and left the kitchen.

Soon the guests arrived and were served a dish of mushrooms, which they thought a treat. While dinner was in progress, the hostess noticed that the servant's eyes were red with weeping. Calling her aside, the lady asked what was the reason of her tears.

"Oh, Ma'am, I didn't want to upset you... the little... the poor thing has died ...," the girl said sobbing.

The terrible truth flashed through the lady's mind. She saw her duty clearly and addressed her guests:

"Ladies and gentlemen," she said. "I'm sorry to say that, but the mushrooms I've offered you turned out to be poisonous. We must act and act quickly, if we want to save our lives."

There was a general panic. Some of the gentlemen swore, some of the ladies cried. But one man suggested going to the nearest hospital to have the contents of their stomachs pumped out. All rushed to save their lives. The staff of the hospital were surprised to have a group of patients in evening clothes. Naturally, no one thought of playing cards after this. On arriving home the lady wanted to know where the terrier's body was.

"Oh", said the servant, still sobbing, "the gardener has buried it, for it was so badly smashed; and we didn't even have time enough to put down the number of the car that so cruelly ran over the poor little pet!"

**Task. True or false?**

1. It was hard for the hostess to decide what to cook because she wanted the meal to be unusual.
2. The lady wanted her guests to play cards after dinner.
3. The mushrooms were very cheap.
4. The servant was weeping because the fox-terrier had eaten a poisonous mushroom and died.
5. The guests were shocked to know that the mushrooms were dangerous for their health.
6. They didn't play cards because there was no time left for that.

**Text 5. THE LUNCHEON (After S. Maugham)**

**Read the text and do the tasks.**

I saw her at the play and in answer to her beckoning I went over during the interval and sat down beside her. It was long since I had last seen her. She addressed me brightly:

"Well, it's many years since we first met. How time does fly! Do you remember the first time I saw you? You asked me for luncheon."

Did I remember?

It was twenty years ago and I was living in Paris. I had a small apartment in the Latin Quarter overlooking a cemetery and I was earning money to keep body and soul together. She had read a book of mine and had written to me about it, saying that she was passing through Paris and would like to have a talk with me. She asked me if I would give her a little luncheon at Foyot's. Foyot's was so far beyond my means that I had never even thought of going there. But I was flattered and I was too young to have learnt to say no to a woman. So I answered that I would meet her at Foyot's on Thursday at half past twelve.

She was not so young as I had expected, and in appearance imposing rather than attractive. It seemed to me that she wanted to talk about me and I prepared to be a good listener.

I was startled when the menu was brought, for the prices were a great deal higher than I had thought. But she reassured me, "I never eat anything for luncheon," she said. "Oh, don't say that!" I answered generously. "I never eat more than one thing. I think people eat too much nowadays. A little fish perhaps. I wonder if they have any salmon."

Well, it was early in the year for salmon and it wasn't on the menu, but I asked the waiter if they had any. Yes, a beautiful salmon had just come in, and I ordered it for my guest. The waiter asked her if she would have something while it was being cooked.

"No," she answered, "I never eat more than one thing. Unless you had a little caviare. I never mind caviar."

My heart sank a little. I knew I could not afford caviare, but I couldn't tell her that. I told the waiter by all means to bring caviare. For myself I chose the cheapest dish on the menu and that was a mutton chop. "I think you are unwise to eat meat," she said. "I don't know how you can expect to work after eating heavy things like chops."

Then came the question of drinks.

"I never drink anything for luncheon," she said.

"Neither do I," I answered quickly.

"Except white wine," she went on as though I had not spoken. "These French wines are so light. They are wonderful for digestion. My doctor won't let me drink anything but champagne."

I turned pale. I ordered half a bottle. I said that my doctor had absolutely forbidden me to drink champagne. I drank water.

She ate the caviare and she ate the salmon. She talked of art and literature and music, but I wondered what the bill would come to. When my mutton chop arrived she said: "I see that you are in the habit of eating a heavy luncheon. I'm sure it's a mistake. Why don't you follow my example and just eat one thing?"

The waiter came again with the menu. She waved him aside with an airy gesture.

"No, no, I never eat anything for luncheon. Just a bite. I can't possibly eat anything more – unless they had some of those giant asparagus. I should be sorry to leave Paris without having some of them."

My heart sank. I had seen them in the shops and they were horribly expensive.

"Madame wants to know if you have any of those giant asparagus," I asked the waiter. I tried with all my might to make him say no. A happy smile appeared over his broad face and he told me they had some, so large and so splendid. I ordered them.

We waited for the asparagus to be cooked. Panic seized me. It was not the question now how much money I would have for the rest of the month, but whether I had enough to pay the bill.

The asparagus appeared. They were so great. I watched her eating them.

When she finished eating I said, "Coffee?"

"Yes, just an ice cream and coffee," she answered.

It was all the same to me now, so I ordered coffee and ice cream for her and coffee for myself.

Then a terrible thing happened. While we were waiting for the coffee, the headwaiter came up to us with a large basket full of huge peaches. Peaches were not in season then. God knew what they cost. My guest, going on with her conversation, absent-mindedly took one.

"You see, you've filled your stomach with a lot of meat and you can't eat anything more. But I've just had a bite and I shall enjoy a peach."

The bill came and when I paid it I found that I didn't have enough money for a good tip. When I walked out of the restaurant I had the whole month before me and not a penny in my pocket.

"Follow my example," she said as we shook hands, "and never eat more than one thing for luncheon."

"I'll do better than that," I answered. "I'll eat nothing for dinner tonight".

"Humorist, you are quite a humorist," she cried gaily, jumping into a cab.

But I have had my revenge at last. I do not believe that I am a revengeful man, but when the immortal gods take a hand in the matter it is pardonable to observe the result with self-satisfaction.

Today she weighs one hundred and thirty kilograms.

### Task 1. Choose the correct answer.

1. When they first met
  - A. the narrator was a famous writer.
  - B. the narrator hadn't written anything yet.
  - C. the narrator was a beginning writer
2. When the narrator saw the lady
  - A. he was disappointed.
  - B. he was fascinated.
  - C. he was surprised.
3. The narrator was worried because he
  - A. didn't know what to talk about.
  - B. didn't like the food on the menu
  - C. didn't have a lot of money
4. The lady talked about
  - A. the narrator's book
  - B. about art and literature
  - C. French cuisine
5. The lady
  - A. was a light eater.
  - B. ate only one thing for luncheon.
  - C. ordered expensive food.
6. The narrator has had his revenge at last because
  - A. she has become very poor.
  - B. she is following a strict diet.
  - C. she has become very fat

### Task 2. Translate the words from the text.

1. beckon 2. to address 3. cemetery 4. earn money to keep body and soul together 5. far beyond my means
6. to be flattered 7. imposing 8. digestion 9. asparagus 10. tip 11. revenge 12. revengeful

## **Text 6. A MELTING STORY (After Mark Twain)**

### **Read the text and summarize it in a few sentences.**

One winter evening a country shopkeeper was about to close his shop for the night. He went out to shut the windows from outside and through the glass he noticed how a man in the shop quickly took a pound of fresh butter from a shelf and hid it in his hat .

"What fun I'll have," the shopkeeper said to himself as he thought of a way to punish the man for stealing .

"I say, Steve," said the shopkeeper, as he came in and closed the door after him.

Steve already had his hand on the door, ready to leave the shop as quickly as possible.

"I say, Steve, sit down. On such a cold night as this, it's very pleasant to sit in a warm room."

Steve did not know what to do. He had the butter in the hat and he wanted to get out of the shop at once. But the shopkeeper took Steve by the shoulder and made him sit close to the stove in a corner among the boxes.

"We'll make it a little warmer, Steve," he said as he opened the stove door put a number of sticks inside. "If you are not warm enough you'll freeze when you go out on a night like this."

Steve already felt that the butter was melting, and he jumped up and said he must go.

"Not till you are quite warm, Steve. I'll tell you a story," said the shopkeeper as he made Steve sit down again.

"Oh, it's so hot here," said Steve

"Sit down, don't be in such a hurry."

"But I must go. My cows ... they're hungry ... I must go and feed them."

"Don't hurry, Steve, let the cows take care of themselves."

Poor Steve! He didn't know what to do. The butter began to melt and came pouring from under his hat down into his eyes and mouth.

The shopkeeper was talking as if nothing was the matter and continued to put sticks into the stove.

"It's a fine night," he said, "Steve, why don't you - take your hat off? You seem to be warm. Let me put your hat over here."

"No!" cried poor Steve at last. "No! I must go! Let me go! Let me go out. I'm not well. Let me go!"

The butter was now pouring down the poor man's face and neck and even down his body into his boots, so that he was in a perfect bath of oil.

"Well, good night, Steve," said the shopkeeper smiling, "if you really want to go." Then he added, as Steve started out of the door: "I say, Steve, I think the fun I have had out of you is worth ninepence so I shan't take any money from you for that pound of butter in your hat."

## **Text 7. SMART GUY**

### **Read the text and do the tasks.**

One morning a well-dressed gentleman of aristocratic bearing accompanied by his manservant entered a jeweller's shop in Bond Street in London.

The gentleman wore his right arm in a sling. He began to examine the rings and when he had chosen a couple of rings to the value of a thousand pounds, he put his hand into his breast pocket as he wished to pay for the rings at once.

"Oh, hang it. I must have left my wallet at home. Here, Daniel," he said to his servant, "take the car, drive back to my wife and ask her to give you the money. Oh, Mr..." he addressed the jeweller. "Could you oblige me with a sheet of notepaper to write a few lines?"

The jeweller brought the notepaper at once, and the gentleman tried to write, but found it difficult, as his hand was bandaged and quite painful.

"No, I cannot manage it. Would you please write it for me? "

So the jeweller took the pen and paper and at the dictation of the gentleman wrote: "Kindly send me a thousand pounds via bearer. Theophilus."

"What a strange coincidence," observed the jeweller, "My name is Theophilus too."

"Oh, I'm so glad to hear it," replied the gentleman while his man took the note and left the shop.

The jeweller and the gentleman waited for a very long time, until the latter began to yawn and show signs of impatience and finally said, "I must go home and see what has happened. Keep the rings for me and tomorrow I shall call for them and take them away."

When the jeweller came home in the evening he told his wife that he had had a very strange customer that day. Then his wife asked him, "And why did you send home for a thousand pounds?"

"What? But I ... didn't ..." muttered the jeweller. "What on earth are you talking about?" interrupted his wife, showing him the note. "This is your handwriting, isn't it? This is your notepaper, isn't it?"

The jeweller fainted.

**Task 1. Answer the questions.**

1. Why did the jeweller write the note at the dictation of the gentleman?
2. Why didn't he suspect the young man of a fraud?
3. Why did the jeweller faint?

**Task 2. Translate into Russian.**

1. a gentleman of aristocratic bearing;
2. He wore his arm in a sling.
3. Hang it!
4. via bearer;
5. painful;
6. value;

**Task 3. Find the words to the definitions**

1. to go somewhere with someone;
2. to look at something carefully;
3. to open your mouth wide and breathe in deeply, usually because you are tired, or bored;
4. the second of two objects just mentioned;
5. to lose consciousness;
6. to say something in a low voice;

**Text 8. WHILE THE AUTO WAITS (After O. Henry)**

**Read the text and do the task.**

The girl in gray came again to that quiet corner of that quiet small park. She sat down on a bench and began to read a book. She had come there at the same time on the previous day and on the day before that, and there was a young man who knew it.

The young man came near. At that moment her book fell on the ground. The young man picked up the book, returned it to the girl politely, saying a few words about the weather, and stood waiting.

The girl looked at his simple coat and his common face.

"You may sit down, if you like," she said. "The light is too bad for reading. I should like to talk."

"Do you know," he said, "that you are the finest girl I have ever seen?"

"Whoever you are," said the girl in an icy tone, "you must remember that I am a lady."

"I beg your pardon," said the young man, "but –"

"Let's change the subject. I come here to sit because it is here that I can be near the masses of people. I speak to you because I want to talk to a natural man. Oh! You don't know how tired I am of it – money, money, money. I'm tired of pleasure, of travel."

"I always had an idea," said the young man that money must be a very good thing."

"When you have so many millions! Drives, dinners, theatres, balls, suppers! I am tired of it," said the girl.

The young man looked at her with interest.

"Sometimes," continued the girl, "I think if I ever loved a man, I should love a simple man. What is your profession?"

"I am a very simple man. But I hope to rise in the world. I work in a restaurant," said he.

The girl drew back.

"I am a cashier in that restaurant you see there with that brilliant electric sign," he continued.

The girl looked at her watch and rose. "Why are you not at work?" she asked.

"I am on the night turn," said the young man, "it is an hour yet till my work begins. May I see you again?"

"I don't know, perhaps. I must go quickly now. Oh, there's a dinner and a concert tonight. Perhaps you noticed a white automobile at the corner of the park when you came?"

"Yes, I did," said the young man.

"I always come in it. The driver waits for me there. Good night."

"But it is dark now," said the young man. "May I accompany you to the car?"

"You will remain on this bench for ten minutes after I have left."

And she went away. The young man looked at her elegant figure while she was going to the entrance of the park. Then he rose and followed her. When she reached the park gate, she turned her head to look at the car, then passed it, crossed the street and entered the restaurant. A red-haired girl left the cashier's desk and the girl in gray took her place.

The young man put his hands into his pockets and walked slowly down the street. Then he got into the white automobile and said to the driver, "Club, Henry."

**Choose the correct answer.**

**1. The young man came to the park**

- A. by chance
- B. because he wanted to see the girl
- C. because he went to this park every day

**2. The girl in gray**

- A. behaved like a lady
- B. was displeased with the young man
- C. looked at him with interest

**3. The young man**

- A. was dressed very simply
- B. worked in a restaurant
- C. despised money

**4. After leaving the park the girl**

- A. drove away in a white auto
- B. went to the club
- C. returned to her work

**5. The girl lied to the young man because**

- A. she was afraid of him
- B. she fell in love with him
- C. she wanted to impress him

**Text 9. THE POWER OF IMAGINATION**

**Read the text and explain the title of the text.**

Mr. Brown got to a hotel late in the evening after a long journey. He asked the hall-porter if there were any vacant rooms in the hotel. At that moment another traveller came to the hotel and asked the hall-porter for a room too. The only vacant room was a double room, that's a room with two beds in it.

"Do you mind if you spend the night in that room together?" the hall-porter asked. "It'll be less expensive for you, you'll each pay half".

At first the travellers didn't like the idea, but just then it began raining hard and they were too tired to go to another hotel, so they changed their minds. They spoke to each other and then told the porter that they agreed to spend the night in the same room. Their things were carried in, and soon the two men went to sleep to the accompaniment of the rain. Suddenly Mr. Brown woke up because of a loud noise. It was quite dark. "What's the matter?" Mr. Brown asked in surprise. "Is anything the matter?"

In a weak voice the second traveller answered, "I'm sorry, but I had to wake you up, I've got asthma. I feel very bad. In addition I've got a terrible headache. If you don't want me to die, open the window quickly".

Mr. Brown jumped out of bed and began looking for his matches but he couldn't find them in the dark, and the sick man went on moaning "Air, air ... I want fresh air, I'm dying."

Mr. Brown still couldn't find the matches, so he tried to find the window. It took him some time, and at last he thought he had found it. But: he couldn't open it. As the voice of the traveller grew weaker and weaker, Mr. Brown in horror took a chair and broke the window with it. The sick man immediately stopped moaning and said he was very grateful and felt much better. Then the two of them slept peacefully until morning.

When they woke up next morning, they were surprised to see that the only window in the room was still closed, but the large mirror was broken to pieces.

**Text 10. "THE LOVE DRUG" (After O. Henry )**

**Read the text and do the tasks.**

Jim, a young car-driver was a boarder at old Riddle's. He was in love with Rosy, Mr. Riddle's only daughter, and Rosy was in love with him. They wanted to get married; but Mr. Riddle expected his daughter to marry a richer man, and that meant that Jim was going to have a hard struggle for his happiness.

Jim had a friend called Pilkins who worked as a night clerk at a chemist's. One day Jim came to the chemist's, looking very excited and told him that he and Rosy had decided to run away and get married that night.

"If she doesn't change her mind. One day she says she will, and the same evening she says she won't because she is afraid." "I say, Pilkins, isn't there a drug that'll make a girl like you better if you give it to her? I think, if I have a real stuff like this to give Rosy, when I see her at supper tonight, she won't be afraid any longer. "When are you going to marry?" asked Pilkins.

"At nine o'clock. Supper's at seven, at eight Rosy goes to bed pretending to have a headache, at nine I go under her window and – Make up the powder, Pilkins."

"I'll do my best," said Pilkins.

He gave Jim a powder and received his heartiest thanks.

"This," he said to himself, "will make Rosy sleep for several hours without any danger to her."

When Jim had gone, Pilkins, who was in love with Rosy too, immediately went to Mr. Riddle and told the old man that Jim and Rosy were going to run away that night.

"Can I do anything for you, sir?" he asked politely. "Shall I call the police?"

"No, thank you," said Mr. Riddle. "My room's just above Rosy's. I'll go up myself after supper and take my gun and wait. If he comes under Rosy's window, he'll want a doctor, not a policeman, you can be sure of that".

Pilkins went home. All night he waited for the news of the tragedy, but none came. At eight o'clock in the morning Pilkins went hurriedly to Mr. Riddle's. As he was crossing the street, he was surprised to see Jim who cried out: "Rosy and I were married at 9.30 last night, I'm the luckiest man."

"And the ... powder?" Pilkins said in a weak voice.

"Oh, that stuff you gave me? I sat down next to the old man at supper last night. I looked at Rosy and said to myself: "Don't play any tricks on that girl. She loves you, that's clear enough." Then I looked at her father and thought "There's the man, you should take care of." So I put the powder in old Riddle's coffee – see?"

### **Task 1. Translate into Russian.**

1. boarder
2. change one's mind
3. drug
4. stuff
5. powder
6. hearty
7. pretend
8. hurriedly
9. play tricks

### **Task 2. Answer the questions.**

1. Why did Jim come to Pilkins?
2. What kind of stuff did he want him to make and why?
3. What kind of stuff did Pilkins give him and why?
4. Why did Jim put the stuff into old Riddle's coffee?
5. Why didn't Mr Riddle prevent the marriage of his daughter?

### **Text 11. RUTHLESS (After William DeMille)**

#### **Read the text and do the tasks.**

Outside, the October sun was shining over the forest now full of the smell of autumn.

Inside, a man was standing in the living room of his mountain camp. He was near a closet where he kept guns and strong drinks. The closet door stood open; Judson Webb had been packing his things away for the winter, and in a few minutes he and his wife Marcia would be driving back to civilization.

As he looked at the shelf on which his bottles stood, his smile was not pleasant. All the bottles were unopened, but one. This one was less than half full. It was placed in front, a whiskey glass by its side. As he took it from the shelf his wife spoke from the bedroom, "I'm all packed, Judson. Hasn't Alec come to get the keys?"

Alec lived about a mile down the road and looked after the summer camps when the city people were away.

"He said he'd be back in half an hour."

Marcia came into the room carrying her suitcase. She stopped in surprise as she saw the bottle in her husband's hand.

"Judson!" she said, "You're not taking a drink at ten o'clock in the morning, are you?"

"You're wrong, my dear," he smiled. "I'm not taking anything out of this bottle. I am only putting something into it."

He put two white tablets on the table and started to open the whiskey bottle. His wife did not like his tone, the tone he used when he was planning something against his business partners.

"The man who entered this house last winter and stole my drinks from the closet may try it again when we are out of here," he went on, "only this time he'll wish he hadn't."

She saw him put the tablets into the bottle one by one.

"What are they?" she asked, "something to make him ill?"

"And how! No doctor will save him." He put the bottle on the shelf near the little whiskey glass.

The woman's face was pale. "Don't do it, Judson," she said. "It's horrible. What right have you —"

"When it comes to protecting my property I make my own laws."

"We won't be here till next spring. Suppose something happens to us — and no one knows —"

It was useless to say anything, she knew. He had always been ruthless in business

"I'll walk down the road and say good bye at the farm house," she said quietly. "You can pick me up there." She had decided to tell Alec's wife. Someone had to know.

As she went down the road he started to shut the closet door, then he remembered his boots drying in the yard. They belonged in the closet, so leaving the door open he went to take them off the table on which they stood.

When he put his hand out to get the boots, he stepped on something, his foot slid from under him and his head struck the massive table as he fell.

Several minutes later he felt Alec's strong arm under him as he lay on the ground. "That wasn't much of a fall, Mr. Webb. You'll be better in a minute. Here, take this, it'll help you greatly."

A small whiskey glass was pressed to his lips. Half conscious, he drank.

**Task 1. Say the opposite.**

1. strong drinks 2. pack 3. civilization 4. pleasant 5. less 6. pale 7. horrible 8. useless 9. ruthless

**Task 2 True, false or not given?**

1. Judson Webb was displeased because he didn't want to leave his cottage.
2. The closet door stood open because Mr Webb forgot to close it.
3. His wife was surprised because he wasn't in the habit of drinking whiskey in the morning.
4. Judson put some tablets into the bottle of whiskey because he wanted to punish the thief.
5. Alec looked after the summer camps because he liked this kind of job very much.
6. Marcia went to Alec's wife because she wanted to warn her about the tablets in the bottle.
7. Marcia didn't approve of her husband's decision because it was cruel and dangerous.
8. Alec gave Judson the whiskey because he wanted to poison him for his ruthlessness.
9. Judson drank the poisoned whiskey because he didn't realize what was going on.
10. It was Alec who drank Mr Webb's whiskey because he was a heavy drinker.

**Text 12. A BUSY BROKER (After O. Henry)**

**Read the text and do the tasks.**

At nine o'clock sharp Harvey Maxwell, a broker, entered his office together with his young stenographer. Pitcher, a clerk, who was sitting at his desk, looked at them with a smile.

"Good morning, Pitcher," said Maxwell and hurried to his desk where a heap of letters and telegrams was waiting for him. A busy day began.

But the young stenographer was not in a hurry. Instead of going straight into the next room she stood before Maxwell's table and watched him for some time. The man sitting at the desk was no longer a man. It was a machine, phoning, selling, buying.

"Well, what is it?" asked Maxwell impatiently.

"Nothing," answered the stenographer. She looked a bit disappointed and hurt.

"Mr. Pitcher," she said to the clerk, "did Mr. Maxwell tell you anything yesterday about finding a new stenographer?"

"He did," answered Pitcher. "He told me to find another one. I promised to do it."

"I'll do the work as usual," said the young stenographer, "until someone comes to take my place."

It was a busy day. The telephone rang. Men entered the office, and shouted at Maxwell, and went away. Messenger boys ran in and out with letters and telegrams. The clerks in the office jumped about like sailors during the storm.

Suddenly a young girl entered the office. Pitcher came up to Maxwell's desk, apologised for interrupting him and introduced the girl. "The new stenographer," said Pitcher.

"What stenographer?" asked Maxwell.

"You told me yesterday to get a new stenographer," said Pitcher.

"But we have a stenographer, don't we?" said Maxwell. "Miss Leslie is a very good one, I never told you to get another stenographer, Pitcher. I'm in no mood for joking. I'm sorry, Madam, there's no place open here."

With these words he began to read the great heap of telegrams and letters which were lying on the table before him.

The young girl shrugged her shoulders and went away. Pitcher remarked to his colleagues that the boss was getting more forgetful with every passing day.

When the luncheon time drew near, there came a relaxation. Maxwell stood by his desk, with his hands full of telegrams, with a fountain-pen over his right ear, and his hair hanging in disorder over his forehead. The window was open, and suddenly through it came a delicate smell of lilac. The smell reminded Maxwell of something ...



"I'll do it now," he said to himself. "I'll ask her now. I have just five minutes before business begins again." He ran to the next room and came up to the stenographer. She looked at him with a smile. Maxwell was still holding telegrams in both hands, and his fountain-pen was over his ear.

"Miss Leslie," he began hurriedly. "I have but a moment to spare. I want to say something. I don't know how to put it. Will you be my wife? I love you. Talk quick, please."

"Oh, what are you talking about?" exclaimed the young lady. She rose to her feet and looked at him, round-eyed.

"Don't you understand?" said Maxwell impatiently. "I want to marry you. I love you, Miss Leslie. Oh, I am wanted on the phone. Tell them to wait a minute, Pitcher. Will you marry me, Miss Leslie?"

At first the stenographer seemed surprised. Tears filled her eyes. But then she smiled, and much to Maxwell's surprise put one of her arms around his neck.

"Oh, I know now," she said softly. "Business makes you forget everything. But don't you remember, Harvey, don't you remember that we were married yesterday in the little church round the corner?"

### **Task 1.**

**Find the words, word combinations or sentences in the text which give the idea of a very busy day.**

### **Task 2. Add sentences to complete the situations. Speak about yourself.**

1. I looked at her (it/ him/her) with a smile. 2. I was disappointed and hurt. 3. I shrugged my shoulders. 4. I had to apologize. 5. I looked at her (him/her/them) round-eyed. 6. Tears filled my eyes.

### **Text 13. BEST LOOKING GIRL IN TOWN (After Thyra S. Winslow)**

#### **Read the text and do the task.**

From the time she was thirteen Rilla Mabry had been ashamed of her appearance. It was then that she started growing taller than other girls. She was also awkward as well as tall and she was too thin. By the time she was twenty she was fully convinced that her appearance was really something terrible. All of the other girls seemed little and cute and attractive. No matter what Rilla wore it seemed wrong. She was much too tall to wear tailored clothes. And thin dresses simply hung around her loosely.

All of the boys and girls in the group liked Rilla. She was a fine girl – if you could forget the way she looked. Even her hair was wrong – rather stringy – but she had a pleasant and rather attractive face.

In spite of her looks Rilla had a boyfriend. He was Patrick Redding and his father kept a grocery store. Pat wasn't any great prize but then you couldn't expect Rilla with her looks, to do any better. People felt that Rilla ought to be well satisfied. Pat was a nice looking boy, and he shouldn't be considered unimportant.

Rilla didn't consider Pat unimportant. She was grateful to him for being nice to her. She was as pleasant and as friendly as she could be. As a matter of fact she liked Pat a lot. He was fun to be with. She would have been perfectly satisfied except for the fact that was in love with Shane Tennant. All of which did her little good – for Shane was the prize of the town. Shane's father was a banker – and rich. His mother was the social leader of the town. Shane was tall – much taller than Rilla – and handsome, besides.

Pat went into the grocery business with his father. Shane went into the bank. That's what the sons do in small towns unless they have definite ideals about law or one of the other professions. Rilla didn't do anything. Her parents had just enough money so she didn't have to work. She went to the parties with Patrick – and admired Shane from a distance. The town people felt that she would marry Pat, that he'd take over his father's grocery store and that they'd settle down.

The might have happened if it hadn't been for Leslie Durant. Leslie Durant was – and still is – a well known magazine illustrator. And he came to Morrisville to visit an aunt. And he was a social lion of the season. He stayed in town only for a few days – but that was long enough for a lot to happen.

He saw Rilla Mabry! Rilla was standing near the door – and she was looking at Shane Tennant. She never knew how much her face showed what she was thinking about. No one else noticed – but Durant, being new, understood the situation. He saw Rilla, standing not quite smooth – and he saw Shane, perfectly dressed, self confident, good-looking. And then Pat came to ask Rilla to dance.

On the second day of his visit Durant made his remarkable statement. He told anyone who would listen to him that Rilla Mabry was by far the best looking girl in town. One of the best looking girls he had ever seen. Rilla had never had a compliment about her looks before. She had always been shy, self-conscious, and often unhappy about her appearance. And now, the first authority on beauty who had ever been in town claimed that she was the prize. When Durant, himself, told her what he thought of her she was filled with confusion. She went up to him.

"I do wish that you'd tell me how I can look better", she said.

“That’s not really my particular kind of work”, he told her, “but maybe if we got together. ....”

They got together the next morning. Durant came to Rilla’s house and with Rilla’s mother acting as helper, they did things to Rilla and Rilla’s clothes. Durant made her stand up straight. And he rearranged her hair. And he told her what was wrong with the clothes she wore.

That night there was a dance for Durant – his last evening in town. And, as he had thought when he started things. Rilla was, for the first time in her life, the center of attention. Toward the end of the evening Durant had the satisfaction of seeing Shane Tennant dancing very attentively with Rilla. Shane Tennant, whom Rilla had looked at with longing eyes and who had never paid any attention to her.

Durant went back to his home and his work in New York. And forgot about the whole thing. And years passed. And then, just the other day, this happened:

Durant was lunching alone at a restaurant when an attractive, tall woman, past her first youth, came up to him.

“You don’t remember me?” she said.

Durant didn’t remember her.

“I’m Rilla Tennant – I was Rilla Mabry when you knew me. You came to my home town and – and rather made my life over. Remember now?”

“Of course I do,” said Durant. “I remember very well. It was my one attempt at changing the destiny of another person.”

“You did a wonderful job!” said Rilla. There was a strange note in her voice which he didn’t understand.

“You married the boy you were in love with, I see. His name was Tennant, wasn’t it?”

“Why, yes,” said Rilla “But how did you remember the name? And how did you know I was in love with him?”

“I’m good at remembering names. And saw you looking at him. Simplicity itself! And to think that I was the cause!”

“Yes, you were,” said Rilla. “It was very funny, when you look back on it. There I was, going with Pat Redding and in love with Shane, and terribly unhappy and awkward. And you came down and said I was a beauty – so automatically I became a beauty. And the boys all wanted to go out with me. And I married Shane.”

“Wonderful!” said Durant. And he smiled happily. “How are you getting along, now?”

“That’s the difficult part”, said Rilla. “You shouldn’t have asked.”

“Shane and I got married – and didn’t get along very well, though I was awfully happy in the beginning. The Tennants lost all of their money in a bank failure – and my family had its money in Tennant bank by that time, so our money went, too. Then Shane fell in love with a chorus girl. I got a divorce, of course. I’ve been teaching in a girl’s school for the past three years.”

“That’s too bad!” said Durant. “But maybe that was better than marrying that other boy whom you didn’t love.”

“Maybe,” said Rilla. “You can never tell. Love goes.... Patrick Redding took over his father’s grocery store – and married the cutest girl in town. They have three children and are very happy. And, oh yes, he became quite ambitious and started a chain of grocery stores. Now he’s the richest and most important man in town.”

**Task. Choose the best answer.**

**1. Rilla didn’t wear tailored clothes because**

- A. she was ashamed of her appearance.
- B. her hair was stringy.
- C. she was too tall.

**2. Rilla had a boyfriend and**

- A. she was thankful to him.
- B. he was sorry for her.
- C. he irritated her.

**3. Rilla’s love was hopeless because**

- A. Shane was rich.
- B. she was awkward and unattractive.
- C. Shane was in love with a chorus girl.

**4. Leslie Durant changed her life because**

- A. it was the kind of work he did.
- B. he fell in love with her.
- C. it amused him.

**5. Shane paid attention to Rilla because**

- A. he noticed what a nice girl she was.
- B. Leslie Durant said she was a beauty.
- C. she was dressed very smartly.

**6. Durant’s interference**

- A. broke Rilla’s life.
- B. made her life complete.
- C. didn’t change anything.

## II. LISTENING AND COMPREHENSION

Listen and do the tasks.

### TOPIC 1. HOME

#### UNIT 1

##### A REAL BARGAIN

Answer the questions.

1. What is Mr Palmer looking for? .....
2. Why does he want to live in a quiet village?.....
3. When was the roof put on? .....
4. What was the previous owner of the house?.....
5. Is there central heating in the house?.....
6. When was the house rewired and the garage built? .....
7. What is the house built of?.....
8. When is the post delivered? .....
9. What will be built in the neighbourhood next year?.....
10. Why is this house much cheaper than a lot of similar houses?.....

#### UNIT 2

##### FINDING A PLACE TO LIVE

Mark the sentences as true, false or not given.

#### C1

1. There are two apartments for rent.
2. The rent for these apartments is the same.
3. There is an indoor swimming pool.
4. You can have a private washer and dryer.
5. The parking garage is for 50 cars.
6. There is a 24-hour doorman.
7. The superintendent will meet Ann in the lobby of the building.

#### C2

1. Bill is interested in a one-bedroom apartment.
2. They have three one-bedroom apartments left.
3. One of them has an eat-in kitchen.
4. The dining room and the kitchen have two closets each.
5. They can have two spaces available in the parking lot.
6. There is no fitness centre in the building.
7. The apartments have balconies with a beautiful view.

**UNIT 3**

**THE BRITISH AT HOME**

Use “*The lodgers can, can't or must*” to make up sentences based on the conversation.

- 1. keep pets in the house
- 2. pay a month's rent in advance
- 3. put posters up on the bedroom walls
- 4. have guests in the room after ten o'clock
- 5. smoke in the bedroom.
- 6. keep their room tidy
- 7. use the kitchen
- 8. put hot cups on the wooden surfaces
- 9. make the bed every day

**UNIT 4**

**HOUSE-PROUD**

Answer the questions.

- 1. What does the woman mean when she calls the man house-proud?  
.....
- 2. What does the man mean when he says, “That's a drag!”?  
.....

**UNIT 5**

**MOVING HOUSE**

**Text 1 An Informal Invitation**

Answer the questions.

- 1. Why did Charles and Barbara decide to have a housewarming?  
.....
- 2. Why is there lack of warning?  
.....
- 3. Why can Bob do the trip from Oxford to Portsmouth in two hours?  
.....
- 4. Why is Harpole difficult to find?  
.....

**Text 2 Arranging the house.**

Complete the sentences.

- 1. The sideboard is .....
- 2. The picture is .....
- 3. The big screwdriver is .....
- 4. The brush is .....
- 5. The tools are .....
- 6. The cat is .....

**UNIT 6**

**DWELLINGS AND APPLIANCES**

**C1** Underline the words that best describe Ann's place. Circle the words that best describe John's place.

STYLE	traditional, modern, apartment, detached, semi-detached, terraced house, cottage, villa, three-storeyed building, castle, bungalow
LOCATION	village, city, centrally-located, residential area, close to the shops, in the suburbs, on the outskirts, isolated, in the country, near the lake
SIZE	small, tiny, spacious, large, huge, average, family sized, two-bedroom
COST	cheap, low-priced, over-priced, expensive, economical
GENERAL DESCRIPTION	cosy, comfortable, secure, luxurious, well-maintained, fully-furnished, airy, noisy, cold, warm, with a wonderful view

**C2**

Answer the questions.

1. What is the man calling about?.....
2. What rooms are separate in the house?.....
3. What kind of door joins the rooms?.....
4. What do the two largest bedrooms have?.....
5. How large is the garage?.....
6. When can he see it?.....

**UNIT 7**

**MOVING IN**

Complete the sentences.

1. They are going to put the bed .....
2. The wardrobe will go .....
3. The chest of drawers will stand .....
4. The TV will go .....
5. The speakers will be put.....
6. The bookcase will be .....
7. The table lamp will stand .....

**UNIT 8**

**COLOURS AND ROOMS**

Circle the words that are mentioned in connection with each colour.

RED	competitive, romantic, active, excited, frightened, uplifted
ORANGE	conservative, talkative, adventurous, enthusiastic, reserved, patient
YELLOW	shy, reliable, cheerful, generous, impatient, creative, happy, hungry
BLUE	calm, confident, stressed, relaxed, peaceful, thirsty, tired
GREEN	relaxed, peaceful, refreshed, depressed, nervous, sleepy
WHITE	cheerful, isolated, withdrawn, relaxed, cautious, self-assured, nervous,

**UNIT 9**

**FLAT HUNTING**

Mark the sentences as true, false or not given.

1. The man wants to rent a flat for two people.
2. A bedsitter is not enough.
3. He has been flat hunting for 6 months.
4. The maximum rent they can manage is 13 pounds a week.
5. Neither of them smokes.
6. They have got a dog.
7. They don't have a car.
8. He can't cycle 11 miles to work.
9. The flat must be fully furnished.
10. They want a flat with a beautiful view.
11. The man is going to call one of the flat owners.

**UNIT 10**

**HOUSE PROBLEMS**

Match the problems (A-F) to the speakers (1-5)

- |                                    |                             |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| A. badly-fitting window            | D. leaking roof             |
| B. central heating doesn't work    | E. not enough space         |
| C. air conditioner is out of order | F. driveway needs repairing |

1	2	3	4	5

**UNIT 11**

**FINDING OUT THE HOUSE RULES**

Name the rules a lodger should observe.

1. ....
2. ....
3. ....
4. ....
5. ....

## TOPIC 2. DAILY PROGRAM

### UNIT 12

#### WHAT DOES HE DO EVERY DAY?

Mark the sentences as true, false or not given.

1. Alan is a taxi driver.
2. He is in his mid twenties.
3. He doesn't work at weekends.
4. He hates to get up early on weekdays.
5. He doesn't eat much at breakfast.
6. He drinks a cup of coffee for breakfast.
7. He kisses his wife before having breakfast.
8. He has lunch in a transport café.
9. He comes home at five.
10. In the evening he goes to a club.
11. His wife would like to go out with him in the evenings.

### UNIT 13

#### A DAY OFF WORK

Choose the correct answer.

1. Bill said he couldn't come to work because
  - a) he had a headache
  - b) he had a toothache
  - c) he had a sore throat
2. On hearing about Bill's illness Mr Thompson
  - a) got very angry
  - b) felt sorry for him
  - c) asked him to come the next day anyway
3. When Mr Thompson came to Bill's place, he
  - a) brought him some fruit
  - b) took his temperature
  - c) advised his wife to call a doctor
4. At three o'clock Mr Thompson switched on his portable television to watch
  - a) English footballers play against Brazil
  - b) business news
  - c) his favourite action film
5. Mr Thompson got very angry because Bill
  - a) had scored a goal
  - b) hadn't taken his boss to a football match with him
  - c) had cheated him

**UNIT 14**

**LIFE**

How people have improved their quality of life? Match the statements (A-E) to the speakers (1-4).

- A. Be with friends
- B. Get back to nature
- C. Be satisfied with less
- D. Focus on the family
- E. Help those in need

Speaker 1	Speaker 2	Speaker 3	Speaker 4

**UNIT 15**

**SATURDAY NIGHT THOUGHTS**

Mark the sentences as true, false or not given.

1. The man usually doesn't do anything on Sundays.
2. He is going to lie in until midday tomorrow.
3. He enjoys working in his garden.
4. He plans to mow the lawn after lunch.
5. He wants Ted to help him to cut the garden hedge.
6. Ted is his neighbour.
7. He thinks having the car serviced in the garage is too expensive.
8. He is going to help Ted to paint his garage next Sunday.
9. He is going to invite Ted to have a drink in the pub in the evening.

**UNIT 16**

**AROUND THE HOUSE**

**C1** Write if each speaker likes, dislikes or doesn't mind doing the jobs around the house and other chores.

Speaker	Attitude	Activity
1		
2		
3		
4		
5		
6		

**C2**

Answer the questions. Why does the man

1. like working at home?.....
2. like cooking?.....
3. like reading nonfiction?.....
4. like growing vegetables?.....
5. hate driving?.....



**UNIT 17**

**A FEW QUESTIONS**

Mark the sentences as true, false or not given.

1. Grimes is a police officer.
2. Grimes says he has come to Harry for a routine check.
3. Grimes doesn't have a search warrant.
4. Harry has got a gun hidden in his house.
5. Grimes says Harry has been accused of some crime and he has witnesses to prove it.
6. Tommy Ferrett and Albert Bloggs are Harry's former schoolmates.
7. Albert Bloggs had two years' remission for good behavior.
8. Harry left the pub at seven.
9. Harry says he never drives under the influence of drugs.
10. 'Think before you drink before you drive' – that's what Harry always says to himself.
11. Harry is unemployed.
12. He bought a car when his grandfather had died and left him some money.
13. Harry's car has a dent in the front wing

**UNIT 18**

**HELLO, MOM!**

Answer the questions.

1. Why is Justin working hard at the moment? .....
2. When did the exams start?.....
3. Who is Lucinda?.....
4. What do Justin and Lucinda do in their free time?.....
5. Why is Justin's mother going to Geneva?.....
6. How long is she going to stay there? .....
7. How does his father feel about commuting to London every day?.....
8. What does his father usually do on Sundays?.....
9. When is Justin coming home?.....
10. Why does he say he wants to invite Lucinda to their place?.....
11. What does his mother say to him about it?.....

**UNIT 19**

**MAKING PLANS**

**Task 1.** Make corrections in the plans.

1. Karen is having lunch with Tony tomorrow at 12.00 at Bangkok Café.
2. The girls are going to see a concert and to meet in front of the Hayes Hall at 7.30.
3. Flight 475 to Seattle leaves at 4.25 from gate12.
4. Miss Clark has an appointment with Dr Lee at 2.30 on the 20<sup>th</sup> of April.

**Task 2.** Write the changed times of the appointments in the schedule that the patients have. Why will none of them be able to see Doctor Potter?

Miss Park	Miss Wells	Mr Long	Miss Green	Mr Franks

**UNIT 20**

**SLEEP**

Mark the sentences as true, false or not given.

1. All people are interested to discuss the subject of sleep.
2. Sleep can refresh not only body but your mind as well.
3. The correct amount of time for sleep is eight hours each night.
4. Most people sleep no less than 7 hours a night.
5. The best time of going to bed is 10 o'clock in the evening.
6. A person's sleep needs depend on his health, job, emotional state and the efficiency of sleep.
7. Efficient sleep demands a bed with a hard surface.
8. People who suffer from insomnia should exercise hard before going to bed.
9. You should try to take a nap after lunch.
10. Sleep before midnight is called *beauty sleep* as it makes you look more attractive.

**UNIT 21**

**A PARTY**

Answer the questions.

1. What made Mr Wood unhappy?.....
2. How long was he able to ignore the party?.....
3. Why couldn't he read a book?.....
4. When was he ready to go to bed?.....
5. How did Mr Wood try to protect himself from the noise?.....
6. What was he wearing when he came to his neighbour's place?.....
7. How did he enter the flat?.....
8. What was the first reaction to his appearance?.....
9. Why did his anger disappear?.....
10. Why did he go back to his place?.....
11. What happened when he returned? (*The story is unfinished. Suggest your own ending of it.*)

**TOPIC 3. MEALS**

**UNIT 22**

**EATING HABITS**

Answer the questions.

**C1 Eating Properly**

What does Sally have for  
 breakfast.....  
 lunch.....  
 dinner.....

**C2 Eating Out**

What is Dave going to have?  
 .....

**C3 Ordering a Meal**

Why can't the man have spicy chicken?.....  
 What is he going to have instead?.....

**UNIT 23**  
**COMPLAINTS**

Match the places to the speakers (1-4).

Fast food.                  Supermarket.                  Takeaway.                  Restaurant.

**UNIT 24**  
**GOING OUT OR EATING IN?**

Write who said what: Gary, Sarah or Frank.

1. This speaker wants to go out for dinner.
2. This speaker says that eating out is unhealthy.
3. This speaker thinks that restaurant food tastes good.
4. This speaker says that eating out is expensive.
5. This speaker thinks that somebody is making excuses.
6. This speaker is sure somebody is lazy.
7. This speaker can't cook well.

**UNIT 25**  
**YOUNG PEOPLE'S EATING HABITS**

Complete the sentences by choosing the correct answer.

1. The speaker says young people
  - a) had a healthier diet in the past
  - b) think fast food is nutritious
  - c) would be healthy if they didn't eat fast food
  
2. Modern day families
  - a) prefer to eat out
  - b) don't have time to prepare healthy food
  - c) eat more than they should
  
3. The speaker says
  - a) people should skip breakfast instead of eating doughnuts or croissants
  - b) home cooked meals are very nutritious
  - c) no fixed meal times lead to bad eating habits
  
4. Young people eat junk food at lunchtime because
  - a) it's convenient
  - b) it's filling
  - c) they can't afford anything else
  
5. The speaker says teenagers
  - a) eat unhealthy snacks all day long
  - b) usually have a healthy evening meal
  - c) only drink sugary soft drinks

**UNIT 26**  
**SHEPHERD'S PIE**

Complete the list of the ingredients needed to make a shepherd's pie:

onions, minced beef, carrots, flour, .....

## UNIT 27

### FOOD WISE

Complete the sentences.

#### Text Organic Food

Organic food is ..... food produced without the use of .....  
Diane was first introduced to organic food when she was a .....  
Her ..... no chemical fertilizers in her garden.  
Even ..... and ..... products can be organic.  
A lot of ..... people come in for lunch to her restaurant.  
Later in the day there is a ..... for people who want to have a .....  
In summer they open a patio and have .....  
People are realizing that organic food tastes .....  
The ..... also benefits from organic food.  
The chemicals used in fertilizers and pesticides ..... the soil and end up .....

#### Food Wise

Eat a .....

Before you start your day

Energy is what you .....

To ..... you work and play

*You've got to be food wise*

And watch what's on your plate

The right food at the right time

Can keep you .....

Snacking burns off fat, so

It can be ..... for you

But ..... foods that are healthy

A ..... bar won't do

*You've got to be food wise ....*

When it comes to .....

Get for something light

A salad or a .....

Will make you feel just .....

*You've got to be food wise ....*

A good ..... in the evening

Will make your day complete

With ..... and spices

A ..... evening treat

*You've got to be food wise ....*

## UNIT 28

### GLOBAL CULTURE

Answer the questions.

1. Which is the biggest fizzy drinks company in the world?
2. Which fast food giant operates in 120 countries?
3. Can you name the most successful sportswear company in the world?

Mark the sentences as true, false or not given.

1. With the use of the Internet and the increase of travel, the world is becoming a bigger place.
2. Most people are happy that everybody eats the same food and watches the same TV programs.
3. Jose Bove organized an attack on the local fizzy drinks stall.
4. His children like to go to McDonald's.
5. They used a bulldozer to crash the place.
6. He was sentenced to three years in prison.

Speak on the advantages and disadvantages of globalization.

**UNIT 29**  
**EATING AMERICAN STYLE**

**Text 1. As American As Apple Pie**

Answer the questions.

1. What does the expression 'as American as apple pie' mean?  
.....
2. What are the only true American foods?  
.....
3. What is eaten for Thanksgiving?  
.....
4. What countries are tacos, pizza and apple pie come from?.....
5. What dish is especially popular in the southern states?.....
6. What is the standard American dessert?  
.....

**Text 2. Fast Food**

Make corrections where necessary.

People on the go because of easy work or social schedules don't have much time for cleaning at home; takeout meals from cafes, pizza parlors, and delicatessens (also called delis) have become a regular part of everyday life. Food can be taken from a restaurant, or people call in orders by the Internet and the takeout meal is delivered to their homes.

Ready to eat and instant processed foods that are hard to find are very popular. TV dinners are complete dinners on a tray that you can take from the fridge and heat up in the oven or stove. Snacks and junk food like doughnuts, pop corn, biscuits or potato chips are also easy to buy.

**Interviews**

Sort out the food belonging to the eating styles of Speaker 1 and Speaker 2. How are they different?

Tofu, hot dog, vanilla milk shake, soy food, organic food, French fries, vegetables, fruit.

**Text 3. What's for Breakfast?**

**Complete the sentences**

1. A weekday breakfast might be something quick: ....., a muffin or .....
2. A weekend breakfast might be ..... waffles, .....or .....
3. Lunch at work or school is usually between.....
4. Some people prefer lunch from home: tuna ....., sliced ....., called cold cuts, or peanut .....and jelly ..... are kids' favorites.
5. Most schools and some businesses have cafeterias where .....
6. Dinner is the ..... of the day.
7. Dinner is generally at .....
8. A typical dinner includes a ....., a ....., ..... or some kind of vegetable protein and a ..... or pasta dish.
9. Stew (.....) and ..... are also popular.

**UNIT 30**  
**IN A RESTAURANT**

What did they like about the restaurant?

.....

**UNIT 31**  
**DESIDERATA**

Fill in the gaps. Translate the text. Comment on it.

Go placidly amid the noise and haste and remember what peace there may be in .....  
As far as possible, without surrender be on good ..... with all persons. Speak your truth .....  
and clearly and ..... to others, even the dull and the ignorant, they too have their story.

Avoid ..... and aggressive persons, they are vexatious to the spirit. If you .....  
yourself with others you may become vain and bitter; for always there will be greater and lesser  
persons than yourself. Enjoy your achievements as well as your plans. Keep .....  
in your own career however humble; it is a real ..... in the changing fortunes of time.

Exercise caution in your ..... affairs, for the world is full of trickery. But let this not  
blind you to what virtue there is. Many persons strive for high ideals and ..... life is  
full of heroism. Be ..... Especially do not feign affection. Neither be cynical about  
love, for in the face of all aridity and disenchantment, it is perennial as the grass. Take .....  
the council of the years gracefully surrendering the things of youth. Nurture strength of spirit to  
shield you in sudden misfortune. But do not distress yourself with imaginings. Many fears are  
born of fatigue and .....

Beyond a wholesome discipline, be ..... with yourself. You are a ..... of the un-  
iverse, no less than the trees and the stars. You have a right to be here. And whether or not it is  
clear to you, ....., the universe is unfolding as it should. Therefore, be at .....  
with God, whatever you conceive Him to be; and whatever your labors and aspirations, in the  
noisy confusions of life, keep peace with your soul. With all its sham and drudgery and broken  
....., it is still a beautiful world. Be ..... Strive to be .....

**TOPIC 4. STUDY**

**UNIT 32**  
**PETER PARKER**

Answer the questions.

1. What is Peter Parker's degree?.....
2. Where did he start working after graduating from university?.....
3. How did his life change one summer?.....
4. What is a great advantage of his new job?.....
5. What places has he been to?.....
6. Where is he planning to go next?.....
7. Why did he have to learn to adjust to different ways of life?.....

**UNIT 33**  
**CAREER PROSPECTS**

Complete the sentences by choosing the correct answer.

1. Malcolm
  - a) is going to do very well in his exams
  - b) never starts working
  - c) is likely to win all the prizes in sports this year
  
2. Malcolm wants
  - a) to enter university
  - b) to work at Oxford university
  - c) to give lectures
  
3. His father wishes he would
  - a) start playing football
  - b) work harder
  - c) entertain himself from time to time
  
4. James's teachers say
  - a) he is hopeless
  - b) he has ability but he works by fits and starts
  - c) he is hardworking and consistent but not so capable as his brother
  
5. James
  - a) never does his homework
  - b) prefers housework to homework
  - c) spends less than twenty minutes on his homework
  
6. James is crazy about
  - a) girls
  - b) socializing
  - c) sports
  
7. His mother wants James to
  - a) become a professional tennis player
  - b) study law
  - c) make more money
  
8. James's father thinks
  - a) they should force James to work harder
  - b) James should do what he is cut out for
  - c) he should develop his personality for a couple of years' time.

**UNIT 34**  
**VOCABULARY LEARNING**

Write down how different students organize their vocabulary learning. Give your comments.

Student 1	She
-----------	-----

Student 2	He
Student 3	She
Student 4	He
Student 5	She
Student 6	She
Student 7	He
Student 8	She

### UNIT 35

#### LIFE IN A JAPANESE SCHOOL

Mark the sentences as true, false or not given.

1. In Japan education is more important than in any other country.
2. In Britain people usually stay with the same company all their life.
3. Japanese schoolchildren must work hard to get a good job.
4. They have to pay money to enter a university.
5. The atmosphere in junior high school is less relaxed and more competitive than in primary school.
6. Before each lesson the pupils stand up and the teacher bows to them
7. It is considered rude for pupils to look at the teacher's face when speaking to him.
8. Japanese children prefer mental activity to physical one.
9. They go to special extra schools in the evenings.
10. Japanese schoolchildren don't have any homework.
11. On holidays they go to school to take part in club and sport activities.
12. Japanese children are bored with having so much studying.



**UNIT 36**  
**HOW DO YOU SOUND IN ENGLISH?**

Answer the questions.

1. What two ways of listening are useful for students?  
.....
2. What can we pay attention to when we are listening to foreign speech?  
.....
3. What should we work on if we want to pronounce the words correctly?  
.....
4. What is “shadowing”?  
.....
5. Why should we look at English speakers when they are talking?  
.....

**UNIT 37**  
**LIVING AT UNIVERSITY**

Answer the questions.

1. Why do most British students choose a university a long way from home?  
.....
2. Do students have to pay to go to university?  
.....
3. Where do they get money for a living?  
.....
4. What is the grant supposed to pay for?  
.....
5. Why do more students drop out nowadays?  
.....

**UNIT 38**  
**EDUCATION**

Mark the sentences as true or false.

1. Most universities and colleges have entrance examinations.
2. GCSEs or A levels are school-leaving exams.
3. Many school leavers take a gap year before entering a university.
4. During their gap year most people stay at home with their parents and just take a rest.
5. The first-year students usually live in a hall of residence.
6. Most universities run language courses for British students.
7. Students can choose such subjects as Commercial pop music or Environment at a university.
8. Schoolchildren are called undergraduates.
9. You must study 7 years to become a doctor.
10. You can take vocational qualifications to prepare for scientific research work.
11. Students who pass their finals well get a BA or BSc degree.
12. You must be single to get a Bachelor’s degree.
13. At university students take part in drama, charity and sports clubs and societies.
14. During rag week students organize performances and collect money for charity.
15. Universities don’t approve of pop bands and student parties.

**UNIT 39**  
**GOING TO SCHOOL**

Answer the questions.

**Text 1. The School System**

1. What do Americans mean when they say ‘school’? .....
2. At what age can people study for their high school or college diploma?.....
3. How long do American children study at school?.....
4. How much do they pay to study at school?.....
5. Why do 11% of children go to private schools?.....
6. Where can they study religion?.....
7. What is called ‘kindergarten’?.....
8. What is called a ‘grade’?.....
9. How many hours a day do students spend at school?.....
10. Do they have homework assignments?.....
11. When does the school year begin and end?.....
12. Can American schoolchildren ask questions and discuss their ideas in class?.....
13. How many students are there in each class in public schools?.....

**Text 2. At High School**

Mark the sentences as true or false.

1. To enter high school students have to complete a course of studies that leads to a diploma.
2. The SAT is a scholastic aptitude test.
3. The SAT checks math and English language skills through multiple choice questions.
4. A student starting high school is called a freshman.
5. A student finishing high school is called a sophomore.
6. There are six classes a day usually from 9 a.m. to 3 p.m.
7. Physical education (PE) and a foreign language are not compulsory subjects.
8. They can usually choose elective subjects like art and music.
9. At the end of the term student get a grade of A, B, C, D or F.
10. ‘F’ is the grade given for the best results.
11. Grades are based on test scores, class participation, class and homework assignments.
12. When students have enough of credits they can graduate.

**Text 3. Universities and colleges.**

Correct the mistakes.

Thirty-one per cent of high school graduates go to college. Students don’t pay tuition to study at public and private universities. None of them have scholarships to help with the cost of tuition. Even with a scholarship higher education is very cheap: not many families take out loans to pay for their children’s college education.

A part-time undergraduate degree usually takes four years. Many students study full-time, so it may take them much longer to finish. Some take an associate’s degree at a community college, where the tuition fees are higher and study two more years at a four-year college to complete their bachelor’s degree.

Some undergraduate students must take their liberal-arts classes in English, math, history, and science. They choose a major in a subject such as business, education or art in their first year of college or after they have completed all of their course work.

**UNIT 40**  
**THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE**

**Text 1. The Germanic Influence**

Complete the sentences.

The Anglo-Saxons, who invaded England in AD 350, came from .....  
 They spoke a Germanic language, which became the basis of old English. Even today, words used in ..... for ordinary objects are mostly Anglo-Saxon, or Germanic, in origin. Germanic languages, such as ..... have very similar words for the objects in the box below. Words of Germanic origin are usually ..... (often just ..... ) and tend to be ..... in modern English.

shoe clothes earth sun moon day man wife child friend house food water sleep love say live have be work
--

**Text 2. The French Influence**

Answer the questions.

1. What language did the Roman languages originate from?.....
2. Where did the words in the box below come from?.....
3. What are these words associated with?.....
4. What is the difference between the words of Latin and Germanic origin?.....
5. When did the Romans invade Britain?.....
6. Why does English have different words for animals and their meat?  
 .....

government parliament judge court legal military army crown nation state country power authority people
--

**Text 3. The Classical Influence**

Mark the sentences as true or false.

1. During the Renaissance there was a revival of interest in Greek and Latin culture.
2. Thousands of words of Germanic origin flooded into English at that time.
3. There are such pairs of words as *base* and *basis* in English because Latin influenced English twice – through Norman French in the 11<sup>th</sup> century and during the Renaissance in the 14<sup>th</sup>-15<sup>th</sup> century.
4. At the same time it became popular in European countries to use their mother tongues.
5. The Bible began to be read in Latin.
6. Now we can explain something in English with the words of Germanic, Latin and Greek origin.

GERMANIC	LATIN	GREEK
book	library	bibliography
renew	renovate	neolithic
water	aquatic	hydraulic

**Text 4. The Expansion of Learning**

Answer the questions.

1. Why do new words have to be created?
2. How are they created?
3. What is the origin of the word *telephone*?

**Text 5. The Colonial Influence**

Correct the mistakes.

Words from foreign countries have entered English as a result of wars and colonial expansion: *alcohol* and *algebra* come from Spanish; *divan* and *khaki* from Persian; *chocolate* and *tomato* from native African languages; *bungalow* and *cot* from Gujarati; *tea* and *tycoon* from Japanese.

Other words were invented in the English-speaking colonies, the UK in particular. Many British people are happy about Americanisms entering the English language, but don't realize how few of the words they use come from American English. It is because of Great Britain that English is now truly a world language: a world where over 19 per cent of scientific papers are written in English and a world where people who don't speak each other's mother tongue are most unlikely to communicate in English.

**TOPIC 5. SHOPPING**

**UNIT 41**

**MODEL SHOW**

Answer the questions about the models: Anna, John, Mark, Carol, Peter, Jim and Helen

1. Who is wearing a blue T-shirt?
2. What colour is Anna's shirt?
3. What is Mark wearing on his feet?
4. Who has a lovely hat on?
5. Who is wearing a tracksuit?
6. What is black in John's outfit?
7. Who is wearing purple boots?
8. What is Carol's dress like?
9. Who is wearing a bright yellow raincoat?
10. What is on Pete's head?

**UNIT 42**

**I'M LOOKING FOR BETTY**

What are the children wearing and what are they doing now?

Betty.....

Lucy.....

Steve.....

Rick.....

Roy.....

Kathy.....

**UNIT 43**

**DO YOU WEAR A UNIFORM?**

Mark the sentences as true, false or not given.

1. Italian policemen don't wear a uniform in summer.
2. American policemen wear a gold badge on the jacket or on the shirt and on the cap.
3. Chinese policemen wear a green uniform.
4. Chinese schoolchildren have brighter uniforms than British schoolchildren.
5. Beefeaters are dressed in dark blue and red uniforms on special days.
6. Beefeaters carry radios with them.
7. British schoolchildren wear old-fashioned hats

**UNIT 44**

**CAN I HELP YOU?**

Answer the questions.

1. What kind of footwear does the woman want?
2. What does she want to do before buying?
3. What is the difference in price between the two cameras?
4. Which of them does the man want to buy and why?
5. What's the title of the book?
6. How much is it?

**UNIT 45**

**GETTING PRESENTS**

What was the best present for each of these people? Who gave it to them?

Tony.....

Linda.....

Helen .....

**UNIT 46**

**SHOPPING COMPLAINTS**

**Task 1.**

Tick the problems that the man has with his jacket. Does he want to exchange it or get the refund?

- |                    |                   |
|--------------------|-------------------|
| 1. Broken zip      | 5. Loose buttons  |
| 2. Missing buttons | 6. Stained sleeve |
| 3. Torn lining     | 7. Uneven sleeves |
| 4. Loose stitching | 8. Uneven pockets |

**Task 2** Match the objects to the problems. How does the woman sound?

- |             |             |
|-------------|-------------|
| 1. Table    | A cracked   |
| 2. Mirror   | B stained   |
| 3. Carpet   | C scratched |
| 4. Cushions | D broken    |
| 5. TV       | E torn      |

## UNIT 47

### GIBSON'S MALL

Complete the advertisement.

Facilities: over 100 free ....., a roof-garden .....,  
a gas station, an indoor .....

Stores: Kay's ....., Baxter's Hardware ....., Carter's .....,  
dress stores, ....., bookstores, a deli, a .....,  
a .....salon, and much more.

Opening hours: Monday to Saturday ..... Sunday: .....

## UNIT 48

### A RADIO INTERVIEW

Mark the sentences as true, false or not given.

1. Donna believes that in general advertising does a lot of harm.
2. Ads make us feel good about the way we look.
3. Most adverts mislead us.
4. Buying certain products can solve our problems and change our life.
5. TV advertising produces stronger effect on people.
6. Not all adverts are bad.

## UNIT 49

### JEANS

Correct the sentences from the text.

1. Some people say that jeans are the clothes of youth.
2. The story of jeans started almost 300 years ago in Italy.
3. In 1850 "Levi's pants" made of canvas became popular with gold miners, farmers and students.
4. Later Levi began making pants of a blue silk cloth called denim.
5. Elvis Presley, the king of jazz, and James Dean, a famous TV star, made jeans popular with teens.
6. In the sixties young people had more money, their clothes showed their wealth.
7. Some people decorated jeans with colourful patches and designs.
8. In the seventies designer jeans of Calvin Klein or Pierre Cardin were very stylish and very modern.

## UNIT 50

### SHOPPING

**Task 1.** Match each conversation (1-5) with the names of the things these people buy.

Pants and jeans

Cars

Tables

Bicycles

Shoes

Furniture

TV-sets

Ties

**Task 2.** Write if people will buy these things. If they don't, write the reason of it.

1. The jacket.....
2. The CD player.....
3. The cordless phone.....
4. The jeans.....
5. The computer.....
6. The notebook.....

**UNIT 51**

**SHOP TILL YOU DROP**

**Text 1. Going to the Mall**

Complete the sentences.

Shopping is a .....of many Americans. They usually go to ..... called malls that have a variety of ....., .....and ..... Chain stores like J.C. Penny or The Gap are also found in malls. Everything is indoors so you can walk from store to store without worrying about..... Malls are air-conditioned ..... and heated .....and have large parking lots where you can .....Some malls provide .....There might be a band ..... or a puppet show ..... Childcare facilities are ....., so children can play safely while their parents shop. People who live or work in large cities still shop at ..... and downtown where most department stores are located. .... have pedestrianized shopping areas with specialty shops and restaurants that are like outdoor malls.

The girl has a .....job as a .....in a chain store. She works on .....and Tuesday and Thursday evenings. .... think she should start paying some of her own expenses even though she is only .....

**Text 2. Cash or charge?**

Correct the mistakes.

Shoppers can use their credit cards to charge almost everything they buy. Selling something with a credit card can be more comfortable than paying for it right away with a credit card. There are many different kinds of credit cards, and over 6 per cent of Americans have one or two cards. Many people end up in debt to credit card companies because they have to trouble paying off their credit cards debts.

Post-order shopping has become very unpopular because it's a waste of time. Shoppers use credit cards to pay for something over the phone after they have seen it advertised in a mail order catalogue, on radio, or in a newspaper or journal. A number of mail-order companies accept phone orders twenty-three hours a day and some have toll-free numbers. Many cities have a sales tax that is usually 8 to 10 per cent of the price. Some states put a tax on clothes, cigarettes and liquor.

**Text 3. What's on Sale.**

Mark the sentences as true, false or not given.

1. Many Americans are bargain hunters because they shop at outlets that sell merchandise at a discount.
2. Regular stores also give discounts.
3. Sales are advertised on TV, radio, newspapers and by mail.
4. TV advertisements are the most effective.
5. There is competition among stores.
6. Many stores reduce prices, stay open late and work seven days a week.

**UNIT 52**

**YES NO QUESTIONS**

Write down the questions and answer them with 'yes' or 'no'.

- 1.....
- 2.....
- 3.....
- 4.....
- .....
- 6.....
- 7.....
- 8.....
- 9.....
- 10.....
- 11.....
- 12.....
- 13.....
- 14.....
- 15.....

**UNIT 53**

**AT A SHOP**

Complete the sentences.

**C1**

- Good afternoon.
- Hello. I'd like shampoo for dry hair
- .....?
- ..... the small bottle.
- 76 p
- I'll take .....

**C2**

- .....?
- Yes, of course.

**C3**

- .....?
- It's all right, thanks. I'm being served.



**C4**

- Can I help you?
- ..... a child's tricycle.
- ..... is the child?

**C5**

- Could I have a pint of milk, please.
- Yes, of course. .... Anything else?
- No, that's all, thanks. ....
- 24p

**C6**

- Hello, Sid. Have you got flashbulbs?
- I'm afraid not, Fred. We'll have some in next week. ....
- I'm gonna be away on Monday, .....
- OK, see you later.
- Bye, Sid.

**UNIT 54****THE WORLD'S MOST LOVED CAR**

Choose the correct answer.

1. The world's most loved car is
  - a) noisy, but beautiful and comfortable
  - b) noisy, ugly and not very comfortable
  - c) quiet, attractive and comfortable
2. In Britain they call it
  - a) Bug
  - b) Fly
  - c) Beetle
3. Volkswagen was created
  - a) for people
  - b) for soldiers
  - c) for the rich
4. It started to be used
  - a) in Germany before the war
  - b) in Britain after the war
  - c) in France during the war
5. When the first owners of Volkswagen greeted each other, they
  - a) waved
  - b) shouted hello
  - c) honked
6. The car is still made in
  - a) North America
  - b) South America
  - c) South Africa
7. A lot of people love this car because
  - a) it's cheap and convenient
  - b) it's modern and stylish
  - c) it's perfect, it has character and it's totally reliable

## TOPIC 6. TOWN

### UNIT 55

#### A TINY CITY

Complete the sentences.

1. Can you imagine a city ..... or .....
2. This city is situated .....
3. There are .....one next to the other, you can see ....., trains that move and ships in the harbour.
4. There is even .....
5. You can see .....around the city

### UNIT 56

#### MY FAVOURITE AMERICAN CITY

Complete the table with the names of the cities: Seattle, Portland, San Francisco, Los Angeles, Denver, Dallas, New York, Chicago, Boston, Miami, Washington, Philadelphia.

Name	Favourite city
Sam Lengo	
Margot Holzman	
Hans Kelly	
Junko Sato	
Paul Aston	

### UNIT 57

#### EXCUSE ME

Write what places people are asking about and how to get there.

Conversation 1

Conversation 2

.....  
.....

.....  
.....

### UNIT 58

#### PARKING PROBLEM

Correct the text.

My father and I had decided to buy a new flat, and I'd made an appointment to see our house estate agent. I'd never seen him before and I was a bit nervous. I drove into town and I was happy enough to find a parking space beside the bank. I'd just started reversing into the space when another car drove out of it. I was so glad! I opened my window and smiled at the other driver. He ignored me and walked away. It took me twelve minutes to find another space. As soon as I parked the car I walked back to the bank. I was twenty minutes late for my interview. I went to the manager's office, knocked and walked in. The manager was standing by the window. He was the man who had taken my parking space!

**UNIT 59**

**A CAR ACCIDENT**

Why did the accident happen?

.....

**UNIT 60**

**THEY DIDN'T STOP TO TELL ME**

Mark the sentences as true, false or not given.

1. Stan lost his car when he was driving down the M6 from Scotland carrying brandy.
2. He is trying to give up hard drinks.
3. He stopped at Burnham Wood to get some diesel and to have a coffee.
4. He parked his car behind the café.
5. He was phoning his girlfriend when he saw his lorry going past the window.
6. He always locks the cab door.
7. He remembers checking the passenger door.
8. He thinks that the thieves had the car keys.
9. He didn't tell his wife that he had lost his truck.

**UNIT 61**

**ON THE ROAD**

Complete the remarks from the conversation.

1. You can't ..... There is a double .....
2. You'll get a .....if you leave it here.
3. All the traffic wardens .....
4. Excuse me, may I see your .....?
5. In that case you'll have to take it to .....within five days.
6. There's a thirty miles an hour ..... on this road, sir.
7. Oh, good evening. I don't know if you can help me. My car .....
8. We have a twenty-four hour .....
9. I'll send .....
10. It's nothing serious, sir. You've .....
11. Can you tow me to .....
12. Shall I ..... or .....?
13. Hold on. I can't find my .....

**UNIT 62**

**MOVING TO WHITNEY**

Compare living in Whitney with living in London.

Whitney	London
.....	.....
.....	.....
.....	.....

**UNIT 63**

**TOKYO**

Mark the sentences as true, false or not given.

1. Tokyo is a town you can love and hate at the same time.
2. The streets of Tokyo are very crowded.
3. In the morning you can see students helping passengers get out of the train.
4. The best time to be in the streets of Tokyo is after 11.30 p.m.
5. Japanese people are only polite when they go along the crowded streets.
6. In a Japanese train everybody is reading a newspaper.
7. In Tokyo there is a train station at every corner.
8. Japanese trains go every 5 minutes.
9. The trains leave and arrive on time.

**UNIT 64**

**LIVING IN MADRID**

Answer the questions.

1. How long has Kate lived in Madrid? .....
2. How is an ordinary day in Madrid different from the one in London?  
.....  
.....
3. How do things change in summer?  
.....
4. What was Kate's first problem when she arrived in Spain? .....
5. What meals do they have in Madrid? .....
6. Where do people live in Madrid? .....
7. How is Madrid different from London? .....
8. Why does Kate like living in Madrid better? .....
9. What's the traffic like? .....
10. What is public transport like? .....
11. How does she feel about coming back to England?.....

**UNIT 65**

**DIRECTIONS**

Write down how to get to Lucy's place.

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

**UNIT 66****A SHORTCUT**

Answer the questions.

1. Why did Helen feel nervous?
2. Why were there no people on the bus stop?
3. Why did the taxi driver take a shortcut?
4. Why did Helen leave the taxi?
5. Why did Helen manage to catch the train?

**UNIT 67****LEARNING TO DRIVE**

Put the instructions in the correct order.

Make sure the car is in neutral before starting the engine.

Put the car into first gear.

Fasten your seat belt.

Put your foot on the clutch.

Lift the clutch and press the accelerator gently at the same time.

Check if the mirror is in the right place.

Push the clutch to the floor.

Release the hand brake.

Look in the mirror to make sure nothing is coming from behind.

Switch on the ignition and start the car.

**UNIT 68****SHOPPING**

Complete the table.

things to buy	shop	how to get there
	co-op	
box of tissues		
large tube of toothpaste		
	newsagent's	

**UNIT 69**

**WHAT WOULD YOU HAVE DONE**

Correct the mistakes.

**Text 1. Naughty Bishop**

I was told a lovely story about the bishop of Fleetwood. He'd gone to New York for a church ceremony. Anyway, when he stepped off from the train there were a few journalists and cameramen. The last question one of the journalists asked was, "Do you intend to visit any night clubs in New York?" Well, the bishop was 80 years old. "Are there any night clubs in New York?" he asked innocently. The next evening the headline in one of the New York magazines was "Bishop's first question on arrival to New York – Are there any night clubs?" How would you have felt?

**Text 2. Unless!**

I'd just parked my car in the street near the baseball stadium in Liverpool. It was twelve minutes before the end of the match and I was in a hurry. Three small boys came up to me and said, "Give us 50 p and we'll look for your car while you are playing at the match. I told them to clear off, and one of them looked at me with big, round, innocent blue eyes and said "Unless you give us the wallet, something might happen to your car while you are away. You know, a scratch or a flat tyre. Something like that. I was surprised. What would you have done?"

**UNIT 70**

**PARKING IN LONDON**

Answer the questions.

1. How did Leslie get to her destination in London?.....
2. Where did she leave her car?.....
3. Who did she ask to help her find the car?.....
4. Why couldn't she find it?.....
5. What was the policeman's reaction when the car was found?.....

**TOPIC 7. WEATHER**

**UNIT 71**

**WHAT WILL THE WEATHER BE LIKE?**

Complete the table.

day	weather	sky	rain	temperature
Wednesday afternoon				
Wednesday night				
Thursday				
Friday				

## UNIT 72

### IT'S COLD OUTSIDE

Complete the table.

№	area	weather
1	Ontario, Quebec and Newfoundland	
2	Nova Scotia	
3	Northwest Territories	
4	British Columbia, Yukon	
5	Manitoba, Saskatchewan, Alberta	

## UNIT 73

### IS THE SUN GOOD OR BAD FOR US?

Mark the sentences as true, false or not given.

1. The good or bad effect of the sun depends on how much sun you get and at what time of the day.
2. Long hours in the sun stop an ageing process and decrease the chances of developing skin cancer.
3. Sun can make us feel better and help us to slim.
4. You should have a cup of hot green tea before sunbathing.
5. We slim because ultra violet rays of the sun make us produce less melatonin.
6. Moderate doses of sun help to protect from diseases like colds and coughs.
7. The tradition of having the siesta in the middle of the day reduces the negative influence of the sun.
8. Fair skin is more sensitive to the sun.
9. Sunbathing in Africa is more dangerous than in South America.

## UNIT 74

### FORECASTING THE WEATHER

Correct the mistakes.

... And that is the end of the news. Now we'll go over to the weather centre for the weather report for the whole of the United Kingdom.

Good morning. Due to the depression lying off the north of England and the high in the south of England today's weather will be variable through the country. Starting then in the south-west it'll start warm and become cool with long periods of rain. Around London and the south-east the day will be dry but cold at times. In the Midlands it will be cloudy all day with showers at times. Moving over then to South Wales there may be fog patches over the mountains for probably most of the day. While in North Wales it'll be generally rainy. In the North East it will be cloudy all day, no rain anywhere and it'll be heavy at times. Further north in Scotland we can expect snow in those areas south of Edinburgh while in the very north of Scotland and the Hebrides there'll be hail on high ground. Now in Northern Ireland there's a possibility of rain and it'll surely be very cold. That's the end of the weather forecast.

## REVISION LISTENING TEST

### PART 1

You will hear five people talking about businesses that they run. For questions **1-5** choose from the list of businesses A-F what each speaker is describing. There is one extra letter which you do not need to use.

- |                    |                    |
|--------------------|--------------------|
| A a bookshop       | D a fitness centre |
| B a driving school | E a travel agency  |
| C an antique shop  | F a computer shop  |

### PART 2

You will hear a conversation between the headmistress of a school and the parents of a little girl. Answer questions **1- 7** by writing **T** (for True), or **F** (for False) in the boxes provided.

1. Gemma is taken away to meet the other children and to be tested in her knowledge
2. She is not really used to being at school with her parents.
3. Gemma is gentle and easy to deal with.
4. She is fond of listening to the radio.
5. Her granny looks after Gemma when her parents are at work.
6. They heard about this school from a neighbour of theirs whose daughter is a pupil in this school.
7. When they saw their advertisement in the magazine they decided to come and have a look.

### PART 3

You will hear a receptionist and a man discussing some evening classes. For questions **1- 7**, decide which of the choices **A**, **B** or **C** is the correct answer.

1. Course tutors want
  - a) to keep classes small
  - b) to have as many students as possible
  - c) to keep a constant number of students
2. What does the man have to do to join a botany class?
  - a) register on the computer
  - b) fill in an application form
  - c) contact the tutor
3. How many students have registered for the design class?
  - a) twelve
  - b) fifteen
  - c) eighteen
4. What does the design tutor organize for the students?
  - a) TV appearances
  - b) various activities
  - c) weekly visits to his garden
5. What does the cost of the botany class include?
  - a) nothing
  - b) drawing material
  - c) books
6. How much does the "Designing the small garden" cost?
  - a) £70
  - b) £75
  - c) £80
7. What time does the design class start?
  - a) 6 pm
  - b) 7 pm
  - c) 8 pm



# VIDEOTASKS

## PART 1. WINE AND CAKES FOR GENTLEMEN (1)

*Match the English words and their Russian translation.*

cuisine, gravy, delicacies, setting, fancy, chef, coarse, earl, marmalade, jacket potato, abundance, site;

1. картошка в мундире
2. шеф-повар
3. апельсиновый джем
6. место для чего-то
4. кухня (как стиль приготовления пищи)
5. изобилие
7. граф
8. непростой, необычный
9. окружение
10. грубый
11. мясной соус
12. деликатесы

### Task 1. English Food and National Character

*1. What does the traditional picnic include? Place a tick beside the items:*

a beautiful setting \_\_\_ good weather \_\_\_ a coarse wool blanket \_\_\_  
simple sandwiches \_\_\_ outdoor games \_\_\_ songs and dances \_\_\_

*2. What elements of the beautiful setting of the picnic are shown in the film? Place a tick beside the items:*

green lawns \_\_\_ lake with swans \_\_\_ the bank of the river \_\_\_ castle \_\_\_  
public parks \_\_\_ specially equipped sites \_\_\_ mountains \_\_\_ flowers \_\_\_\_\_

### Task 2. Traditional English food

*1. Answer the questions:*

1. What does the majority of the British eat for breakfast?
2. What was the Earl of Sandwich famous for? How are the Sandwich Islands called now?

*2. Say true or false and correct if necessary*

1. Englishmen pay a lot of attention to food.
2. The main features of English food are simplicity, abundance and freshness.
3. Continental countries love English cuisine.
4. The British enthusiasm for foreign food is growing nowadays.
5. The most popular lunchtime foods are fish & chips, roast beef sandwiches and stuffed jacket potatoes.

## PART 2. WINE AND CAKES FOR GENTLEMEN (2)

*Match the English words and their Russian translation.*

pint, ale, hop, vineyard, mead, brewery, malt, lager, herbs

1. солод
2. алкогольный напиток на меде
3. травы
4. эль
5. пивоваренный завод
6. хмель
7. ~ 0, 57 литра
8. виноградник
9. светлое пиво

### Task 3. "Traditional English Drink"

*Say what drink is described by each sentence: beer or ale.*

1. It contains hop. \_\_\_\_\_
2. It keeps better. \_\_\_\_\_
3. It has a slightly sweet taste. \_\_\_\_\_
4. It's home made. \_\_\_\_\_
5. It's a commercial drink. \_\_\_\_\_
6. It contains herbs. \_\_\_\_\_

### Task 4. "The English Pub"

*1. Answer the questions.*

1. What does the name "pub" stand for?
2. Is it allowed to serve children in pubs?
3. Finish the sentence: Unattended children .....
4. Why do people come to English pubs?

*2. Say true or false.*

1. In the 16<sup>th</sup> century British women went to the pubs as often as men.
2. The Romans were the first to bring their wine-making traditions and their vines to England.
3. Few people in England are interested in wine classes because not so much wine is produced now.

4. Recently a chain of vodka-bars has appeared in England.
5. The Romans who conquered England opened the first taverns to sell wine and food.
6. European cafes, as opposed to English pubs, which raise emotions, are places of peace.
7. A traditional English pub is focused on ale and, probably, good food.

### **PART 3. GREAT ENGLISH TEA**

#### **Task 1. Translate into Russian.**

tea cosy, bowl, jug, tray, flavor, porcelain, handle, clipper, scone;

#### **Task 2. Say true or false.**

1. The tea bush produces both green and black tea.
2. On bank holidays all tea and coffee shops are closed in England.
3. Traditionally the owner of the teashop does the baking herself.
4. Margaret thinks that tea makes people more aggressive.
5. Five o'clock tea is a ceremony during which talking is forbidden.
6. In the 18<sup>th</sup> century the tea bowls were smaller and had no handles.
7. In 1837 the English began to import Indian tea instead of Chinese tea.
8. The Indian teas were more delicate than strong teas from China.
9. Charles the Second Earl of Grey «gave» his name to his favourite flavoured tea with Bergamot.

#### **Task 3. Answer the questions.**

1. What gives the teabush its specific natural flavours?
2. How many cups of tea does Stephen Twining drink a day?
3. Why was tea called «the secret weapon» of the English during the war?
4. Why did the British put milk into tea?
5. Why was tea a drink of aristocracy at first?
6. What is the best shape for a tea cup: straight, round or fluted?
7. Are you a tea person? What is your favourite tea?

### **PART 4. OUR ENGLAND IS A GARDEN**

#### **Task 1. Translate into Russian.**

lawn, incarnation, pagan, Druids, equinox, oak, eternal, mistletoe, omnipresent, thistle, leek, maze

#### **Task 2. Choose the correct answer.**

1. The symbol of Scotland is the  
a. rose b. thistle c. leek d. oak
2. The Green Man is a  
a. historical figure b. popular politician c. forest spirit d. Greenpeace leader
3. Stonehenge is  
a. a pagan monument b. a historical museum c. a famous garden d. Druids' home
4. The Druids thought oaks  
a. devil's trees b. the most beautiful trees c. eternal trees d. magic trees
5. The mistletoe is used  
a. for salads b. as a Christmas decoration c. at weddings d. in flowerbeds

#### **Task 3. Say true or false and correct if necessary.**

1. The ancient cult of trees is still alive in Britain.
2. The industrial revolution in England happened later than in other countries.
3. The English gardens today are copied from Italian ones.
4. Flowerbeds of various shapes and sizes are omnipresent in Britain today.
5. Turgenev was a great admirer of English gardens.
6. There is a museum of Garden history in Britain.

**Task 4. Translate and comment on the quotation. Where is it taken from? Whose words are these?**  
*What's in a name? that which we call a rose By any other name would smell as sweet.*

## SUPPLEMENT 1. DICTATIONS

### TOPIC 1. HOME

#### ТЕХТ 1

1. Мы вернулись на работу после отпуска и очень по тебе скучаем.
2. Бабушка делает большую часть работы по дому, все как обычно, как ты видишь.
3. Последние новости и главная тема разговоров, конечно, их новая квартира.
4. Как ты можешь представить, для них это событие и они, конечно, волнуются.
5. Их новая квартира в новом районе на окраине города.
6. Это довольно далеко от центра, но это не имеет большого значения.
7. Люси немного расстроена, что квартира на верхнем этаже двенадцатиэтажного здания.
8. С этим ничего нельзя сделать и, в конце концов, там есть лифт.
9. Насколько я знаю, это двухкомнатная квартира с просторной прихожей и балконом.
10. Кухня очень комфортабельная с электроплитой и встроенной мебелью.
11. В спальне есть встроенные платяные шкафы, что, без сомнения, очень удобно.
12. В квартире, конечно, есть все современные удобства.
13. Есть электричество, центральное отопление, холодное и горячее водоснабжение.
14. Надеюсь скоро увидеть всё сама и тогда написать тебе ещё.
15. Вот пока все наши новости, мало, что могу ещё сказать.
16. Нам повезло с погодой, довольно тепло и совсем не похоже на осень.

#### VOС 1 (part 1)

1. У них дом в деревне кирпичный или деревянный? У них в саду есть беседка?
2. Он живет не в гостинице, а в общежитии, и делит комнату со своим братом.
3. Их (многоквартирный) дом – высотное здание.
4. У них коттедж на окраине города или в пригороде.
5. У них отдельные или смежные комнаты?
6. Есть гостиная (3), детская, кабинет и кладовка.
7. На лестничной площадке – мусоропровод.
8. Где у вас лестница (стационарная)? (2)
9. Потолок здесь очень высокий. Нам нужна лестница (приставная).
10. У них нет лифта, они поднимаются вверх и спускаются вниз пешком.

#### VOС 1 (part 2)

1. Наша квартира выходит окнами на юг /север / восток /запад.
2. Окна выходят на тихую улицу.
3. Их квартира на первом этаже (BrE) в этом десятиэтажном здании (2).
4. Сколько этажей в этом доме? – В нем три этажа.
5. На каком этаже твоя квартира? – Она на третьем этаже.
6. Какой у тебя номер дома? – Я живу в доме 61 Оксфорд Стрит.
7. Какой у тебя номер квартиры? – Я живу в квартире пятнадцать.
8. Автобусная остановка в пяти минутах ходьбы отсюда. Это в десяти минутах езды.

#### VOС 2

1. Они переехали (въехали) вчера. Они устраивают новоселье завтра.
2. Здесь слишком мало места. Здесь немного мебели, только самое необходимое.
3. Дом спланирован так, чтобы было легко хозяйничать.
4. Они открывают / закрывают шторы. Они поднимают / опускают жалюзи.
5. Пол покрыт линолеумом / паркетом / ламинатом.
6. Стены оклеены обоями. Ванная комната выложена плиткой.
7. Комната покрашена в желтый цвет. Потолок побелен.
8. Его комната в беспорядке. Он находит работу по дому утомительной.
9. Я помогаю по дому. Всё на своих местах. Кухня блестит и сверкает.
10. Это место не очень комфортное, но удобное для встречи, так как оно недалеко.
11. Яркие шторы на окне делают кухню уютной.
12. Обои подходят по цвету к ковру. Ковер хорошо сочетается с мебелью.
13. Нет ничего приятнее, чем сидеть дома в дождливую погоду.

### **VOС 3 (1)**

1. У вас мебельный гарнитур или мебельная стенка?
2. Я хочу купить застекленный книжный шкаф и шкаф для посуды.
3. В бабушкином доме есть сундук, комод, швейная машинка, зеркало и два шкафа.
4. Они продают односпальные и двуспальные кровати, парные и двухъярусные кровати.
5. Я не могу спать на раскладушке. Я буду спать на диван-кровать. Дай мне подушку.
6. Убери подушки с тахты. Давай сядем на этот диванчик.
7. Давай купим новое покрывало на кровать и (шотландский) плед на диван.
8. Около кушетки – коврик. Между кроватями – прикроватные тумбочки.
9. В кухне – обеденный стол и четыре табуретки.
10. В спальне туалетный столик с креслом, на полу – ковер.
11. Это коврик для ванной, а это коврик для прихожей.

### **VOС 3 (2)**

1. Люстра в гостиной, торшер в спальне, бра в прихожей.
2. Над камином – каминная полка. На ней ваза и свечи в подсвечниках.
3. Я пользуюсь наушниками, чтобы слушать музыку на смартфоне или планшете.
4. Я смотрю фильмы в интернете или скачиваю их на свой компьютер или ноутбук.
5. Нужна веб-камера, чтобы разговаривать по скайпу. Я хочу обновить программное обеспечение.
6. В кухне есть кухонный комбайн, посудомоечная машина и микроволновая печь.
7. У нас новый холодильник (2) с большой морозильной камерой.
8. Стиральная машина в кухне рядом с кухонной раковиной.
9. Ванные принадлежности на полке над раковиной, полотенца висят слева.
10. У них на даче есть баня.

### **VOС 5**

1. В гостях хорошо, а дома лучше.
2. Дом, милый дом.
3. Дом там, где твое сердце.
4. Дом англичанина – его крепость.
5. Скелет в шкафу.
6. Лучше поздно, чем никогда.
7. Семь раз отмерь, один раз отрежь.
8. Чем больше ты получаешь, тем больше хочешь получить.
9. Все лучшее в жизни бесплатно.
10. Человек ищет то, что ему надо, по всему миру и находит это дома.

### **COMPARISON MODELS**

1. Ты выше меня (его, ее, нас, их).
2. Он такой же высокий, как я.
3. Он не такой высокий, как я. (2)
4. Он самый высокий из трех (из всех).
5. Этот дом вдвое больше нашего. Наш дом вдвое меньше.
6. Он вдвое моложе меня.
7. Чем больше он будет учиться, тем больше будет знать.
8. Чем скорее ты это сделаешь, тем лучше.
9. гораздо лучше – немного лучше.

### **TOPIC 2. DAILY PROGRAMME**

#### **ТЕХТ 1**

1. Я поступил в педагогический институт.
2. Моя мечта сбылась. Я изучаю иностранные языки.
3. Нелегко вместить все в один день.
4. Распорядок дня становится вопросом выигрыша или проигрыша.
5. Мудрое изречение советует вставать рано.
6. Чем мудрее человек, тем меньше он спит по утрам.
7. Звонок будильника будит меня и моих соседей по комнате в половине седьмого.

8. Разве не весело делать зарядку под музыку?
9. Нам требуется сорок минут, чтобы добраться туда.
10. Гардероб переполнен студентами, которые пытаются приехать в институт до звонка.
11. После уроков я иду в буфет или в столовую пообедать.
12. Вечером после короткого отдыха я делаю домашнее задание, и знаете, это требует времени.
13. Перед тем, как лечь спать я гуляю с друзьями, разговаривая о последних новостях
14. Когда я ложусь спать, я вспоминаю события дня.
15. Мне не жаль, потому что я знаю: «Нет легких путей в учении».

### **VOС. 1**

1. Я не ранняя пташка, я не люблю рано просыпаться.
2. Мне трудно вставать с постели утром.
3. В выходные я ложусь спать позже, чем обычно, и долго лежу в постели утром.
4. Нелегко уложить моего младшего брата спать, обычно он долго не засыпает.
5. Я заправляю кровать, принимаю ванну или душ, вытираюсь полотенцем и завтракаю.
6. Сейчас мой дедушка, как обычно, дремлет после обеда.
7. Мы делаем упражнения на уроке.
8. Он занимается спортом (2)
9. Она бегаёт трусцой и тренируется в спортзале, чтобы быть в форме.
10. Зимой он ходит в бассейн и на каток.
11. Не сиди дома, выгуляй собаку. Тебе следует проводить больше времени на улице (2).
12. Она ходит в парикмахерскую пешком.
13. Когда он уехал? – Он уехал в выходные.
14. На сколько он уехал? – Он уехал на выходные.
15. Включи холодную воду, пожалуйста.
16. Выключи радио, пожалуйста.
17. Не забудь выключить свет.
18. Вдруг погас свет.
19. Они ходят куда-нибудь каждую субботу.

### **VOС 2. Время (1)**

1. Сколько времени? (2) – Ровно десять часов.
2. Вы не могли бы сказать мне который час, пожалуйста? – Половина одиннадцатого.
3. В какое время он пришел, в 10 утра или в 10 вечера?
4. Сейчас десять минут десятого. Он должен прийти без четверти десять.
5. Он приедет поездом в 9:15.
6. У тебя есть наручные часы? Они электронные?
7. На прикроватном столике стоят часы.
8. Мои часы идут правильно, а твои часы идут неправильно, они спешат.
9. Мои часы опаздывают на 5 минут.

### **VOС 2. Время (2)**

1. У нас мало времени (2 вар.).
2. Поторопись! Мы опаздываем на занятия.
3. Фильм через полтора часа. Не опаздывай.
4. Поезд уехал вовремя, полчаса назад.
5. Вы успеете прийти к обеду?
6. Он прибыл как раз вовремя, чтобы сказать до свидания.
7. Куда ты торопишься? У нас есть свободное (2) время.
8. Я спешу. Пора обедать.
9. Тебе давно пора спать.

### **VOС 3. Предлоги времени**

1. Он пришел в три часа, а ушел в половине пятого.
2. Пусть он приходит в то же самое время, а ты приходи в любое время.
3. Это случилось в полночь. Они встретились в полдень. Он дома в данный момент.
4. Она любит гулять утром. Как приятно гулять солнечным утром!
5. Я видел его в понедельник, это было в понедельник утром.

6. Он придет через три дня в следующий понедельник.
7. Куда ты едешь летом? Куда ты собираешься этим летом?
8. Мы были там в Рождество (2).
9. Это было в 1945. Он написал эту книгу в 19-ом веке.
10. У него день рождения 3-го мая. Давай встретимся в его день рождения.
11. Он рано встает в будние дни. Он поздно встает в выходные.
12. Что было в прошлом? Что будет в будущем?
13. Он был там в июне. Мы встретились в прошлом июне.
14. Он работает в дневное время. (2)
15. Он научился водить за три недели.
16. Сделайте работу к понедельнику.
17. Я сделаю работу до понедельника.
18. Я буду делать работу до (2) понедельника.
19. Перерыв с двух до трех. Он будет после трех.
20. Они работают с раннего утра до позднего вечера.
21. Он придет между тремя и пятью часами.
22. Давайте поговорим об этом на перемене.
23. Он учит английский язык уже десять лет.

#### **ВОС. 4. Работа по дому**

1. Моя мама – домохозяйка. Она следит за чистотой.
2. Хозяин и хозяйка приветствовали гостей.
3. Он владелец дома. Кто хозяин собаки?
4. Ты оставил свои вещи неприбранными. Приведи свою комнату в порядок.
5. Комната в беспорядке. Прибери её, ладно?
6. Телевизор не работает. Можешь его починить?
7. Ты такой неаккуратный, вечно разбрасываешь свои вещи по комнате.
8. Завтра мы делаем генеральную уборку.
9. Мы вытираем пыль с мебели, поливаем комнатные цветы и моем посуду (2).
10. Почисти свою одежду щеткой. Вытряхни покрывало.
11. Они выбивают ковры? – Нет, они их пылесосят.
12. Возьми веник и подмети пол.
13. Я хочу постирать и погладить постельное белье. Принеси гладильную доску, пожалуйста.
14. Я часто делаю покупки в этом магазине. Она ходит по магазинам по субботам.
15. Она хорошо вяжет, может пришить пуговицу, но она не шьет одежду.
16. Он всегда занимается ремонтом в гараже.
17. Мы уже отремонтировали дом.
18. Мы уже отремонтировали (2) машину.

### **TOPIC 3. MEALS**

#### **ТЕХТ**

1. День англичанина начинается, когда он садится за стол, чтобы съесть свой любимый завтрак.
2. Он ест хлопья с молоком или гренки с апельсиновым джемом.
3. Перерывы на обед разбросаны по времени, так что основные сотрудники работают.
4. Они пользуются услугами столовых.
5. Большинство англичан любят хорошую простую еду.
6. Великобритания сегодня многонациональное общество.
7. Они покупают замороженные или охлажденные продукты или полуфабрикаты.
8. У них нет ни времени, ни желания готовить самим.
9. Они едят горох, фасоль, капусту, цветная капуста.
10. Они любят пудинг, груши, сливы, грейпфрут, дыню.
11. Занятая работающая мама покупает готовую еду в пиццериях
12. Она пользуется услугами китайских и индийских заведений, торгующих едой на вынос.
13. В таких местах есть служба доставки.
14. Образ жизни сильно изменился.
15. *Здоровое питание* – фраза, которая стала популярной.
16. Они сидят на диете, чтобы сбросить вес.

### ВОС. 1. (1)

1. Ты умеешь готовить? Кто готовит тебе завтрак?
2. Вскипяти воду. Свари макароны.
3. Пожарь картошку. Порежь хлеб.
4. Я люблю пирожки с мясом. Мой племянник любит чипсы.
5. Давай поставим чайник, ладно? Налей воду в заварочный чайник.
6. Завари мне чай, пожалуйста. Где варенье?
7. Я бы хотел чашечку кофе. Где кофейник?
8. Тарелки, стаканы и блюда на столе.
9. Возьми вилки, ложки и ножи из ящика.
10. Нам нужна кастрюля и сковородка.
11. Я не люблю сосиски. Он не любит сэндвичи и гамбургеры.
12. Овощи и фрукты в холодильнике.
13. Давай сделаем салат с помидорами и огурцами. Положи растительное масло в салат.
14. Они любят овсяную кашу. Он ест булочки со сливочным маслом
15. Какой йогурт ты любишь? Ты купил хлеба и сметану?
16. Он не ест ни сухое, ни домашнее печенье.
17. Больше всего я люблю блины моей бабушки.
18. Купи плитку шоколада с орехами и конфет.
19. Мед полезен для здоровья.

### ВОС. 1. (2)

1. Я пью кофе без сахара.
2. Он кладет в суп перец и разные пряности.
3. Они продают пиво, вино и шампанское.
4. Вредно пить столько газировки.
5. Сок вкусный. Сыр безвкусный. Пирог восхитительный.
6. Бананы сладкие. Лимоны кислые.
7. Грибы горькие. Яблоки сочные.
8. Что у вас на обед?
9. Я ел суп на первое и жареную рыбу на второе.
10. Будешь мороженое на десерт?
11. Я уже накрыла (2) на стол. Я уже накрываю (2) на стол.
12. Давайте сядем за стол. Они уже за столом.
13. Убери со стола, пожалуйста.
14. Я перекусил в столовой полчаса назад.(2)
15. Я хочу пить. Он голодный.
16. Мы поедем дома или пойдем куда-нибудь?
17. Я предпочитаю мясо рыбе.
18. Он много ест. Она мало ест.
19. Он сладкоежка.
20. Она на диете. Она придерживается диеты.
21. У нас столовая самообслуживания.
22. Они ходили в кафе или ресторан?
23. Что у вас в меню сегодня?

### ВОС. 2.

1. Возьми еще торта. Я хочу еще кусочек торта.
2. Спасибо, больше не надо. Я наелся.
3. Предайте соль, пожалуйста. – Вот, пожалуйста.
4. Вот перец. Вот он. Вот ложки. Вот они.
5. (Это) вкусно пахнет. У меня просто слюнки текут.
6. В супе не хватает соли. = Суп не досолен.
7. Как насчет бокала вина? Вам наверняка понравится. – Об этом не может быть и речи.
8. Приятного аппетита! (2)

### **УОС. 3. Пословицы**

1. Кто рано встает, тому бог подает.
2. Как постелишь, так и поспишь.
3. От старых привычек трудно избавиться.
4. Как летит время!
5. Когда весело, не замечаешь, как летит время.
6. Время не ждет.
7. Время лечит.
8. Время – деньги.
9. Яблоко в день гонит доктора прочь.
10. О сбежавшем молоке не плачут.
11. Не хлебом единым жив человек.
12. Что одному человеку хорошо, другому может быть плохо.
13. Лес рубят – щепки летят.
14. О вкусах не спорят.

### **ПРИМЕЧАНИЕ «свободный»**

1. Не стесняйтесь задавать вопросы.
2. Вы можете сами решать, что вам делать.
3. Безалкогольные напитки бесплатные, но надо заплатить за пиво.
4. Завтра они выйдут из тюрьмы и станут свободными людьми.
5. Ты не занят в следующие выходные?
6. Как ты провел свободное время?
7. Телефон свободен, можешь им пользоваться.
8. У нас есть запасной ключ от этой двери.
9. Что ты делаешь в свободное время?
10. Я попросил дополнительный день, чтобы закончить работу.
11. Только несколько квартир были еще не заняты.
12. Это место свободно?

### **ПРИМЕЧАНИЕ «еще»**

1. Он все еще спит.
2. Его все еще нет дома.
3. Он еще слишком молод, чтобы жениться.
4. Они еще не пришли. (2)
5. Что еще вы там видели?
6. Спроси кого-нибудь еще.
7. Какие еще английские книги вы прочитали?
8. Можно взять еще кусочек торта?
9. Дай мне еще яблок.
10. Возьми еще три ложки.
11. Есть еще.
12. Он ел еще и еще.
13. Она стала еще красивее.
14. Прочитай еще раз. (2)
15. Возьми еще сока и яблок.
16. Он звал ее снова и снова.
17. Еще только десять часов.
18. Я видел его еще вчера.
19. Мы встретились еще в 1995.
20. Что еще? (2)
21. Вот еще! (2)
22. Еще бы!
23. Еще как!
24. Ты плачешь? А еще такой большой мальчик!



## TOPIC 4. STUDY

### ТЕХТ

1. Зачем люди учат иностранные языки?
2. Они делают это для общения или бизнеса.
3. Они хотят читать книги в оригинале или улучшать свои профессиональные навыки.
4. Это развивает личность, расширяет кругозор и совершенствует знания вашего родного языка.
5. Это требует много времени и усилий.
6. Это включает в себя упорный труд и много заучивания наизусть.
7. Это может быть очень весело.
8. Произношение – слабое место всех начинающих.
9. Иногда фонетика дается легко, но есть проблемы с правописанием или грамматикой.
10. Это может помочь избавиться от ошибок в самое короткое время.
11. Сначала начинающие могут чувствовать смущение или косноязычие.
12. Некоторые и способные, и трудолюбивые.
13. Они ловят каждое слово учителя и конспектируют все, что может пригодиться.
14. Они засиживаются допоздна, готовясь к урокам.
15. Они никогда не пропускают уроки без уважительной причины.
16. Они стараются не отстать от группы.
17. Они слишком ленивы и безответственны, чтобы готовиться как следует.
18. Они пропускают лекции и работают урывками.
19. Без труда не вытащишь рыбку из пруда.
20. добиться успехов в английском, овладеть языком и стать настоящим профессионалом.

### VOC. 1 (1)

1. Я знаю Джека четырнадцать лет.
2. Она умеет пользоваться компьютером.
3. Я пользуюсь словарем, чтобы узнать правильное произношение.
4. Во время поездки мы кое-что узнали об американском образе жизни.
5. Мы узнали новости.
6. Она учит английский.
7. Он научился водить машину в прошлом году.
8. Он учится на юриста.
9. Я еще не изучил эти документы.
10. Он ходит в школу.
11. Он учится в университете.
12. Какие предметы ты изучаешь на первом курсе?
13. Когда он закончил (2) школу?
14. Когда он вышел из (здания) школы вчера?
15. Он студент младших или старших курсов? – Он первокурсник, он только что поступил.
16. Он закончил университет, получил диплом и сейчас учится в аспирантуре.
17. Все студенты пишут курсовые работы, а выпускники пишут диплом.

### VOC. 1 (2)

1. В прошлом году он был деканом, а сейчас он ректор этого университета.
2. Староста ушла в деканат за журналом группы.
3. Дайте мне список студентов, я отмечу отсутствующих.
4. Возьми наши зачетные книжки у зам. декана. Не забудь принести справку от врача.
5. По расписанию у нас лекция по психологии и семинар по истории.
6. Напишите черновик сочинения в тетрадях.
7. Не забудь читательский билет, когда пойдешь в библиотеку.
8. Учебный год заканчивается в середине июня. Второй семестр длится 4 с половиной месяца.
9. Мы сдаем экзамен по истории в эту сессию?
10. Ты занимался на подготовительных курсах перед поступлением в университет?
11. Все студенты занимаются научной работой.
12. Школьные каникулы начались в среду.
13. Она в отпуске. Они уехали в отпуск. Они уехали в отпуск на Средиземное море.
14. Студенты сейчас на каникулах.

## **VOС. 2**

1. Ты сдавал зачет по истории (по десятому уроку, по артиклям)? Ты получил зачет?
2. Все студенты сдавали экзамен вчера.
3. Все студенты сдали экзамен по фонетике вчера.
4. Он провалил экзамен по психологии. Он пересдаст его на следующей неделе.
5. Он не смог перевести текст.
6. Ему пришлось уйти в академический отпуск.
7. Меня подвела память. Ему не хватило смелости.
8. У него плохая память. (=Он не может положиться на свою память.)
9. У нас консультация в среду.
10. У тебя есть лишняя ручка?
11. Он заболел и отстал от группы. Он ходил на дополнительные занятия и догнал группу.
12. Ты хорошо разбираешься в грамматике. Не мог бы ты помочь мне с временами?
13. Мы сделали это упражнение в классе.
14. Оставайтесь сегодня после уроков, пожалуйста.
15. Он бегло говорит по-английски. Ей не хватает беглости.
16. Ему хорошо дается английский. (2)
17. Я понял это правило.
18. Я понял, что я опоздал.

## **VOС. 3**

1. Приготовьтесь к диктанту дома.
2. Пора собираться в школу.
3. Он не пойдет гулять. Он готовится к экзаменам.
4. Просмотрите текст и переведите его с английского на русский язык.
5. Посмотрите новые слова в словаре.
6. Повторяйте эти слова за мной.
7. Он повторил вопрос.
8. Он повторяет материал перед экзаменом.
9. Повторите слова, мы будем писать диктант.
10. Повторите диалоги и расскажите их.
11. Он повторил (=прочитал ещё раз) правило, чтобы лучше его понять.
12. На уроке мы тренировали произношение слов.
13. Давайте поработаем над (2) правописанием.
14. Она читает английские книги в переводе.
15. Сделайте это упражнение письменно. (2) Сделайте это домашнее задание устно.
16. Когда учитель проверяет письменные работы, он не исправляет ошибки, а подчеркивает их.
17. Он получил отличную (хорошую, удовлетворительную, плохую) отметку за сочинение.
18. Он получил четверку (2) по психологии.
19. Он редко делает грубые (2) ошибки. Он часто делает ошибки по невнимательности.
20. Это не ошибка, а оговорка (описка).

## **VOС. 4**

1. Век живи, век учись.
2. Учиться никогда не поздно.
3. Недоученный хуже неученого.
4. Знать все, значит не знать ничего.
5. Выученное наспех, быстро забывается.
6. Практика совершенствует знание.
7. Никогда не откладывай на завтра то, что можно сделать сегодня.
8. Потерянного времени не вернешь.
9. Бедному да вору — всякая одежда впору.
10. Можно отвести лошадь на водопой, но невозможно заставить ее пить.
11. Мешай дело с бездельем, проживешь век с весельем.

### **VOС. 5 (1)**

1. Давайте займёмся делом (2). Ну, давайте начнем.
2. Как домашнее задание? Есть проблемы?
3. Давайте вместе посмотрим и попробуем разобраться.
4. Что у вас в номере первом?
5. Все согласны?
6. Не отвечайте все вместе, по одному, пожалуйста.
7. Отвечайте по очереди. Достаточно.
8. Хорошо, давайте пойдём дальше.
9. Давайте отложим это.
10. Давайте займемся чтением теперь.
11. Как по-английски *декан*? Как по-русски *dean*?
12. Можно так сказать? (2)
13. Как пишется это слово?
14. Повторите, пожалуйста?
15. Мне читать (начинать, отвечать на вопросы)?

### **VOС. 5 (2)**

1. Поднимите (опустите) руки.
2. Следите по книге. Смотрите в свои книги.
3. Разбейтесь (разделитесь) на пары.
4. Разыграйте диалог. Исполните (2) роль Майка
5. Поменяйтесь ролями. (Читайте) выразительно.
6. Придерживайтесь текста.
7. Воспроизведите текст. Перескажите текст. Расскажите стихотворение.
8. Задайте вопросы к предложению.
9. Задайте вопросы по тексту, отрывку, абзацу.
10. Встаньте перед классом. Пойдите к доске.
11. Отойдите в сторону. (2)
12. Сотрите с доски. Сотрите (2) это слово с доски.
13. Сейчас я раздам вам листочки с заданиями.
14. Напишите, пожалуйста, число. Оставьте поля с левой стороны.
15. Нумеруйте предложения, пожалуйста.
16. Ваше время истекло.
17. Не забудьте подписать работы и сдать их мне.
18. Сдайте тесты. Соберите письменные работы.

### **VOС. 5 (3)**

1. Это ясно? Все готовы? Все закончили?
2. Вы закончили с этим?
3. Успокойтесь (2) Тише!
4. Не списывайте. Не подсказывайте ему.(2)
5. Работайте самостоятельно (2) Не спешите. (2)
6. Слушайте внимательно. Говорите громче.
7. Следите за произношением, пожалуйста.
8. Хорошо. Это хороший вариант ответа.
9. Неплохая попытка, но можно ответить лучше.
10. Я знаю, это трудно, но ты уже делаешь успехи.
11. Я помогу тебе, но все зависит от тебя.
12. Продолжай стараться.
13. Сколько осталось до звонка? Звонок прозвенел.
14. Минутку! Задержитесь!
15. На этом закончим сегодня. (2)

## TOPIC 5. SHOPPING

### ТЕХТ

1. Леди и джентльмены, мы с гордостью представляем зимнюю коллекцию этого года.
2. Первый на подиуме Стив, на котором черный шерстяной классический костюм-двойка.
3. Подтяжки в красный и белый горошек и яркий цветной галстук оживляют костюм.
4. На Хелен синие джинсы и черная водолазка.
5. Она набросила джемпер на плечи и добавила шляпу и ремень с серебряной пряжкой к своему наряду.
6. Она также повязала шарф вокруг талии, чтобы завершить образ.
7. На Крисе надет черный кожаный пиджак, клетчатая рубашка и черные кроссовки.
8. Модный и стильный образ, чтобы скрасить темные зимние дни.
9. Кейт одета с классической элегантностью.
10. Юбка короткая и сочетается с пиджаком с длинными рукавами.
11. На ней серебряные босоножки на высоком каблуке, идеально дополняющие этот прекрасный наряд.

### ВОС. 1 (1)

1. Этот универмаг закрывается в 7 часов.
2. Ты был в новом торговом центре?
3. Давай перекусим в этом кафе. – Я бы предпочла пойти в какую-нибудь кофейню.
4. Он ушел в аптеку (2) за аспирином.
5. Ты покупаешь фрукты в продуктовом магазине или на рынке?
6. Купи ручку в газетном киоске или в канцтоварах.
7. Мне нравится делать покупки в этом супермаркете.
8. Она не может позволить себе покупать одежду в этом бутике.
9. Куда мне положить все эти покупки?
10. Платье 44 размера должно подойти.
11. Мы не можем поставить сюда этот шкаф, он не войдет.
12. Одежда в повседневном стиле действительно не идет ему.
13. Эта новая стрижка тебе идет. (2)
14. Давай встретимся завтра. 7 часов тебя устроит?
15. Эти перчатки подходят к твоей сумке. (3)

### ВОС. 1 (2)

1. Что на нем было надето вчера? – Он был одет в джинсы и свитер.
2. Ей требуется полчаса, чтобы одеться.
3. Он снял костюм и надел футболку и шорты.
4. Она переделалась в примерочной. Она купила этот костюм со скидкой.
5. Он всегда хорошо одет. У него хороший вкус.
6. Он заплатил за все на кассе, взял сдачу и вышел из магазина.
7. Она расплатилась наличными или кредиткой?
8. Они купили эту машину в кредит по вполне приемлемой цене.
9. Ты не можешь одолжить мне немного мелочи? Я отдам тебе завтра.
10. Она тратит много денег на модную одежду.
11. У нас кончилось молоко. Давай сходим в магазин.
12. Я не люблю стоять за чем-нибудь в очереди.
13. Нехорошо проходить без очереди.
14. Сколько ты вешишь? Ты довольна своим весом?
15. Эти джинсы вышли из моды. – А что сейчас модно?
16. Эти туфли пользуются большим спросом. В этом магазине хороший выбор.
17. Ты видела показ мод по телевизору вчера?

### ВОС. 2

1. Они продают женскую и мужскую одежду. (2)
2. В этом отделе есть нижнее белье, купальники, колготки, чулки и носки.
3. Его повседневная (2) одежда – свободные вельветовые брюки и джемперы.
4. Она предпочитает облегающую одежду.
5. Я не люблю дубленки и длинные шубы.

6. Она купила меховой полушубок и пуховик.
7. На Джейн была блузка, жилет и юбка.
8. Все были одеты в костюмы на маскараде.
9. Этот брючный костюм ей не идет.
10. Ты спишь в пижаме или ночной рубашке?
11. Этот кардиган делает ее старше, не так ли?
12. Он был в спортивном костюме и тапочках, на ней был халат и фартук.
13. Эти сандалии подойдут к твоему сарафану.
14. На работе он носит комбинезон.

### **VOС. 3**

1. Она не носит меховые шапки, она любит вязаные шапки и береты.
2. Платки и шали ей не идут.
3. Зимой он предпочитает варежки перчаткам.
4. Не забудь взять бумажник и носовой платок.
5. Здесь продают женскую и мужскую обувь.
6. Она редко носит туфли на высоком каблуке с узким носком.
7. Обычно она носит обувь на низком каблуке.
8. Ей нравятся лодочки с закругленным носком.
9. Ему нужны туфли с квадратным носком.
10. Надень резиновые сапоги, на улице грязно.
11. Зонтик в сумке, помада и духи в косметичке.
12. Друзья подарили ей серебряную цепочку и сережки в форме сердечка.
13. Он взял хозяйственную сумку и кошелек и вышел из дома.
14. Здесь есть косметика и ювелирные украшения.
15. Она не может позволить себе (покупать) золотые (2) кольца с драгоценными камнями.

### **VOС. 4**

1. Эта бежевая шелковая блузка в полоску хороша, но мне не нравится воротник и пуговицы.
2. На ней было темно-синее шерстяное пальто с большими карманами и капюшоном.
3. Сиреневое платье в горошек сделано из хлопка.
4. Ему следует надеть галстук-бабочку с этим костюмом.
5. Юбка в цветочек была украшена пурпурными лентами.
6. Ей понравилась джинсовая куртка и замшевые перчатки.
7. Это фиолетовое платье с глубоким вырезом сделано из бархата?
8. Ей не понравится эта кремовая блузка, она не любит пастельные тона.
9. Синий (цвет) ей не идет. (2) Синий цвет этой блузки ужасный.
10. Какой размер обуви вы носите? – Я ношу туфли 36 размера. – Лучше примерьте их.
11. Это пуловер 46 размера. Чье это производство? Он хорошо стирается?
12. Сколько он стоит? (3)
13. Из чего он сделан? Он хорошо носится?

### **TO SAY, TO TELL, TO SPEAK, TO TALK**

1. Я согласился. Не отказывайся.
2. Не говорите о делах за столом. (2)
3. Что ты сказал? Повтори. Говори громче.
4. Попрощайся с тетей Эмили. – Само собой разумеется.
5. О чем говорится в письме? О чем рассказывается в книге?
6. Говорят, он не сказал ни слова.
7. Правду говорить легко и приятно.
8. Все говорят, что он говорит на трех языках.
9. Давай обсудим это сейчас. Не лги мне.
10. Скажи, пожалуйста, сколько времени? Расскажи ему сказку.
11. Мне надо с тобой поговорить.
12. Он любит рассказать анекдоты.
13. Строго говоря, это была ошибка.
14. Скажи всем спокойной ночи и иди спать.

15. Перестань разговаривать. Откровенно говоря, ты говоришь ерунду.
16. Он поздоровался с детьми. Он рассказал нам новости.
17. Они не говорили о политике, они говорили о моде.

### ПРЕДЛАГАТЬ

1. Он предложил мне чашку кофе.
2. Он предложил мне свою помощь.
3. Он сам предложил нам купить билеты в кино.
4. Он предложил мне погулять.
5. Он предложил, чтобы они мне помогли.
6. Он предложил купить билеты.
7. Он предложил нам, чтобы она купила билеты. (3)
8. Он сделал ей предложение, но она отказала ему.
9. Он предложил тост.

### REPORTING VERBS

- |                       |                         |
|-----------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. сказать (2)        | 18. сообщить            |
| 2. добавить           | 19. настаивать          |
| 3. признать           | 20. хотеть знать        |
| 4. согласиться        | 21. узнать              |
| 5. ответить (2)       | 22. иметь ввиду         |
| 6. уверить            | 23. заметить (2)        |
| 7. жаловаться         | 24. обещать             |
| 8. хвастать           | 25. напомнить           |
| 9. признаться         | 26. предлагать          |
| 10. убедить (2)       | 27. предполагать        |
| 11. решить            | 28. подозревать         |
| 12. отрицать          | 29. думать              |
| 13. сомневаться       | 30. предупреждать       |
| 14. воскликнуть       | 31. спрашивать, просить |
| 15. объяснить         | 32. умолять             |
| 16. пытаться выяснить | 33. советовать          |
| 17. надеяться         | 34. приказывать (2)     |
|                       | 35. запрещать           |

## TOPIC 6. TOWN

### ТЕХТ

1. Челябинск расположен в одном из красивейших мест России – на Урале.
2. Древний Урал знаменит своей уникальной красотой.
3. История города восходит к 18 веку.
4. Он был основан тринадцатого сентября.
5. В 19 веке это был маленький провинциальный город.
6. Он стал торговым городом на перекрестке торговых путей из Европы в Азию.
7. Современный Челябинск изменился до неузнаваемости.
8. Его семь больших районов вмещают более миллиона жителей.
9. Тяжелая промышленность города создает множество экологических проблем.
10. Центр города – площадь Революции.
11. Несколько троллейбусных остановок – и вы оказываетесь в парке имени Гагарина.
12. Немногие города могут похвастаться густым сосновым бором недалеко от центра.
13. На каждом шагу здесь можно найти маленькие кафе и магазины.
14. Здесь много мест для развлечений: современные кинотеатры, развлекательные центры.
15. Культурная жизнь не стоит на месте.
16. Оригинальное здание драмтеатра привлекает взгляд.
17. Наш концертный зал расположен на набережной Миасса.
18. Если вас интересует живопись, вы можете посетить различные выставки.
19. Современные высотные дома строятся каждый год.
20. Город растет с каждым днем.
21. Наш город сравнительно молодой и открыт дальнейшему прогрессу.

## **VOС 1**

1. Туристы прибыли в Париж в понедельник. Они прибыли на вокзал.
2. Он уехал из Москвы вчера. Он уехал в Париж. Он уехал из Москвы в Париж.
3. Поездка по городу даст вам хорошее представление о его красоте.
4. Если вы хотите получить представление о столице, поедem осматривать достопримечательности.
5. Нас удивил размер здания, и впечатлила его архитектура.
6. Лондон произвел на нас большое впечатление. (2)
7. В Москве много достопримечательностей. (2)
8. Я путешествую по делам и для удовольствия.
9. Он скоро поедет в командировку.
10. Гид предложил нам поехать на экскурсию.
11. Они живут на окраине города.
12. Памятник Прокофьеву (Prokofiev) расположен около краеведческого музея.
13. Пройдите через арку, и вы увидите вход в здание.
14. Раньше они остановились в этой гостинице.
15. Где выход из аэропорта?

## **VOС 2 (1)**

1. Ты поедешь на автобусе или на троллейбусе?
2. Они ехали на вокзал, когда увидели эту аварию.
3. Он сел на трамвай и вышел через две остановки.
4. Он сел на маршрутку и доехал до площади Революции.
5. Он сел в такси и попросил высадить его у парка.
6. Он вышел из машины и пошел пешком.
7. Мы поняли, что проехали свою остановку.
8. Сядьте на восемнадцатый автобус. (2)
9. Он пересел на седьмой трамвай.
10. Я передумал. Я прогуляюсь до парка.
11. Сколько стоит проезд?
12. Троллейбус переполнен, свободных мест нет.
13. В час пик бывает много пробок.
14. На этой улице большое движение транспорта.
15. Я опоздаю, мы застряли в пробке.
16. Нам следует соблюдать правила движения.

## **VOС 2 (2)**

1. Светофор на следующем углу.
2. Мы поедem, когда загорится зеленый свет
3. Скоро у него будут права, и он сможет водить.
4. Ты меня подвезешь или мне взять такси?
5. Около супермаркета есть парковка.
6. Вы не можете здесь припарковаться.
7. Его оштрафовали на \$50 за превышение скорости.
8. Ты умеешь кататься на велосипеде?
9. Они поехали на велосипеде или мотоцикле?
10. Какой туман! Боюсь, мы попадем в аварию.
11. Это было незабываемое событие в его жизни.
12. Поездка прошла без происшествий.
13. Я встретился с ней случайно.
14. Это случилось случайно.
15. В этом случае я поговорю с ним сам.
16. Я берегу эту бутылку вина для особого случая.

## **VOС 3**

1. Вы живете на тихой или оживленной улице?
2. Перейдите (2) мост, поверните налево (2) и дойдите до перекрестка.
3. Давай погуляем по бульвару на набережной.
4. В нашем городе нет велосипедных дорожек.

5. Они сделали первый поворот направо и увидели станцию метро (2).
6. Ты видишь где-нибудь пешеходный переход?
7. Они гуляли по аллеям парка и случайно столкнулись (2) со старым знакомым.
8. Он сказал, что живет по соседству (поблизости).
9. Он поскользнулся на тротуаре по дороге домой.
10. Я встретила его по дороге в университет. Он увидел меня и отвернулся.
11. Он повернулся и увидел меня.
12. Он оказался в тупике и повернул назад.
13. Мы поняли, что идем не туда, и решили спросить дорогу у прохожего.
14. Мы потерялись (3). Давай поедem в обратном направлении.
15. Мы идем по направлению к реке и скоро дойдем до нее.
16. Не стой у меня на пути. Отойди.
17. Сверни на улицу Кирова. Ближайшая парикмахерская за углом.
18. Встретимся у магазина на углу. Не потеряйся.
19. Пройдите (вверх, вниз) по этой улице до подземного перехода. Театр на площади.
20. Мы добрались до вокзала вовремя.

#### VOC 4

1. Я приезжий. (=Я здесь не живу.)
2. Как мне добраться до вокзала?
3. Не могли бы вы сказать мне как дойти до музея?
4. Я правильно иду к автобусной остановке? (2)
5. Как быстрее всего пройти к театру?
6. Идите прямо до площади.
7. Пройдите один квартал.
8. Где мне выйти? Где мне выйти, чтобы попасть на вокзал?
9. Этот автобус довезет вас прямо (2) до театра.
10. Вам потребуется 5 минут, чтобы туда добраться.
11. Это недалеко отсюда. Мимо не пройдет
12. Это в пяти минутах ходьбы отсюда. (2)

#### TOPIC 7. WEATHER

##### DIALOGUE

1. На небе действительно ни облачка. Должно быть, 25 градусов в тени.
2. Сегодня очень душно. Ни один листок не шелохнется. Ни дуновения ветерка.
3. Боюсь, надвигается гроза.
4. Небо затянуто тучами и солнце скрывается.
5. Кажется, дождь начинается. Нужно найти укрытие. Стало накрапывать – ожидай ливня!
6. Какой ужасный удар грома! И какая молния!
7. Посмотри! Пояняется. Облака поднимаются.
8. Воздух замечательно свежий. Посмотри на эту чудесную радугу!
9. Нам опять предстоит период хорошей погоды.
10. Теперь я знаю, почему англичане всегда ворчат по поводу погоды.
11. Они действительно любят жаловаться на погоду, но не стоит обращать на это внимание.
12. Не так страшен черт, как его малюют.

##### VOC 1

1. Скоро бабье лето. Ты слышала прогноз погоды на завтра?
2. Что говорят синоптики? Какая сегодня погода?
3. Как тебе нравится погода сегодня?
4. Какая ужасная погода (сегодня)! На тебя влияет погода?
5. Какие грязные дороги! Какие большие лужи!
6. Яблони в цвету (2). Эти яблоки поспевают в августе.
7. Я слышал, погода сохранится пасмурной.
8. Температура ночью будет 2 градуса выше или ниже нуля?
9. Посмотри! Идет сильный (2) дождь.
10. Во время грозы часто идет град.



11. Моросит дождь. Он не любит дождливую погоду.
12. Кажется, дождь начинается. Первые капли дождя упали на пыльную дорогу.
13. Мы попали под проливной (2) дождь. Мы промокли насквозь (2).
14. Мы часто купаемся в этом озере.
15. На реке есть небольшой водопад.
16. Надо нам скопить что-то на черный день.
17. Я приду несмотря ни на что.

## VOС 2

1. Шел сильный (2), слабый снег.
2. Зима была снежная. Дороги были покрыты льдом.
3. Выпало много (2) снега. Давай слепим снеговика и поиграем в снежки.
4. Выпало немного снега. Реки и озера замерзли.
5. Снегопад продолжался всю ночь.
6. Какая красивая снежинка! Какие сугробы! Какие большие сосульки!
7. Они кидались снежками в прохожих.
8. Ты когда-нибудь видел снежного человека?
9. Первые подснежники появились в лесу.
10. Поздней осенью часто идет мокрый снег.
11. Снег тает, на улицах скользко. Снег превращается в слякоть.
12. Давай съедем с горки. Не поскользнься.
13. Он редко ходит на лыжах. Он ходил на лыжах вчера. Мы катались на коньках.
14. Смотри! Он катается на лыжах! Где мои лыжи?

## VOС 3

1. Северный (южный, западный, восточный) ветер дует сегодня.
2. Сегодня ветрено. Ветер порывистый и резкий.
3. Деревья качаются на ветру.
4. Легкий ветер шевелил занавески на окне.
5. Тихо. Душно. (2) Нет ни дуновения ветерка.
6. Давай проветрим комнату. Не сиди на сквозняке. (2)
7. Вы слышали штормовое предупреждение?
8. Солнце светит ярко. День будет солнечным и теплым.
9. Мы наблюдали, как заходит солнце.
10. Он проснулся на рассвете (на заре) с первыми лучами солнца.
11. Посмотри! Солнце спряталось за тучи.
12. Вчера озеро сверкало на солнце. Сегодня туман. Озеро покрыто туманом.
13. Хорошо сидеть дома в такой промозглый день и наслаждаться теплом от камина.
14. Что с ним случилось? Он плохо выглядит. – День жаркий. Он не любит жару.
15. Давай поедem на море летом. Город расположен на берегу моря (2).
16. Их дом стоит на берегу реки или озера?
17. Этот фильм про землетрясения и другие стихийные бедствия.

## VOС 4 +

1. Всему свое время.
2. Нет худа без добра.
3. Не все ненастье, будет и красное солнышко.
4. Куй железо пока горячо.
5. В бурю любая гавань хороша.
6. Что посеешь, то и пожнешь.
7. В тихом омуте черти водятся.
8. Смотри, какие смешные наши тени!
9. Давай найдем столик в тени.
10. Сегодня 30 градусов в тени.
11. Майк ходит за Люси как тень.
12. Они сидели в тени дерева.
13. Он боится собственной тени.

## НЕПРАВИЛЬНЫЕ ГЛАГОЛЫ 1

### 1. быть, находиться

2. приносить, выносить, родить
3. бить
4. становиться
5. начинать
6. кусать
7. дуть
8. сломать, разбить
9. приносить
10. строить
11. жечь, гореть
12. лопнуть
13. покупать
14. бросать, отбрасывать,
15. ловить, поймать

### 16. выбирать

17. приходить
18. стоять
19. резать
20. иметь дело, раздавать
21. копать
22. делать
23. рисовать, тащить
24. мечтать, видеть сны
25. пить
26. ехать, водить
27. есть
28. падать
29. кормить
30. чувствовать

### 31. драться, сражаться

32. находить
33. летать
34. запрещать
35. забывать
36. прощать
37. замерзать
38. получать, добираться
39. давать
40. идти
41. расти
42. висеть, вешать (=казнить)
43. иметь
44. слышать
45. прятать

### 46. ударять, попадать

47. держать
48. причинять вред, боль
49. хранить
50. знать
51. класть
52. вести
53. учить (что-то)

54. оставлять
55. давать взаймы
56. позволять, пускать
57. лежать
58. освещать, зажигать
59. терять
60. делать

### 61. значить

62. встречать
63. платить
64. класть
65. читать
66. ехать верхом
67. звонить
68. подниматься
69. бежать
70. сказать
71. видеть
72. продавать
73. посылать
74. устанавливать
75. трясти

### 76. светить, сиять

77. стрелять
78. показывать
79. закрывать
80. уменьшаться, садиться (о ткани)
81. петь
82. опускаться
83. сидеть
84. спать
85. скользить
86. пахнуть, нюхать
87. говорить
88. тратить
89. распространять(ся)
90. стоять

### 91. красть

92. ударить
93. клясться, ругаться
94. мести
95. плавать
96. брать
97. учить (кого-то)
98. рвать
99. рассказывать, сказать
100. думать
101. бросать
102. понимать
103. просыпаться, будить
104. носить (на себе)
105. плакать
106. выигрывать
107. писать

## НЕПРАВИЛЬНЫЕ ГЛАГОЛЫ 2

- |     |                       |     |                       |
|-----|-----------------------|-----|-----------------------|
| 1.  | написанный            | 26. | вел машину            |
| 2.  | написал               | 27. | дрался                |
| 3.  | рожденный             | 28. | разбуженный           |
| 4.  | бил (3 варианта)      | 29. | летал                 |
| 5.  | стал                  | 30. | забытый               |
| 6.  | начинающийся, начиная | 31. | простил               |
| 7.  | кусать                | 32. | замерз                |
| 8.  | дул                   | 33. | получающий            |
| 9.  | сломанный             | 34. | вырастил              |
| 10. | принес                | 35. | висел                 |
| 11. | построенный           | 36. | слышал                |
| 12. | покупать              | 37. | спрятанный            |
| 13. | пойманный             | 38. | известный             |
| 14. | выбирающий            | 39. | знающий               |
| 15. | выбранный             | 40. | лгал                  |
| 16. | думал                 | 41. | лежал, лежащий        |
| 17. | копающий              | 42. | положил (2)           |
| 18. | выигрывающий          | 43. | терять                |
| 19. | режущий               | 44. | заплатил              |
| 20. | наученный             | 45. | поднялся              |
| 21. | пил и ел              | 46. | сидящий               |
| 22. | брошенный             | 47. | сказал, говорил (3 в) |
| 23. | упал                  | 48. | украденный            |
| 24. | почувствовал          | 49. | приходящий            |
| 25. | кормил                | 50. | показанный            |



## **DICTIONARIES KEY**

### **TOPIC 1. HOME**

#### **TEXT 1**

1. We are back to work after the holidays and miss you badly.
2. Granny does most of the work about the house – just the usual run of things, as you can see.
3. Their latest news and chief topic of conversation is their new flat, of course.
4. As you can imagine it's quite an event for them and they are, certainly, anxious.
5. Their new apartment is in a new district on the outskirts of the city.
6. It's a pretty long way from the centre but that doesn't matter much.
7. Lucy is a little upset that the flat is on the top floor of a twelve-storeyed house.
8. This can't be helped and, after all, there is a lift.
9. As far as I know, it's a two-room flat with a spacious hall and a balcony.
10. The kitchen is very comfortable, with an electric cooker and built-in furniture.
11. There are built-in wardrobes in the bedroom, which is very convenient, no doubt.
12. There are, certainly, all modern conveniences in the flat.
13. There is electricity, central heating, hot and cold water supply.
14. Hope to see it all for myself soon and write you more then.
15. That's our news for the present, there is little else I can say.
16. We are lucky with the weather, it's fairly warm and doesn't at all look like autumn.

#### **VOC 1 (part 1)**

1. Do they have a brick or wooden country house? Do they have a summer house in the garden?
2. He doesn't live in a hotel, he lives in a hostel and shares the room with his brother.
3. Their block of flats is a high-rise building.
4. They have a cottage on the outskirts or in the suburbs.
5. Do they have separate or adjoining rooms?
6. There is a living room (sitting room, lounge), a children's room, a study and a utility room.
7. There is a rubbish chute on the landing.
8. Where do you have the staircase /stairs?
9. The ceiling is very high here. We want a ladder.
10. They don't have a lift, they go upstairs and downstairs on foot.

#### **VOC 1 (part 2)**

1. Our flat has a southern / northern / eastern / western aspect.
2. The windows overlook a quiet street.
3. Their flat is on the ground floor in this ten-storey (ten-storeyed) building;
4. How many storeys does the block have? – It has three storeys.
5. What floor is your flat on? – It's on the second floor.
6. What number do you live at? – I live at (number) 61 Oxford Street.
7. What flat do you live in? – I live in flat 15.
8. The bus stop is five minutes' walk from here. It's a ten-minute ride.

#### **VOC 2**

1. They moved house (moved in) yesterday. They are arranging a housewarming tomorrow.
2. There is too little room here. There isn't much furniture here, only the most necessary things.
3. The house is planned so as to make housekeeping easy.
4. They open / close the curtains. They raise/ lower blinds.
5. The floor is covered with linoleum / parquet / laminate.
6. The walls are papered. The bathroom is tiled.
7. The room is painted yellow. The ceiling is whitewashed.
8. His room is in a mess. He finds housework tiresome.
9. I help about the house. Everything is in its place. The kitchen is spick and span.
10. This place isn't very comfortable but it's convenient for meeting as it's not far.
11. The bright curtains on the window make the kitchen cosy.
12. The wallpaper matches the carpet. The carpet goes well with the furniture.
13. Nothing is more pleasant than to stay at home in rainy weather.

### **VOC 3 (1)**

1. Do you have a suite of furniture or wall-unit with several sections?
2. I want to buy a glass-fronted bookcase and a sideboard.
3. There is a chest, a chest of drawers, a sewing machine, a mirror and two cupboards at my granny's.
4. They sell single beds, double beds, twin beds and bunk beds.
5. I can't sleep on the camp bed. I will sleep on the sofa bed. Give me a pillow, please.
6. Take the cushions from the divan. Let's sit down on this settee.
7. Let's buy a new bedspread on the bed and a plaid on the sofa.
8. There is a rug near the couch. There are bedside cabinets between the beds.
9. There is a dining table and four stools in the kitchen.
10. In the bedroom there is a dressing table with an armchair, there is a carpet on the floor.
11. This is a bathmat, and this is a door mat.

### **VOC 3 (2)**

1. The chandelier is in the lounge, the standard lamp is in the bedroom, the wall lamp is in the hall.
  1. There is a mantelpiece above the fireplace. There is a vase and candles in candlesticks on it.
  2. I use earphones to listen to music on my smartphone or internet tablet.
  3. I watch films online or download them from the Internet to my computer or laptop.
  4. You need a webcam to talk on Skype. I want to update my software.
  5. There is a food processor, a dishwasher, a microwave oven in the kitchen.
  6. We have a new refrigerator (fridge) with a big freezer.
  7. The washing machine is in the kitchen next to the sink.
  8. The bathroom accessories are on the shelf above the wash basin, the towels hang on the left.
  9. They have a bath house in the country.

### **VOC 5**

1. East or west, home is best.
2. Home, sweet home.
3. Home is where the heart is.
4. An Englishman's home is his castle.
5. A skeleton in the cupboard.
6. Better late than never.
7. Better safe than sorry.
8. The more you get, the more you want.
9. The best things in life are free.
10. The man travels the world in search of what he needs and returns home to find it.

### **COMPARISON MODELS**

1. You are taller than me / him / her / us / them.
2. He is as tall as me.
3. He is not as tall as me. / He is not so tall as me.
4. He is the tallest of the three (of all).
5. This house is twice as big as ours. Our house is half the size.
6. He is half my age.
7. The more he studies the more he will know.
8. The sooner you do it, the better.
9. much better – a little better

### **TOPIC 2. DAILY PROGRAMME**

#### **TEXT 1**

1. I've entered the Teachers' Training Institute.
2. My dream has come true. I study foreign languages.
3. It is no easy matter to cram everything into one day.
4. The daily programme becomes a question of winning or losing.
5. The wise saying advises to get up early.
6. The more a man of wisdom grows, the less of morning sleep he knows.
7. The ringing of the alarm clock wakes me as well as my roommates up at half past six.

8. Isn't it fun to do morning exercises to music?
9. It takes us forty minutes to get there.
10. The cloakroom is overcrowded with the students who try to arrive at the institute before the bell.
11. After classes I go to the snack bar or canteen to have dinner.
12. In the evening after a short quiet rest I do my homework and it takes time, you know.
13. Before I go to bed I have a walk with my friends chatting about the latest news.
14. Once in bed the events of the day pass in my mind's eye.
15. I don't feel sorry, because I know: "There is no royal road to learning."

### **VOC. 1**

1. I am not an early bird, I don't like to wake up early.
2. It's hard for me to get out of bed in the morning.
3. At weekends I go to bed later than usual and stay in bed for a long time in the morning.
4. It is no easy matter to put my younger brother to bed, usually it takes him long to fall asleep.
5. I make my bed, have a bath or a shower, dry myself with a towel and have breakfast.
6. Now my grandfather is taking a nap after lunch as usual.
7. We do exercises at the lesson.
8. He takes exercise (does sports).
9. She jogs and works out in a gym to keep fit.
10. In winter he goes to a swimming pool and to a skating rink.
11. Don't stay indoors, walk the dog. You should spend more time outdoors (out-of-doors).
12. She goes to the hairdresser's on foot.
13. When did he go? – He left at the weekend.
14. For how long did he go? – He went for the weekend.
15. Turn on the cold tap, please.
16. Turn off the radio, will you?
17. Don't forget to turn out the light.
18. Suddenly the light went out.
19. They go out every Saturday.

### **VOC 2. Время (1)**

1. What's the time? / What time is it? – It's ten o'clock sharp.
2. Could you tell me the time, please – It's half past ten.
3. What time did he come, at 10 a.m. or at 10 p.m.?
4. It's ten (minutes) past nine. He must come at a quarter to ten.
5. He'll come on the nine fifteen train.
6. Have you got a wrist watch? Is it digital?
7. There is a clock on the bedside table.
8. My watch is right and your watch is wrong. It is fast.
9. My watch is 5 minutes slow.

### **VOC 2. Время (2)**

1. We are short of time. / We are pressed for time.
2. Hurry up! We are late for classes.
3. The film is in an hour and a half. Don't be late.
4. The train left on time, half an hour ago.
5. Will you come in time for lunch?
6. He came just in time to say goodbye.
7. Where are you hurrying? We have free / spare time.
8. I am in a hurry. It's time for lunch.
9. It's high time (for you) to go to bed.

### **VOC 3. Предлоги времени**

1. He came at three o'clock and left at half past four.
2. Let him come at the same time, and you come (at) any time.
3. It happened at midnight. They met at noon. He is at home at the moment.
4. She likes to walk in the morning. It's so pleasant to walk on a sunny morning!
5. I saw him on Monday, it was on Monday morning.

6. He'll come in three days next Monday.
7. Where do you go in (the) summer? Where are you going this summer?
8. We were there at Christmas (on Christmas Day).
9. It was in 1945. He wrote this book in the nineteenth century.
10. He has a birthday on the 3d of May. Let's meet on his birthday.
11. He gets up early on weekdays. He gets up late at the weekend.
12. What was in the past? What will be in (the) future?
13. He was there in June. We met last June.
14. He works in the daytime (in the afternoon).
15. He learnt to drive in three weeks.
16. Do the job by Monday.
17. I will do the job before Monday.
18. I will do the job till (until) Monday.
19. The break is from two to (till) three. He will be after three.
20. They work from early morning till late at night.
21. He will come between three and five.
22. Let's talk about it during the break.
23. He has been learning English for ten years already.

#### **VOC. 4. Работа по дому**

1. My mother is a housewife. She is particular about cleanliness.
2. The host and the hostess greeted the guests.
3. He is the owner of the house. Who is the dog's master?
4. You left your things lying around. Put your room in order.
5. The room is in disorder. Tidy it up, will you?
6. The television is out of order. Can you fix it?
7. You are so untidy, you are always scattering your things about the room.
8. Tomorrow we are doing a big housecleaning (a spring cleaning)
9. We dust the furniture, water the house plants and wash up (wash the dishes)..
10. Brush your clothes. Shake the bedspread.
11. Do they beat the carpets? – No, they vacuum them.
12. Take the broom and sweep the floor.
13. I want to wash and iron the bed linen. Bring the ironing board, please.
14. I often do the shopping in this store. She goes shopping on Saturdays.
15. She knits well, can sew a button on but she doesn't make clothes.
16. He always does some repairs in the garage.
17. We have already redecorated the house.
18. We have already repaired (fixed) the car.

#### **TOPIC 3. MEALS**

##### **TEXT**

1. An Englishman's day begins when he sits down to table to have his favourite breakfast.
2. He eats cereal and milk or toast and marmalade.
3. Staff breaks are staggered so that a skeleton staff is on duty..
4. They use their canteen or refectory facilities.
5. Most Englishmen like good plain food.
6. Great Britain is now a multiethnic society.
7. They buy frozen and chilled meals or pre-packs.
8. They have no time or inclination to cook themselves.
9. They eat peas, beans, cabbage, or cauliflower.
10. They like pudding, pears, plums, grapefruit, melon.
11. The busy working mother buys ready-cooked food in Pizza Parlours.
12. She makes use of the Indian and Chinese takeaways.
13. These places have a delivery service
14. The way of life has altered dramatically.
15. *Healthy eating* is a phrase that has become a byword.
16. They are dieting to lose weight.

**VOC. 1. (1)**

1. Can you cook? Who makes breakfast for you?
2. Boil the water. Boil the macaroni.
3. Fry some potatoes. Cut the bread.
4. I like meat pies. My nephew likes chips.
5. Let's put a kettle on, shall we? Pour some water into the teapot.
6. Make tea for me, please. Where is the jam?
7. I'd like a cup of coffee. Where is the coffee pot?
8. The plates, glasses and saucers are on the table.
9. Take forks, spoons and knives out of the drawer.
10. We need a pan and a frying pan.
11. I don't like sausages. He doesn't like sandwiches and hamburgers.
12. The vegetables and fruit are in the fridge.
13. Let's make a salad with cucumbers and tomatoes. Put some oil into the salad
14. They like porridge. He eats buns with butter.
15. What yogurt (yoghurt) do you like? Have you bought bread and sour cream?
16. He eats neither biscuits nor cookies.
17. I like my granny's pancakes most of all.
18. Buy a bar of chocolate with nuts and some sweets.
19. Honey is good for health.

**VOC. 1. (2)**

1. I drink coffee without sugar.
2. He puts pepper and various spices in soup.
3. They sell beer, wine and champagne.
4. It's unhealthy to drink so much fizzy water.
5. The juice is tasty. The cheese is tasteless. The pie is delicious.
6. Bananas are sweet. Lemons are sour.
7. The mushrooms are bitter. The apples are juicy.
8. What do you have for lunch?
9. I ate soup for the first course and fried fish for the second course.
10. Will you have ice-cream for dessert?
11. I have already laid (set) the table. I am already laying (setting) the table.
12. Let's sit down to table. They are already at table.
13. Clear the table, please.
14. I had a bite (snack) in the canteen half an hour ago.
15. I am thirsty. He is hungry.
16. Shall we eat in or eat out?
17. I prefer meat to fish.
18. He is a heavy eater. She is a light eater.
19. He has a sweet tooth. .
20. She is on a diet. She keeps to a diet.
21. We have a self-service canteen
22. Did they go to a café or a restaurant?
23. What do you have on the menu today?

**VOC. 2.**

1. Have some more cake. I want another piece of cake.
2. No more, thanks. I'm quite full.
3. Pass me the salt, please. Here you are
4. Here is the pepper. Here it is. Here are the spoons. Here they are.
5. It smells nice. It makes my mouth water.
6. The soup lacks salt.
7. What do you say to a glass of wine? You are sure to like it. – It is out of the question.
8. Have a nice meal! / Bon appétit!



### **VOС. 3. Пословицы**

1. An early bird catches the worm.
2. As you make your bed, so you must lie on it.
3. Old habits die hard.
4. Time flies.
5. Time flies when you are having fun.
6. Time and tide wait for no man.
7. Time is a great healer.
8. Time is money.
9. An apple a day keeps the doctor away.
10. It's no use crying over spilt milk.
11. Man doesn't live by bread alone.
12. One man's meat is another man's poison.
13. You can't make an omelette without breaking eggs.
14. Tastes differ.

### **ПРИМЕЧАНИЕ «свободный»**

1. Feel free to ask questions.
2. You are free to decide what to do.
3. Soft drinks are free but you'll have to pay for the beer.
4. Tomorrow they'll leave the prison and become free people.
5. Are you free next weekend?
6. How did you spend your free time?
7. The telephone is free, you may use it.
8. We have a spare key to this door.
9. What do you do in your spare time?
10. I asked for an extra day to finish the work.
11. Only a few apartments were still vacant.
13. Is this seat vacant?

### **ПРИМЕЧАНИЕ «еще»**

1. He is still sleeping.
2. He still isn't at home.
3. He is too young yet to get married.
4. They haven't come yet. / They haven't come so far
5. What else have you seen there?
6. Ask somebody else.
7. What other English books have you read?
8. May I take another piece of cake?
9. Give me some more apples.
10. Take three more spoons.
11. There are still more.
12. He ate more and more.
13. She became even more beautiful.
14. Read it once more. Read it (once) again
15. Take as much juice and as many apples again.
16. He called her again and again.
17. It's only 10 o'clock.
18. I only saw him yesterday.
19. We met as early as 1995.
20. What now? What else?
21. What next! Indeed!
22. I should think so!!
23. And how!!
24. Are you crying? A big boy like you!!

## TOPIC 4. STUDY

### TEXT

1. Why do people learn foreign languages?
2. They do it for communication or business.
3. They want to read foreign books in the original or to improve their professional skills.
4. It develops personality, broadens the outlook and perfects the knowledge of your own mother tongue.
5. It takes a lot of time and effort.
6. It involves hard work and a lot of memorization.
7. It can be a lot of fun.
8. Pronunciation is a weak point of all beginners.
9. Sometimes phonetics comes easy, but students have problems with spelling or grammar.
10. It can help you to get rid of their mistakes in the shortest possible time.
11. At first beginners may feel embarrassed or tongue-tied.
12. Some are both capable and diligent.
13. They hang on the teacher's every word take notes of everything that may become useful.
14. They sit up late to prepare for their classes.
15. They never stay away from classes without a good excuse.
16. They try not to lag behind the group.
17. They are too lazy and slap-dash to prepare properly.
18. They miss lectures and work by fits and starts.
19. No pains, no gains.
20. to make progress in English, master the language and become a true professional.

### VOC. 1 (1)

1. I've known Jack for fourteen years.
2. She knows how to use a computer.
3. I use my dictionary to find out the correct pronunciation.
4. During the visit we got to know something about the American way of life.
5. We learnt the news.
6. She learns English.
7. He learnt to drive last year.
8. He studies to be a lawyer.
9. I haven't studied these papers yet.
10. He goes to school.
11. He is at university.
12. What subjects do you take in the first year?
13. When did he leave / finish school?
14. When did he leave the school yesterday?
15. Is he a junior or a senior student? – He is a first-year student, he is a fresher.
16. He graduated from the university, got a diploma and now he is a postgraduate.
17. All students do term papers, and graduates do graduation theses.

### VOC. 1 (2)

1. Last year he was a dean and now he is the principal of this university.
2. The monitor went to the dean's office to get the group register.
3. Give me the list of students, I'll mark the attendance.
4. Take our record books from the deputy dean. Don't forget to bring a doctor's note.
5. According to the timetable we have a lecture on Psychology and a seminar on History.
6. Write the rough essay in your exercise-books.
7. Don't forget about your library card when you go to the library.
8. The academic year ends in the middle of June. The second term lasts four and a half months.
9. Do we take a History exam during this examination period?
10. Did you take a preliminary course before entering the university?
11. All students do research work.
12. The school holiday (holidays) started on Wednesday.
13. She is on holiday. They are away on holiday. They went to the Mediterranean for their holiday.
14. The students are on vacation now.

## **VOC. 2**

1. Did you take your (final) test in History (on Lesson 10, on articles)? Did you get the pass?
2. All the students took their exam yesterday.
3. All the students passed their exam in Phonetics yesterday.
4. He failed his exam in Psychology. He will re-sit it next week.
5. He failed to translate the text.
6. He had to repeat the year.
7. My memory failed me. His courage failed him.
8. He can't rely on his memory.
9. We have a tutorial on Wednesday.
10. Do you have a spare pen?
11. He fell ill and lagged behind the group. He took extra classes and caught up with the group.
12. You are at home in grammar. Could you help me with the tenses?
13. We did this exercise in class.
14. Stay after classes today, please.
15. He speaks English fluently. She lacks fluency.
16. He is good at English. He does well in English.
17. I understood this rule.
18. I realized that I was late.

## **VOC. 3**

1. Prepare for the dictation at home.
2. It's time to get ready for school.
3. He won't go out. He is reading for his exams.
4. Look through the text and translate it from English into Russian.
5. Look up the new words in the dictionary.
6. Repeat the words after me.
7. He repeated his question.
8. He's revising before the exam.
9. Review the words, we are going to have a dictation.
10. Brush up on your dialogues and reproduce them.
11. He went over the rule to understand it better.
12. At the lesson we practised the pronunciation of the words.
13. Let's work at /on the spelling.
14. She reads English books in translation.
15. Do this exercise in writing / in written form. Do this homework orally.
16. When the teacher marks the papers he doesn't correct the mistakes but underlines them.
17. He got an excellent / a good, satisfactory, bad mark for the essay.
18. He got a four / "four" in Psychology.
19. He seldom makes bad (serious) mistakes. He often makes careless mistakes.
20. It's not a mistake, it's a slip of the tongue / a slip of the pen.

## **VOC. 4**

1. Live and learn.
2. It's never too late to learn.
3. Little knowledge is a dangerous thing.
4. To know everything is to know nothing.
5. Soon learnt, soon forgotten.
6. Practice makes perfect.
7. Never put off till tomorrow what you can do today.
8. Lost time cannot be found again.
9. Beggars can't be choosers.
10. You can take the horse to the water, but you cannot make him drink.
11. All work and no play makes Jack a dull boy.

**VOC. 5 (1)**

1. Let's get down to business (work). OK, why don't we get started?
2. How is the homework? Any problems?
3. Let's take a look at it together and see if we can figure it out.
4. What do you have for number 1?
5. Does everyone agree?
6. Don't all answer at once, one at a time, please.
7. Answer in turn, will you? That'll do.
8. OK, let's move on now.
9. Let's put this away.
10. Let's work on this reading now.
11. What's the English for *декан*? What's the Russian for *dean*?
12. Can I say (put) it like this?
13. How do you spell this word?
14. Will you say it again, please?
15. Shall I read (begin / answer the questions)?

**VOC. 5 (2)**

1. Put up / put down your hands.
2. Follow in your books. Look at your books.
3. Split /divide into pairs.
4. Act out the dialogue. Act / read the part of Mike.
5. Change your parts. Put some feeling into it.
6. Keep close to the text.
7. Reproduce the text. Retell the text. Recite the poem.
8. Ask questions to the sentence.
9. Ask questions on /about the text, passage, paragraph.
10. Come to the front. Come to the blackboard.
11. Step (move) to one side
12. Clean the blackboard. Rub off (out) this word from the blackboard.
13. I'll give you out some worksheets now.
14. Write down the date, please. Leave a margin on the left-hand side.
15. Number your sentences, please.
16. Your time is up.
17. Don't forget to put your names on your papers and give them to me
18. Hand in your tests, please. Collect the papers.

**VOC. 5 (3)**

1. Is that clear? Is everybody ready? Has everyone finished?
2. Are you through with it?
3. Let's settle down now. Let's quiet down now. Quiet!
4. Don't cheat. Don't tell him the answer. Don't help him.
5. Do it by yourself (on your own). Don't go so fast. Take your time.
6. Listen carefully. Speak up.
7. Mind your pronunciation, please.
8. That's a good point. That's a good way to answer the question.
9. Nice try, but I think there's a better answer.
10. I know it's hard work but you are making progress.
11. I'll help you but it's your responsibility.
12. You've got to keep on trying.
13. How long is it before the bell? The bell has gone.
14. Just a minute! Hold on!
15. Let's call it quits for today. Let's call it a day.

## TOPIC 5. SHOPPING

### TEXT

1. Ladies and gentlemen, we are proud to present this year's winter collection.
2. First on the catwalk is Steve, wearing a classic-cut, two-piece black woollen suit.
3. The red and white spotted braces and the lively coloured tie brighten up the suit.
4. Helen is wearing a pair of blue jeans and a black polo-neck jumper.
5. She's thrown a jumper over her shoulders and added a hat and a belt with a silver buckle to the outfit.
6. She has also tied a scarf round her waist to complete the look.
7. Chris is wearing a black leather jacket, a checked shirt and black trainers.
8. A smart and trendy look to brighten up dark winter days.
9. Kate is dressed with classic elegance.
10. The skirt is short and is worn with a matching long-sleeved jacket.
11. She is wearing high-heeled, silver, sling-back shoes which perfectly complement this beautiful outfit.

### VOC. 1 (1)

1. This department store closes at seven o'clock.
2. Have you been to a new shopping centre?
3. Let's have a bite in this café. – I would prefer to go to some coffee shop.
4. He has gone to a chemist's / pharmacy to get some aspirin.
5. Do you buy fruit in a food shop or in a market?
6. Buy a pen on a newsstand or in a stationery shop.
7. I like to do the shopping in this supermarket.
8. She can't afford to buy clothes in this boutique.
9. Where shall I put all this shopping?
10. A size 44 dress should fit.
11. We can't put this cupboard in here, it won't fit.
12. Casual clothes really don't suit him.
13. This new haircut suits you / is becoming to you.
14. Let's meet tomorrow. Will seven o'clock suit you?
15. These gloves match / go with your handbag. These gloves and your handbag go together.

### VOC. 1 (2)

1. What did he have on yesterday? – He was dressed in jeans and a sweater.
2. It takes her half an hour to dress / get dressed.
3. He took off a suit and put on a T-shirt and shorts.
4. She changed in the fitting room. She bought this suit at a discount.
5. He is always well-dressed. He has good taste in clothes.
6. He paid for everything at the cash desk, took his change and left the shop.
7. Did she pay in cash or by credit card?
8. They bought this car on credit at a quite reasonable price.
9. Could you lend me some small change? I'll pay you back tomorrow.
10. She spends a lot of money on fashionable clothes.
11. We've run out of milk. Let's go shopping.
12. I don't like to stand in a queue for something.
13. It's not good to jump the queue.
14. How much do you weigh? Are you satisfied with your weight?
15. These jeans are out of fashion. – And what is in fashion now?
16. These shoes are in great demand. There's a good selection of them in this shop.
17. Did you see a fashion show on TV yesterday?

### VOC. 2

1. They sell ladies' wear and men's clothes
2. There is underwear, bathing suits, tights, stockings and socks in this department.
3. His casual (everyday) clothes are loose-fitting corduroy trousers and jumpers.
4. She prefers close-fitting clothes.
5. I don't like sheepskin coats and long fur coats.
6. She bought a short fur coat and a quilted jacket.

7. Jane was wearing a blouse, a waistcoat and a skirt.
8. Everyone was dressed in costumes at the fancy dress ball.
9. This trouser suit isn't becoming to her.
10. Do you sleep in pyjamas or a nightdress?
11. This cardigan makes her look older, doesn't it?
12. He was dressed in a tracksuit and slippers, she had a dressing gown and an apron on.
13. These sandals will go well with your sundress.
14. He wears dungarees at work.

### VOC. 3

1. She doesn't wear fur hats, she likes knitted hats and berets.
2. Kerchiefs and shawls don't suit her.
3. In winter he prefers mittens to gloves.
4. Don't forget to take your wallet and handkerchief.
5. They sell men's and women's footwear here.
6. She seldom wears high-heeled shoes with a tapered toe.
7. Usually she wears low-heeled shoes.
8. She likes court shoes with a rounded toe.
9. He wants shoes with a square toe.
10. Put on rubber boots, it's dirty outside.
11. The umbrella is in the handbag, the lipstick and perfume are in the vanity case.
12. Her friends presented her with a silver chain and earrings in the shape of a heart.
13. He took a shopping bag and a purse and left the house.
14. There is cosmetics and jewellery here.
15. She can't afford (to buy) gold (golden) rings with precious stones.

### VOC. 4

1. This beige striped silk blouse is nice, but I don't like the collar and the buttons.
2. She was dressed in a navy woollen coat with big pockets and a hood.
3. The lilac polka-dot dress is made of cotton.
4. He should put on a bow-tie with this suit.
5. The flowered skirt was trimmed with purple ribbons.
6. She liked a denim jacket and suede gloves.
7. Is this violet dress with a low cut made of velvet?
8. She won't like this cream blouse, she doesn't like pastel shades.
9. A blue colour doesn't suit her. Blue doesn't suit her. The blue (colour) of this blouse is awful.
10. What size shoes do you wear? – I wear size 36 shoes. – You'd better try them on.
11. This is a size 46 pullover. What make is it? Does it wash well?
12. How much is it? What does it cost? What's the price of it?
13. What is it made of? Does it wear well?

### TO SAY, TO TELL, TO SPEAK, TO TALK

1. I said yes. Don't say no.
2. Don't talk business (shop) at table.
3. What did you say? Say it again. Speak up.
4. Say good-bye to Aunt Emily. – It goes without saying.
5. What does the letter say? What does the book tell about?
6. They say, he didn't say a word.
7. It's easy and pleasant to tell the truth.
8. Everybody says, he speaks three languages.
9. Let's talk it over now. Don't tell me a lie.
10. Tell me the time, please. Tell him a tale.
11. I want to have a word with you.
12. He likes to tell jokes.
13. Strictly speaking, it was a mistake.
14. Say good night to everybody and go to bed.
15. Stop talking. Frankly speaking, you are talking nonsense.

16. He said hello to the children. He told us the news.
17. They didn't talk politics, they talked fashion.

### ПРЕДЛАГАТЬ

1. He offered me a cup of coffee.
2. He offered his help to me.
3. He offered us to buy tickets to a movie.
4. He suggested a walk to me.
5. He suggested their helping me.
6. He suggested buying tickets.
7. He suggested to us (that) she should buy the tickets.
8. He suggested she buy the tickets. He suggested she bought tickets.
9. He proposed to her, but she refused to marry him.
10. He proposed a toast.

### REPORTING VERBS

- |                                  |                             |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. to say (to smb), to tell smb. | 18. to inform smb.          |
| 2. to add that                   | 19. to insist               |
| 3. to admit                      | 20. to want to know         |
| 4. to agree                      | 21. to learn                |
| 5. to answer / reply that        | 22. to mean                 |
| 6. to assure smb                 | 23. to notice / remark that |
| 7. to complain (to smb)          | 24. to promise              |
| 8. to boast (to smb)             | 25. to remind smb.          |
| 9. to confess (to smb)           | 26. to suggest (to smb.)    |
| 10. to convince / persuade smb.  | 27. to suppose              |
| 11. to decide                    | 28. to suspect              |
| 12. to deny                      | 29. to think                |
| 13. to doubt                     | 30. to warn                 |
| 14. to exclaim                   | 31. to ask                  |
| 15. to explain (to smb)          | 32. to beg                  |
| 16. to try to find out           | 33. to advise               |
| 17. to hope                      | 34. to order / to command   |
|                                  | 35. to forbid               |

### TOPIC 6. TOWN

#### TEXT

1. Chelyabinsk is situated in one of the most picturesque parts of Russia – in the Urals.
2. The ancient Urals are famous for their unique beauty.
3. The history of the town goes back to the eighteenth century.
4. It was founded on the thirteenth of September.
5. In the nineteenth century it was a small provincial town.
6. It became a merchant town on the crossroads of the trade ways from Europe to Asia.
7. Modern Chelyabinsk has changed beyond recognition.
8. Its seven large districts house more than a million inhabitants.
9. The city's heavy industry creates scores of ecological problems.
10. The centre of the city is Revolution Square.
11. A few trolley-bus stops and you find yourself in Gagarin Park.
12. Not many cities can boast of a rich pine forest not far away from the centre.
13. At every turn you can find small cafes and shops here.
14. There are a lot of places for entertainment: modern cinemas, amusement centres.
15. The cultural life isn't at a standstill.
16. The original building of the Drama Theatre catches your eye.
17. Our concert hall is on the Miass embankment.
18. If you are interested in art you can visit various exhibitions.
19. Modern high-rise houses are built every year.
20. The city is growing daily.
21. Our city is comparatively young and open to further progress.

### **VOC 1**

1. The tourists arrived in Paris on Monday. They arrived at the station.
2. He left Moscow yesterday. He left for Paris. He left Moscow for Paris.
3. A tour of the city will give you a good idea of its beauty.
4. If you want to get an idea of the capital, go sightseeing with us.
5. We were surprised at the size of the building and impressed by its architecture.
6. London impressed us greatly. / London made a great impression on us.
7. There are a lot of sights / places of interest in Moscow.
8. I travel on business and for pleasure.
9. He will make a business trip soon.
10. The guide suggested to us going on an excursion.
11. They live on the outskirts of the city.
12. The monument to Prokofiev is near the local history museum.
13. Go through the arch and you will see the entrance to/ of the building.
14. They used to put up at this hotel.
15. Where is the exit from the airport?

### **VOC 2 (1)**

1. Will you go by bus or by trolleybus?
2. They were going to the railway station when they saw this accident.
3. He got on a tram and got off at the next stop but two.
4. He got on a minibus and went as far as Revolution Square.
5. He got into the taxi and asked to put him down at the park.
6. He got out of the car and went on foot.
7. We realized that we had missed our stop.
8. Take / get on bus eighteen.
9. He changed to tram seven.
10. I've changed my mind. I'll walk to the park.
11. How much is the fare?
12. The trolleybus is overcrowded, there are no vacant seats.
13. There are a lot of traffic jams in the rush hour.
14. There's heavy traffic in this street.
15. I am going to be late. We've been stuck in a traffic jam.
16. We should observe traffic rules.

### **VOC 2 (2)**

1. The traffic lights are at the next corner.
2. We will go, when the light changes (from red) to green.
3. Soon he will have a driving licence and he will be able to drive.
4. Will you give me a lift or shall I take a taxi?
5. There is a parking place near the supermarket.
6. You can't park here.
7. He was fined \$50 for speeding.
8. Can you ride a bike?
9. Did they go on a bike or a motorbike?
10. What fog! I'm afraid, we'll have an accident.
11. It was an unforgettable event in his life.
12. The trip passed without incident.
13. I met her by accident.
14. It was an accident.
15. In that case I will talk to him myself.
16. I'm saving this bottle of wine for a special occasion.

### **VOC 3**

1. Do you live in a busy or a quiet street?
2. Cross (go across) the bridge, turn (to the) left and go as far as the crossroads.
3. Let's walk along the boulevard on the embankment.



4. There are no bicycle paths in our city.
5. They took the first turning on the right and saw a metro / underground station.
6. Do you see a pedestrian crossing anywhere?
7. They were walking along the park lanes and came across (ran into) an old acquaintance.
8. He said he lived in the neighbourhood (nearby).
9. He slipped on the pavement on his way home.
10. I met him on my way to the university. He saw me and turned away.
11. He turned round and saw me.
12. He found himself in a blind alley and turned back.
13. We realized we were going in the wrong direction and decided to ask a passer-by the way.
14. We are lost (have got lost/ have lost our way). Let's go in the opposite direction.
15. We are going in the direction of the river and we will reach it soon.
16. Don't stand in my way. Move out of my way.
17. Turn into Kirov Street. The nearest hairdresser's is round the corner.
18. Let's meet near the shop on /at the corner. Don't lose your way.
19. Go up / down this street as far as the subway. The theatre is in the square.
20. We got to the railway station in time.

#### **VOC 4**

1. I'm a stranger here.
2. How can I get to the station?
3. Could you tell me the way to the museum?
4. Am I going the right way to the bus stop? / Am I right for the bus stop?
5. Which is the shortest way to the theatre?
6. Go (walk) straight on as far as the square.
7. Walk down one block.
8. Where do I get off? Where am I to get off for the railway station?
9. This bus will take you straight / right to the theatre.
10. It'll take you five minutes to get there.
11. It's not a long way from here. You can't miss it.
12. It's five minutes' walk from here. / It's a five-minute walk from here.

#### **TOPIC 7. WEATHER**

##### **DIALOGUE**

1. There's hardly a cloud in the sky in fact. It must be 25 degrees in the shade.
2. It's very close today. Not a leaf is stirring. There's hardly a breath of air.
3. I fear a thunderstorm is coming.
4. The sky is overcast and the sun is going in.
5. It looks like rain. We should take some shelter. It never rains but it pours!
6. What a tremendous clap of thunder! And what a flash of lightning!
7. Look! It's clearing up. The clouds are lifting.
8. The air is remarkably fresh. Look at this wonderful rainbow!
9. We are in for a spell of good weather again.
10. Now I know why Englishmen always grumble about the weather.
11. They do like to complain about their climate, but you shouldn't pay too much attention to it.
12. The devil isn't so black as he is painted.

##### **VOC 1**

1. It's an Indian summer soon. Have you heard the weather forecast?
2. What do the weathermen say? What's the weather like today?
3. How do you like the weather today?
4. What nasty (beastly) weather (we are having today)! Are you weather-sensitive?
5. What muddy (dirty) roads! What big pools!
6. The apple trees are in blossom (bloom). These apples turn ripe in August.
7. I hear the weather will keep dull.
8. Will the temperature be two degrees above or below zero at night?
9. Look! It's raining hard (heavily).

10. It often hails during the thunderstorm.
11. It's drizzling. He doesn't like rainy weather.
12. It looks like rain. The first raindrops have fallen on the dusty road.
13. We were caught in a pouring (heavy) rain. We got wet through (to the skin).
14. We often bathe in this lake.
15. There is a small waterfall on the river.
16. We should save something for a rainy day.
17. I'll come rain or shine.

### VOC 2

1. It was snowing hard (heavily); lightly.
2. The winter was snowy. The roads were covered with ice.
3. There was a good (heavy) fall of snow. Let's make a snowman and fight with snowballs.
4. There was a light fall of snow. The rivers and lakes are frozen over.
5. The snowfall lasted all night long.
6. What a beautiful snowflake! What snowdrifts! What big icicles!
7. They threw snowballs at passers-by.
8. Have you ever seen a yeti?
9. The first snowdrops appeared in the forest.
10. It often sleets in late autumn.
11. The snow is melting. It's slippery outside.
12. Let's go down the slide. Don't slip. The snow is turning to slush.
13. He seldom skis. He skied yesterday. We skated.
14. Look! He is skiing! Where are my skis?

### VOC 3

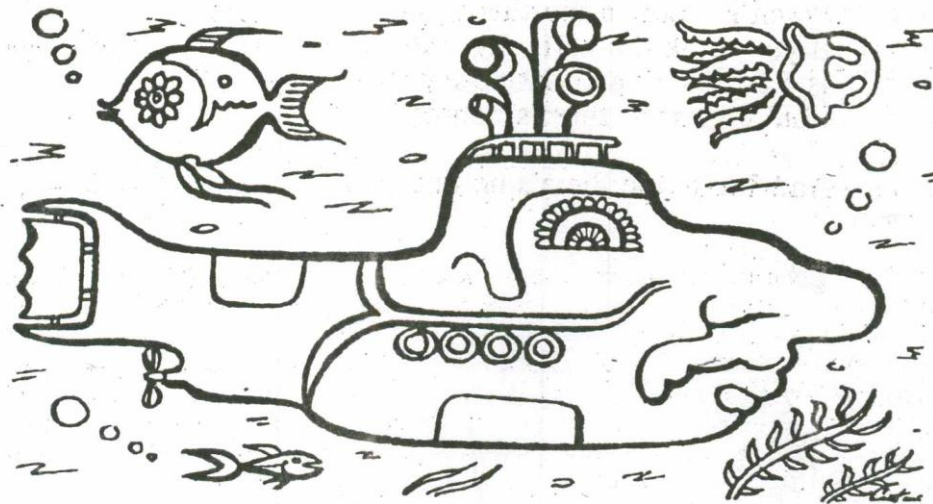
1. East / west / north / south wind is blowing today.
2. It's windy today. The wind is blustery and biting.
3. The trees are swaying in the wind.
4. A light wind stirred the curtains on the window.
5. It's still. It's stuffy (close). There's hardly a breath of air.
6. Let's air the room. Don't sit in a draught (draft).
7. Have you heard the gale warning?
8. The sun is shining brightly. The day will be sunny and warm.
9. We watched the sun going down.
10. He woke up at sunrise / at dawn with the first rays of light.
11. Look! The sun has hidden behind the clouds.
12. Yesterday the lake sparkled in the sun. It's foggy today. The lake is covered with fog.
13. It's good to stay at home on such a chilly day and enjoy the warmth from the fireplace.
14. What has happened to him? He looks bad. – The day is hot. He doesn't like heat.
15. Let's go to the seaside in summer. The town is situated on the seacoast (seashore).
16. Does their house stand on the bank of the river or on the shore of the lake?
17. This film is about earthquakes and other natural disasters.

### VOC 4 +

1. Everything is good in its season.
2. Every cloud has a silver lining.
3. After rain comes fair weather.
4. Make hay while the sun shines.
5. Any port in a storm.
6. As you sow you shall mow.
7. Still waters run deep.
8. Look how funny our shadows are!
9. Let's find a table in the shade.
10. It's thirty degrees in the shade today.
11. Mike has become Lucy's shadow.
12. They sat in the shade of the tree.
13. He's afraid of his own shadow.

## НЕПРАВИЛЬНЫЕ ГЛАГОЛЫ 2

- |                      |                       |
|----------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. written           | 26. drove             |
| 2. wrote             | 27. fought            |
| 3. born              | 28. woken             |
| 4. beat, hit, struck | 29. flew              |
| 5. became            | 30. forgotten         |
| 6. beginning         | 31. forgave           |
| 7. bite              | 32. froze             |
| 8. blew              | 33. getting           |
| 9. broken            | 34. grew              |
| 10. brought          | 35. hung / hanged     |
| 11. built            | 36. heard             |
| 12. buy              | 37. hidden            |
| 13. caught           | 38. known             |
| 14. choosing         | 39. knowing           |
| 15. chosen           | 40. lied              |
| 16. thought          | 41. lay, lying        |
| 17. digging          | 42. laid, put         |
| 18. winning          | 43. lose              |
| 19. cutting          | 44. paid              |
| 20. taught           | 45. rose              |
| 21. drank and ate    | 46. sitting           |
| 22. thrown           | 47. said, spoke, told |
| 23. fell             | 48. stolen            |
| 24. felt             | 49. coming            |
| 25. fed              | 50. shown             |



## SUPPLEMENT 2. SONGS

**It's better to have loved and lost  
than never to have loved at all. ('Nazareth')**

### LOVE STORY

Where do I begin  
To tell the story of how great a love can be  
The sweet love story that is older than the sea  
The simple truth about the love she brings to me  
Where do I start  
With her first hello  
She gave a meaning to this empty world of mine  
There'd never be another love, another time  
She came into my life and made the living fine  
Where do I start  
She fills my heart  
She fills my heart with very special things  
With angels' songs, with wild imaginings  
She fills my soul with so much love  
That anywhere I go I'm never lonely  
With her along, who could be lonely  
I reach for her hand - it's always there  
How long does it last  
Can love be measured by the hours in a day  
I have no answer now but this much I can say  
I know I'll need her till the stars all burn away  
And she'll be there

### ONLY YOU (The Platters)

Only you – can make this world seem right  
Only you – can make the darkness bright  
Only you and you alone  
Can thrill me like you do  
And fill my heart with love  
For only you  
O-only you  
Can make this change in me  
For it's true – you are my destiny  
When you hold my hand  
I understand  
The magic that you do  
You're my dream come true  
My one and only, you

### LOVE ME TENDER (Elvis Presley)

Love me tender, love me sweet  
Never let me go  
You have made my life complete  
And I love you so  
Love me tender, love me true  
All my dreams fulfil  
For my darling I love you  
And I always will  
Love me tender, love me long  
Take me to your heart  
For it's there that I belong  
And we'll never part  
Love me tender, love me dear  
Tell me you are mine  
I'll be yours through all the years  
Till the end of time

### CAN'T HELP FALLING IN LOVE (Elvis Presley)

Wise men say only fools rush in  
But I can't help falling in love with you  
Shall I stay, would it be a sin  
If I can't help falling in love with you  
Like a river flows surely to the sea  
Darling so it goes  
Some things are meant to be  
Take my hand, take my whole life too  
For I can't help falling in love with you

### WOMAN IN LOVE (Barbra Streisand)

Life is a moment in space  
When the dream is gone  
It's a lonelier place  
I kiss the morning good-bye  
But down inside, you know,  
We never know why  
The road is narrow and long  
When eyes meet eyes  
And the feeling is strong  
I turn away from the wall  
I stumble and fall  
But I give you it all  
*Chorus:* I'm a woman in love  
And I'd do anything  
To get you into my world  
And hold you within  
It's a right I defend  
Over and over again  
What do I do?  
With you eternally mine  
In love there is  
No measure of time  
We planned it all at the start  
That you and I  
Live in each other's hearts  
We may be oceans away  
You feel my love  
I hear what you say  
No truth is ever a lie  
I stumble and fall  
But I give you it all  
*Chorus:*  
I am a woman in love  
And I'm talking to you  
You know I know how you feel  
What a woman can do  
It's a right I defend over and over again

### DEMELZA'S SONG (OST Poldark)

I do pluck a fair rose for my love  
I do pluck a red rose blowing  
Love's in my heart, I'm trying so to prove  
What your heart's knowing  
I do pluck a finger on a thorn  
I do pluck a finger bleeding  
Red is my heart, wounded and forlorn  
And your heart needing  
I do hold a finger to my tongue  
I do hold a finger waiting  
My heart is sore, until it joins in song  
With your heart mating

**LADY IN RED (Chris de Burgh)**

I've never seen you looking so lovely  
 As you did tonight  
 I've never seen you shine so bright  
   I've never seen so many men ask you  
   If you wanted to dance  
   Looking for a little romance  
   Even half a chance

I have never seen a dress you're wearing  
 All the highlights in your hair  
 I catch your eye  
 I have been blind

*Chorus:* Lady in red

  Is dancing with me  
   Cheek to cheek  
   There's nobody here  
   It's just you and me  
   It's where I wanna be  
   And I hardly know  
   This beauty by my side  
   I never will forget  
   The way you look tonight

I've never seen you looking so gorgeous  
 As you did tonight  
 I've never seen you shine so bright  
 You were amazing  
   I've never seen so many people  
   Want to be there by your side  
   And when you turned to me and smiled  
   It took my breath away

I have never had such a feeling  
 Such a feeling of complete and utter love  
 As I do tonight / *Chorus*

**FIELDS OF GOLD (Sting)**

You'll remember me when the west wind moves  
 Upon the fields of barley  
 You'll forget the sun in his jealous sky  
 As we walk in fields of gold

  So she took her love  
   For to gaze awhile  
   Upon the fields of barley  
   In his arms she fell as her hair came down  
   Among the fields of gold

Will you stay with me will you be my love  
 Among the fields of barley  
 We'll forget the sun in his jealous sky  
 As we lie in fields of gold  
 See the west wind move like a lover so  
 Upon the fields of barley

Feel her body rise when you kiss her mouth  
 Among the fields of gold

  I never made promises lightly  
   And there have been some that I've broken  
   But I swear in the days still left  
   We'll walk in fields of gold (2)

Many years have passed since those summer days  
 Among the fields of barley  
 See the children run as the sun goes down  
 Among the fields of gold  
 You'll remember me when the west wind moves  
 Upon the fields of barley  
 You can tell the sun in his jealous sky  
 When we walked in fields of gold (3)

**MAD ABOUT YOU (Sting)**

A stone's throw from Jerusalem  
 I walked a lonely mile in the moonlight  
 And though a million stars were shining  
 My heart was lost on a distant planet  
 That whirls around the April moon  
 Whirling in an arc of sadness  
 I'm lost without you, I'm lost without you  
 Though all my kingdoms turn to sand  
 And fall into the sea  
 I'm mad about you, I'm mad about you  
   And from the dark secluded valleys  
   I heard the ancient songs of sadness  
   But every step I thought of you  
   Every footstep only you  
   And every star a grain of sand  
   The leavings of the dried up ocean  
   Tell me, how much longer? How much longer?

They say a city in the desert lies  
 The vanity of an ancient king  
 But the city lies in broken pieces  
 Where the wind howls and the vultures sing  
 These are the works of man  
 This is the sum of our ambition  
 It would make a prison of my life  
 If you became another's wife  
 With every prison blown to dust  
 My enemies walk free  
 I'm mad about you, I'm mad about you  
   And I have never in my life  
   Felt more alone than I do now  
   Although I claim dominions over all I see  
   It means nothing to me  
   There are no victories in all our histories  
   Without love

A stone's throw from Jerusalem  
 I walked a lonely mile in the moonlight  
 And though a million stars were shining  
 My heart was lost on a distant planet  
 That whirls around the April moon  
 Whirling in an arc of sadness  
 I'm lost without you, I'm lost without you  
 And though you hold the keys to ruin  
 Of everything I see  
 With every prison blown to dust  
 My enemies walk free  
 Though all my kingdoms turn to sand  
 And fall into the sea  
 I'm mad about you, I'm mad about you

**A THOUSAND YEARS (Sting)**

A thousand years, a thousand more  
 A thousand times a million doors to eternity  
 I may have lived a thousand lives, a thousand times  
 An endless turning stairway climbs to a tower of souls  
 If it takes another thousand years, a thousand wars,  
 The towers rise to numberless floors in space  
 I could shed another million tears, a million breaths,  
 A million names but only one truth to face  
   A million roads, a million fears  
   A million suns, ten million years of uncertainty  
   I could speak a million lies, a million songs,  
   A million rights, a million wrongs in this balance of time  
   But if there was a single truth, a single light

A single thought, a singular touch of grace  
 Then following this single point, this single flame,  
 This single haunted memory of your face  
     I still love you, I still want you  
     A thousand times the mysteries unfold themselves  
     Like galaxies in my head  
 I maybe numberless, I may be innocent  
 I may know many things, I may be ignorant  
 Or I could ride with kings and conquer many lands  
 Or win this world at cards and let it slip my hands  
 I could be cannon food, destroyed a thousand times  
 Reborn as fortune's child to judge another's crimes  
 Or wear this pilgrim's cloak, or be a common thief  
 I've kept this single faith, I have but one belief  
     I still love you, I still want you  
     A thousand times the mysteries unfold themselves  
     Like galaxies in my head  
     On and on the mysteries unwind themselves  
     Eternities still unsaid .... Till you love me

### **DESERT ROSE (Sting)**

I dream of rain  
 I dream of gardens in the desert sand  
 I wake in pain  
 I dream of love as time runs through my hand  
 I dream of fire  
 These dreams are tied to a horse that will never tire  
 And in the flames  
 Her shadows play in the shape of a man's desire  
 This desert rose  
 Each of her veils, a secret promise  
 This desert flower  
 No sweet perfume ever tortured me more than this  
     And as she turns  
     This way she moves in the logic of all my dreams  
     This fire burns  
     I realize that nothing's as it seems  
     I dream of rain  
     I dream of gardens in the desert sand  
     I wake in pain  
     I dream of love as time runs through my hand  
 I dream of rain  
 I lift my gaze to empty skies above  
 I close my eyes, this rare perfume  
 Is the sweet intoxication of her love  
     I dream of rain  
     I dream of gardens in the desert sand  
     I wake in pain  
     I dream of love as time runs through my hand  
     Sweet desert rose  
     Each of her veils, a secret promise  
     This desert flower  
     No sweet perfume ever tortured me more than this  
     Sweet desert rose  
     This memory of Eden haunts me  
     This desert flower, this rare perfume  
     Is the sweet intoxication of the fall

### **LOOKING FOR LOVE (David Coverdale)**

I'm tired of waiting, I'm closing my eyes  
 I'm asking myself why is it all  
 My horizons are so far away  
 I look in the mirror, don't like what I see  
 In my reflection a stranger is staring at me

Looking for love  
 The love of a woman, the needs of a man  
 I try so hard to believe  
 But I don't understand  
 The search goes on  
 But over the mountains across the sea  
 I know love is waiting  
 I hear it calling to me  
 Calling my name  
     I'm looking for love all around me  
     Looking for love to surround me  
     The love that I need  
     To rescue the state of my heart

Alone again it's always the same  
 I've just been marked in my time  
 Since the day I was born  
 No one's to blame  
 The candle is burning  
 Its way down low  
 I just need someone to show me the way  
     The way to go, which way to go  
     I'm looking for love all around me  
     Looking for love to surround me  
     The love that I need  
     To rescue the state of my heart  
 I'm looking for love  
 And finding only heartache  
 Looking for love to rely on  
 Looking for love, a shoulder to cry on  
 I'm looking for love  
 To rescue the state of my heart (2)

### **WHAT IS A YOUTH (Romeo and Juliet)**

What is a youth?  
 Impetuous fire.  
 What is a maid?  
 Ice and desire.  
 The world wags on.  
     A rose will bloom  
     It then will fade  
     So does a youth.  
     So do-o-o-oes the fairest maid.  
 Comes a time when one sweet smile  
 Has its season for a while...  
 Then love's in love with me.  
 Some they think only to marry,  
 Others will tease and tarry,  
 Mine is the very best parry.  
 Cupid he rules us all.  
 Caper the cape, but sing me the song,  
 Death will come soon to hush us along.  
 Sweeter than honey and bitter as gall.  
 Love is a pastime that never will pall.  
 Sweeter than honey and bitter as gall  
 Cupid he rules us all

A rose will bloom  
 It then will fade  
 So does a youth.  
 So do-o-o-oes the fairest maid.

**STARGAZER (Rainbow)**

High noon, oh I'd sell my soul for water  
 Nine years worth of breakin' my back  
 There's no sun in the shadow of the wizard  
 See how he glides, why he's lighter than air?

*Chorus:*

Oh I see his face!  
 Where is your star?  
 Is it far, is it far, is it far?  
 When do we leave?  
 I believe, yes, I believe  
 In the heat and the rain  
 With whips and chains  
 To see him fly so many die  
 We built a tower of stone  
 With our flesh and bone  
 Just to see him fly  
 But don't know why  
 Now where do we go?  
 Hot wind, moving fast across the desert  
 We feel that our time has arrived  
 The world spins, while we put his dream together  
 A tower of stone to take him straight to the sky

*/Chorus:*

All eyes see the figure of the wizard  
 As he climbs to the top of the world  
 No sound, as he falls instead of rising  
 Time standing still, then there's blood on the sand  
 Oh I see his face!  
 Where was your star?  
 Was it far, was it far?  
 When did we leave?  
 We believed, we believed, we believed  
 In heat and rain  
 With whips and chains  
 To see him fly  
 So many died  
 We built a tower of stone  
 With our flesh and bone  
 To see him fly  
 But why - in all the rain - with all the chains  
 Did so many die - just to see him fly  
 Look at my flesh and bone  
 Now look, look, look, look, look at this tower of stone  
 I see your rainbow rising - look there, on the horizon  
 And I'm coming home, I'm coming home,  
 I'm coming home  
 Time is standing still - you, give me back my will  
 Oh oh oh oh  
 Going home - I'm going home  
 My eyes are bleeding - and my heart is lead ahead  
 But it's not home - but it's not home - Ooooooh  
 Take me back - you, give me back my will  
 Oh oh oh oh

**GREENSLEEVES (Blackmore's Night)**

Alas, my love you do me wrong  
 To cast me off discourteously  
 And I have loved you for so long  
 Delighting in your company  
 Greensleeves was all my joy  
 Greensleeves was my delight  
 Greensleeves was my heart of gold  
 And who but (my) lady Greensleeves

**WISH YOU WERE HERE (Blackmore's Night)**

Wish you were here  
 Me, oh, my country men  
 Wish you were here, I wish you were here  
 Don't you know, the snow is getting colder,  
 And I miss you like hell,  
 And I'm feeling blue  
 I've got feelings for you,  
 Do you still feel the same?  
 From the first time I laid my eyes on you,  
 I felt the joy of living  
 I saw heaven in your eyes ... in your eyes

*Repeat the first verse*

I miss your laugh, I miss your smile,  
 I miss everything about you  
 Every second's like a minute  
 Every minute's like a day  
 When you're far away  
 The snow is getting colder, baby,  
 How I wish you were here  
 A battlefield of love and fear  
 How I wish you were here  
 I've got feelings for you,  
 From the first time I laid my eyes on you,  
 Wish you were here  
 Me, oh, my country men  
 Wish you were here  
 I wish you were here  
 Don't you know, the snow is getting colder,  
 And I miss you like hell, And I'm feeling blue  
 I wish you were here

**HANGING TREE (Blackmore's Night)**

There've been many tales  
 Tainted by truth twisted by time  
 Some choose to forget  
 Yet it still weaves webs in their minds  
 And it seems like she's been here forever  
 Her branches as black as the seas  
 She's been through it all  
 By the luck of the draw  
 She became the old hanging tree  
 She asked for nothing  
 Except maybe a little rain  
 They used her strength  
 To help them steal lives away  
 And she witnessed the sadness and sorrow  
 To this day she still doesn't know why  
 But her heart broke  
 When they came with the rope  
 To declare her the old hanging tree  
 Life stranger than fiction  
 Can make you want to cry  
 Roots could never stop her  
 From reaching for the sky  
 Those years have all past  
 Lucky for us lucky for her  
 Now, children play at her feet  
 And in her arms she cradles birds  
 And it seems she's been here forever  
 These days are the best that she's seen  
 Still somewhere in the back  
 Of her mind is the time  
 She was known as the old hanging tree

**YOU'RE IN THE ARMY NOW (Status Quo)**

A vacation in the foreign land  
 Uncle Sam does the best he can  
 You're in the army now  
 Oh-oo-oh you're in the army now  
 Now you remember what the draft man said  
 Nothing to do all day but stay in bed  
 You're in the army now  
 Oh-oo-oh you're in the army now  
 You'll be the hero of the neighbourhood  
 Nobody knows that you've left for good  
 You're in the army now  
 Oh-oo-oh you're in the army now  
 Smiling faces as you wait to land  
 But once you get there no one gives a damn  
 You're in the army now  
 Oh-oo-oh you're in the army now  
 Hand grenades flying over your head  
 Missiles flying over your head  
 If you wanna survive - get out of bed  
 You're in the army now  
 Oh-oo-oh you're in the army now  
 Shots ring out in the dead of night  
 The sergeant calls, 'Stand up and fight!'  
 You're in the army now  
 Oh-oo-oh you're in the army now (2)  
 You've got your orders better shoot on sight  
 Your finger's on the trigger, but it don't seem right  
 You're in the army now  
 Oh-oo-oh you're in the army now (2)  
 Night is falling and you just can't see  
 Is this illusion or reality  
 You're in the army now  
 Oh-oo-oh you're in the army now (4)

**SOLDIER OF FORTUNE (Deep Purple)**

I have often told you stories  
 About the way  
 I lived the life of a drifter  
 Waiting for the day  
 When I'd take your hand  
 And sing you songs  
 Then maybe you would say  
 Come lay with me love me  
 And I would surely stay

*Chorus:* But I feel I'm growing older  
 And the songs that I have sung  
 Echo in the distance  
 Like the sound  
 Of a windmill going round  
 I guess I'll always be  
 A soldier of fortune

Many times I've been a traveller  
 I looked for something new  
 In days of old  
 When nights were cold  
 I wandered without you  
 But those days I thought my eyes  
 Had seen you standing near  
 Though blindness is confusing  
 That shows that you're not here  
 / *Chorus*

**CHILD IN TIME (Deep Purple)**

Sweet child in time  
 You'll see the line  
 The line is drawn between  
 Good and bad  
 See the blind man  
 Shooting at the world  
 Bullets flying  
 Taking toll  
 If you've been bad  
 Oh, Lord, I bet you have  
 And you've not been hit  
 Oh, by flying lead  
 You'd better close your eyes  
 Bow your head  
 Wait for the ricochet

**THE UNFORGIVEN (J. Hetfield -Metallica)**

New blood joins this earth  
 And quickly he's subdued.  
 Through constant pain, disgrace,  
 The young boy learns their rules.  
 With time the child draws  
 In this whipping boy done wrong.  
 Deprived of all his thoughts,  
 The young man struggles on and on.  
 He knows, ooh, a vow unto his own  
 That never from this day  
 His will they'll take away.  
 What I've felt, what I've known  
 Never shined through in what I've shown.  
 Never be. Never see.  
 Won't see what might have been.  
 What I've felt, what I've known,  
 Never shined through in what I've shown.  
 Never free. Never me. So I dub thee unforgiven.  
 They dedicate their lives to running all of his  
 He tries to please them all, this bitter man he is  
 Throughout his life the same, he's battled constantly  
 This fight he cannot win.  
 A tired man they see no longer cares.  
 The old man then prepares to die regretfully  
 That old man here is me. / *Chorus:*

**MAMA SAID (James Hetfield -'Metallica')**

Mama, she has taught me well  
 Told me when I was young  
 'Son, your life's an open book  
 Don't close it 'fore it's done'  
 The brightest flame goes quickest'  
 That's what I heard her say  
 A son's heart's sowed to mother  
 But I must find my way  
 Let my heart go  
 Let your son grow  
 Mama, let my heart go or  
 Let this heart be still  
 Yeah, still  
 Rebel, mind your last name  
 Wild blood in my veins  
 They bring strings around my neck  
 The mark that still remains  
 Left home at an early age  
 All what I heard was wrong



I never asked forgiveness  
But what is said is done  
Let my heart go  
Let your son grow  
Mama, let my heart go or  
Let this heart be still  
Never I ask of you  
But never I gave  
But you gave me your emptiness  
That I'll take to my grave  
Never I ask of you  
But never I gave  
But you gave me your emptiness  
That I'll take to my grave  
So let this heart be still  
Mama, now I'm coming home  
I'm not all you wished of me  
A mother's love for her son  
Spoken, help me be  
I took your love for granted  
Not a thing you said to me  
I need your arms to welcome me  
But, a cold stone's all I see / *Chorus*

### **BEHIND BLUE EYES (Limp Bizkit)**

No one knows what it's like  
To be the bad man  
To be the sad man  
Behind blue eyes  
And no one knows  
What it's like to be hated  
To be faded to telling only lies  
But my dreams they aren't as empty  
As my conscience seems to be  
I have hours, only lonely  
My love is vengeance  
That's never free  
No one knows what it's like  
To feel these feelings  
Like I do and I blame you!  
No one bites back as hard  
On their anger  
None of my pain woe  
Can show through  
But my dreams they aren't as empty  
As my conscience seems to be  
I have hours, only lonely  
My love is vengeance  
That's never free  
No one knows what it's like  
To be mistreated, to be defeated  
Behind blue eyes  
No one knows how to say  
That they're sorry and don't worry  
I'm not telling lies  
But my dreams they aren't as empty  
As my conscience seems to be  
I have hours, only lonely  
My love is vengeance  
That's never free  
No one knows what it's like  
To be the bad man  
To be the sad man  
Behind blue eyes

### **UPRISING (Muse)**

The paranoia is in bloom, the PR  
The transmissions will resume  
They'll try to push drugs  
Keep us all dumbed down and hope that  
We will never see the truth around

Another promise, another scene, another  
A package not to keep us trapped in greed  
With all the green belts wrapped around our minds  
And endless red tape to keep the truth confined

They will not force us  
They will stop degrading us  
They will not control us  
We will be victorious

Interchanging mind-control, come let the  
Revolution take its toll if you could  
Flick the switch and open your third eye,  
you'd see that we should never be afraid to die  
Rise up and take the power back, it's time that  
The fat cats had a heart attack, you know that  
Their time is coming to an end, we have to  
Unify and watch our flag ascend

They will not force us  
They will stop degrading us  
They will not control us  
We will be victorious

### **UNDISCLOSED DESIRES (Muse)**

I know you suffered  
But I don't want you to hide  
It's cold and loveless  
I won't let you be denied  
Soothe me - I'll make you feel pure  
Trust me - You can be sure

*Chorus:*

I want to reconcile the violence in your heart  
I want to recognize your beauty is not just a mask  
I want to exorcise the demons from your past  
I want to satisfy the undisclosed desires in your heart  
You take your lovers  
That you're wicked and divine  
You may be a sinner  
But your innocence is mine  
Please me - Show me how it's done  
Tease me - You are the one

*Chorus:*

I want to reconcile the violence in your heart  
I want to recognize your beauty is not just a mask  
I want to exorcise the demons from your past  
I want to satisfy the undisclosed desires in your heart  
Please me - Show me how it's done  
Trust me - You are the one

*Chorus:*

I want to reconcile the violence in your heart  
I want to recognize your beauty is not just a mask  
I want to exorcise the demons from your past  
I want to satisfy the undisclosed desires in your heart

**NINTENDED (Muse)**

You could be my unintended choice  
to live my life extended  
You could be the one I'll always love  
You could be the one who listens  
to my deepest inquisitions  
You could be the one I'll always love  
I'll be there as soon as I can  
but I'm busy mending broken  
pieces of the life I had before  
First there was the one who challenged  
all my dreams and all my balance  
She could never be as good as you  
    You could be my unintended choice  
to live my life extended  
You should be the one I'll always love  
    I'll be there as soon as I can  
but I'm busy mending broken  
pieces of the life I had before (before you)

**YOU WON'T CHANGE ME (Ozzy Osbourne)**

I'm just a man and I am what I am, yeah  
Nobody will ever change my ways  
I don't need money and I don't need no lies, yeah  
I only need to live for today  
But I'd like to talk things over with you  
I want to hear the things you say, today  
    Although you won't change me anyway, no no way

I wish you'd come and see me, I'd like to hold you  
I want to set my mind all free  
You understand me woman, you give me time, yeah  
But I don't need no sympathy  
Still I wonder what it's like to be loved  
Instead of hiding in myself  
Nobody will change me anyway, no no way

Nobody's gonna change my world  
That's something too unreal  
Nobody will change the way I feel

So listen to me now, hear what I say  
Please give me time and maybe love  
If there's a God up there, well I hope he helps me  
I need him now to set me free  
'Cause it may be that it's over for me  
If you don't hear the things that I say, today  
    Nobody will change me anyway, no no way

Nobody's gonna change my world  
That's something too unreal  
Nobody will change the way I feel

**FREE LOVE (Depeche Mode)**

If you've been hiding from love (2)  
I can understand where you're coming from (2)  
If you'd suffered enough (2)  
I can understand what you're thinking of  
I can see the pain that you're frightened of  
And I'm only here to bring you free love  
Let's make it clear that this is free love  
No hidden catch no strings attached  
Just free love (2)

I've been running like you (2)  
Now you understand why I'm running scared (2)

And I'm only here to bring you free love  
Let's make it clear that this is free love  
No hidden catch no strings attached  
Just free love (2)

Hey girl you've got to take this moment  
Never let it slip away  
Let go off complicated feelings  
And there's no price to pay  
    We've been running from love (2)  
And we don't know what we're doing here  
No, we don't know what we're doing here  
We're only here sharing a free love  
    Let's make it clear that this is free love  
    No hidden catch no strings attached  
    Just free love

**DREAM ON (Depeche Mode)**

As your bony fingers close around me  
Long and spindly  
Death becomes me  
Heaven can you see what I see  
Hey you pale and sickly child  
You're death and living reconciled  
Been walking home a crooked mile  
Paying debt to karma  
You party for a living  
What you take won't kill you  
But careful what you're giving  
    Can you feel a little love  
    Can you feel a little love  
    Dream on dream on  
There's no time for hesitating  
Pain is ready, pain is waiting  
Primed to do it's educating  
Unwanted, uninvited kin  
It creeps beneath your crawling skin  
It lives without it lives within you  
Feel the fever coming  
You're shaking and twitching  
You can scratch all over  
But that won't stop you itching  
    Can you feel a little love  
    Can you feel a little love  
    Dream on dream on  
Blame it on your karmic curse  
Oh shame upon the universe  
It knows its lines  
It's well rehearsed  
It sucked you in, it dragged you down  
To where there is no hallowed ground  
Where holiness is never found  
Paying debt to karma  
You party for a living  
What you take won't kill you  
But careful what you're giving  
    Can you feel a little love  
    Can you feel a little love  
    Dream on dream on

**LOSING MY RELIGION (R.E.M.)**

Oh life, is bigger  
 It's bigger than you  
 And you are not me  
 The lengths that I will go to  
 The distance in your eyes  
 Oh no, I've said too much  
 I set it up

That's me in the corner  
 That's me in the spotlight  
 Losing my religion  
 Trying to keep up with you  
 And I don't know if I can do it  
 Oh no, I've said too much  
 I haven't said enough

I thought that I heard you laughing  
 I thought that I heard you sing  
 I think I thought I saw you try

Every whisper  
 Every waking hour  
 I'm choosing my confessions  
 Trying to keep an eye on you  
 Like a hurt, lost and blinded fool, fool  
 Oh no, I've said too much  
 I set it up

Consider this  
 Consider this, the hint of the century  
 Consider this, the slip  
 That brought me to my knees, failed  
 What if all these fantasies come  
 Flailing around  
 Now I've said too much

I thought that I heard you laughing  
 I thought that I heard you sing  
 I think I thought I saw you try

That was just a dream  
 That was just a dream

That's me in the corner  
 That's me in the spotlight  
 Losing my religion  
 Trying to keep up with you  
 And I don't know if I can do it  
 Oh no, I've said too much  
 I haven't said enough

I thought that I heard you laughing  
 I thought that I heard you sing  
 I think I thought I saw you try

That was just a dream  
 Try, cry, why try  
 That was just a dream  
 Just a dream  
 Just a dream, dream

**DRIVE (R.E.M. - Michael Stipe)**

Smack, crack, bushwhacked  
 Tie another one to your racks, baby  
 Hey kids, rock and roll  
 Nobody tells you where to go, baby

What if I ride, what if you walk?  
 What if you rock around the clock?  
 Tick-tock, tick-tock  
 What if you did, what if you walk?  
 What if you tried to get off, baby?

Hey, kids, where are you?  
 Nobody tells you what to do, baby  
 Hey kids, shake a leg  
 Maybe you're crazy in the head, baby

Maybe you did, maybe you walked  
 Maybe you rocked around the clock  
 Tick-tock, tick-tock  
 Maybe I ride, maybe you walk  
 Maybe I drive to get off, baby

Hey kids, shake a leg  
 Maybe you're crazy in the head, baby  
 Ollie, ollie, ollie ollie ollie  
 Ollie ollie in come free, baby

Hey, kids, where are you?  
 Nobody tells you what to do, baby

Smack, crack, shack-a-lack  
 Tie another one to your backs, baby  
 Hey kids, rock and roll  
 Nobody tells you where to go, baby

Maybe you did, maybe you walk  
 Maybe you rock around the clock  
 Tick-tock, tick-tock  
 Maybe I ride, maybe you walk  
 Maybe I drive to get off, baby

Hey kids, where are you?  
 Nobody tells you what to do, baby

Hey kids, rock and roll  
 Nobody tells you where to go, baby, baby, baby

**ANOTHER BRICK IN THE WALL (Pink Floyd)**

We don't need no education  
 We don't need no thought control  
 No dark sarcasm in the classroom  
 Teachers leave the kids alone  
     Hey, teacher leave the kids alone!  
     All in all it's just another brick in the wall  
     All in all you're just another brick in the wall  
 We don't need no education  
 We don't need no thought control  
 No dark sarcasm in the classroom  
 Teachers leave the kids alone  
     Hey, teacher, leave the kids alone!  
     All in all you're just another brick in the wall  
     All in all you're just another brick in the wall

**MONEY (Pink Floyd)**

Money, get away  
 Get a good job with more pay and you're OK  
 Money, it's a gas  
 Grab that cash with both hands and make a stash  
 New car, caviar, four star daydream  
 Think I'll buy me a football team  
 Money, get back  
 I'm all right, Jack, keep your hands off my stack  
 Money, it's a hit  
 Don't give me that do goody good bullshit  
 I'm on a hi-fidelity first class travelling set  
 I think I need a Lear jet  
 Money, it's a crime  
 Share it fairly but don't take a slice of my pie  
 Money so they say  
 Is the root of all evil today  
 But if you ask for a rise it's no surprise that they're giving none away ...

**SIXTEEN TONS (Merle Travis / John Cash)**

Some people say a man is made outta mud  
 A poor man's made outta muscle and blood  
 Muscle and blood, skin and bones  
 A mind that's weak and the back that's strong  
*Chorus:* You load sixteen tons, what do you get?  
 Another day's older and deeper in debt  
 St Peter, don't you call me 'cause I can't go  
 I owe my soul to the company store

I was born one morning when the sun didn't shine  
 I picked up my shovel and walked to the mine  
 I loaded sixteen tons of number nine coal  
 And the straw boss said, 'Well a-bless my soul'

*/ Chorus:*

If you see me coming better step aside  
 A lot of men didn't and a lot of men died  
 One fist of iron, the other of steel  
 If the right one don't get ya, then the left one will

*/ Chorus:*

I was born one morning when it was drizzling rain  
 A-fighting and trouble are my middle name  
 I was raised in a canebrake by an old mama lion  
 Can't no high-toned woman make me walk the line

*/ Chorus:***FRAGILE (Sting)**

If blood will flow when flesh and steel are one  
 Drying in the colour of the evening sun  
 Tomorrow's rain will wash the stains away  
 But something in our minds will always stay

Perhaps this final act was meant  
 To clinch a lifetime's argument  
 That nothing comes from violence  
 And nothing ever could  
 For all those born beneath an angry star  
 Lest we forget how fragile we are

On and on the rain will fall  
 Like tears from the star (2)  
 On and on the rain will say  
 How fragile we are (4)

**CRYING IN THE RAIN (A-HA)**

I'll never let you see  
 The way my broken heart is hurting me  
 I've got my pride and I know how to hide  
 All my sorrow and pain  
 I'll do my crying in the rain  
 If I wait for stormy skies  
 You won't know the rain from the tears in my eyes  
 You'll never know that I still love you so  
 Only heartaches remain  
 I'll do my crying in the rain

Raindrops falling from heaven  
 Could never take away my misery  
 Since we are not together  
 I pray for stormy weather  
 To hide these tears  
 I hope you'll never see

Some day my crying's done  
 I'm gonna wear a smile and walk in the sun  
 I may be a fool but till then, darling, you'll  
 Never see me complain –  
 I'll do my crying in the rain (3)

**HEAVY CLOUD NO RAIN (Sting)**

Turned on the weather man just after the news  
 I needed sweet rain to wash away my blues  
 He looked at the chart but he looked in vain  
 Heavy cloud but no rain  
 Back in time with Louis XVI  
 At the court of the people he was number one  
 He'd be the bluest blood they'd ever seen  
 When the king said hi to the guillotine  
 The royal astrologer was run out of breath  
 He thought that maybe the rain would postpone his death  
 He looked at the sky but he looked in vain  
 Heavy cloud but no rain  
 Well the land was cracking and the river was dry  
 All the crops were dying when they ought to be high  
 So to save his farm from the banker's draft  
 The farmer took out the book on some old witchcraft  
 He made a spell & a potion on a midsummer's night  
 He killed a brindled calf in the pale moonlight  
 He prayed to the sky but he prayed in vain  
 Heavy cloud but no rain

The sun won't shine till the clouds are gone  
 The clouds won't go till their work is done  
 And every morning you'll hear me pray  
 If only it would rain today  
 I asked my baby if there'd be some way  
 She said she'd save her love for a rainy day  
 I look at the sky but I look in vain  
 Heavy cloud but no rain

**SUMMER IN THE CITY (Joe Cocker)**

Hot town, summer in the city  
 Back of my neck getting dirt- 'n' -gritty  
 Bend down, isn't it a pity  
 Doesn't seem to be a shadow in the city  
 All around people looking half dead  
 Walking on the sidewalk

Hotter than a match-head  
 But at night it's a different world  
 Go out and find a girl  
 Come on, come on and dance all night  
 Just bide the heat, it will be all right  
 And babe, don't you know it's a pity  
 The days can't be like nights  
 In the summer in the city (2)  
 Cool town, evening in the city  
 Dressed so fine and looking so pretty  
 Cool cat, looking for a kitty  
 Gonna look in every corner of the city  
 Till I'm wheezing like a bus stop  
 Running up the stairs  
 Gonna meet you on the rooftop / *Chorus(2)*

### **SUMMERTIME**

**(Luis Armstrong & Ella Fitzgerald)**

Summertime and the living is easy,  
 Fish are jumping and the cotton is high.  
 Oh, your daddy is rich and your ma' is good lookin',  
 So hush, little baby, don't you cry.  
 One of these mornings you're gonna rise up singin',  
 Yes, you'll spread your wings  
 and you'll take to the sky.  
 But till that morning there's nothing can harm you,  
 With daddy and mammy, standing by.  
 Summertime and the living is easy,  
 Fish are jumping and the cotton is high.  
 Oh, your daddy is rich and your ma' is good lookin',  
 So hush, little baby, **baby**, don't you cry.  
 Oh, don't you cry.

### **NO WOMAN NO CRY (Bob Marley)**

No, woman, no cry; (4)  
 'Cause - 'cause - 'cause I remember  
 when a we used to sit  
 In a government yard in Trenchtown,  
 Oba - observing the hypocrites - yeah! -  
 Mingle with the good people we meet, yeah!  
 Good friends we have,  
 oh, good friends we have lost  
 Along the way, yeah!  
 In this great future, you can't forget your past;  
 So dry your tears, I seh. Yeah!  
*Chorus:* No, woman, no cry;  
           No, woman, no cry. Eh, yeah!  
           A little darlin', don't shed no tears:  
           No, woman, no cry. Eh!  
 Said - said - said I remember when we used to sit  
 In the government yard in Trenchtown, yeah!  
 And then Georgie would make the fire lights,  
 I see, logwood burnin' through the nights, yeah!  
 Then we would cook cornmeal porridge, say,  
 Of which I'll share with you, yeah!  
 My feet is my only carriage  
 And so I've got to push on through.  
 Oh, while I'm gone,  
 Everything's gonna be all right! (8)  
           No, woman, no cry;  
           No, woman, no cry. Eh, yeah!  
           A little darlin', don't shed no tears:  
           No, woman, no cry. Eh!

## **THE PHANTOM OF THE OPERA (Lloyd Webber)**

### **Christine:**

In sleep he sang to me , in dreams he came  
 That voice which calls to me, and speaks my name  
 And do I dream again?  
 For now I find  
 The phantom of the opera is there  
 Inside my mind

### **Phantom:**

Sing once again with me  
 Our strange duet  
 My power over you  
 Grows stronger yet  
 And though you turn from me to glance behind  
 The phantom of the opera is there  
 Inside your mind

### **Christine:**

Those who have seen your face  
 Draw back in fear  
 I am the mask you wear

### **Phantom:**

It's me they hear

### **Both:**

Your (my) spirit and my (your) voice  
 In one combined  
 The phantom of the opera is there  
 Inside my (your) mind

### **Chorus:**

Is that the phantom of the opera?  
 Beware the phantom of the opera!

### **Phantom:**

In all your fantasies you always knew  
 That man and mystery

### **Christine:**

Were both in you

### **Both:**

And in this labyrinth  
 Where night is blind  
 The phantom of the opera is here (there)

### **Christine:**

Inside my mind

### **Phantom:**

Sing, my angel of music!

### **Christine:**

He's there  
 The phantom of the opera

### **Phantom:**

Sing ...  
 Sing for me ...  
 Sing, my angel of music!  
 Sing for me ...

**JESUS CHRIST SUPERSTAR**  
(extracts from the rock opera)

**Poor Jerusalem**

*Jesus:*

Neither you, Simon, nor the fifty thousand  
Nor the Romans, nor the Jews  
Nor Judas, nor the Twelve, nor the Priests,  
nor the Scribes  
Nor doomed Jerusalem itself  
Understand what power is  
Understand what glory is  
Understand at all ... understand at all

If you knew all that I knew, my poor Jerusalem  
You'd see the truth, but you close your eyes,  
But you close your eyes.  
While you live your troubles are many,  
poor Jerusalem  
To conquer death you only have to die  
You only have to die.

**Pilate's Dream**

*Pilate:*

I dreamed I met a Galilean  
A most amazing man  
He had that look you very rarely find  
A haunting, hunted kind

I asked him to say what had happened  
How it all began  
I asked again. He never said a word  
As if he hadn't heard

And next the room was full of wild and angry men  
They seemed to hate this man,  
they fell on him and then  
They disappeared again.

Then I saw thousands of millions  
crying for this man  
And then I heard them mentioning my name  
And leaving me the blame.

**The Temple**

*Moneylenders and merchants:*

Roll on up – for the price is down  
Come on in – for the best in town  
Take your pick of the finest wine  
Lay your bets on this bird of mine  
Name your price – I've got everything  
Come and buy – it's all going fast  
Borrow cash on the finest terms  
Hurry now while the stocks still last

*Jesus:*

My temple should be a house of prayer  
But you've made it a den of thieves  
Get out! Get out!  
My time is almost through  
Little left to do  
After all I've tried for three years  
Seems like thirty ... seems like thirty

*Crowd:*

See my eyes – I can hardly see  
See me stand – I can hardly walk  
I believe you can make me whole  
See my tongue – I can hardly talk  
See my skin – I'm a mess of blood  
See my legs – I can hardly stand  
I believe you can make me well  
See my purse – I'm a poor, poor man  
Will you touch, will you mend me, Christ  
Won't you touch, will you heal me, Christ  
Will you kiss, you can cure me, Christ  
Won't you kiss, will you pay me, Christ

*Jesus:*

There's too many of you – don't push me  
There's too little of me – don't crowd me  
Heal yourselves!

**Everything Is Alright**

*Mary Magdalene:*

Try not to get worried, try not to turn on to  
Problems that upset you, oh, don't you know  
Everything's alright, yes, everything's fine

*Jesus:*

And I think I shall sleep well tonight  
Let the world turn without me tonight

*Mary Magdalene:*

Close your eyes, close your eyes  
And forget all about us tonight

**I Don't Know How To Love Him**

*Mary Magdalene:*

I don't know how to love him  
What to do how to move him  
I've been changed, yes, really changed  
In these past few days when I see myself  
I seem like someone else  
I don't know how to take this  
I don't see why he moves me  
He's a man, he's just a man  
And I've had so many men before  
In very many ways  
He's just one more  
Should I bring him down? Should I scream and shout?  
Should I speak of love? Let my feelings out?  
I'd never thought I'd come to this – what it's all about  
Don't you think it's rather funny  
I should be in this position  
I'm the one who's always been  
So calm, so cool, no lover's fool  
Running every show  
He scares me so  
I never thought I'd come to this – what it's all about  
Yet if he said he loved me  
I'd be lost, I'd be frightened  
I couldn't cope, just couldn't cope  
I'd turn my head, I'd back away  
I wouldn't want to know  
He scares me so  
I want him so  
I love him so

## **KURT COBAIN & NIRVANA (1967- 1994). Desperate spokesman for the Grunge generation.**

On Tuesday, 5 April 1994, Kurt Cobain blew his head off with a shotgun. The body was discovered on 8 April. In the autopsy, 1.52 mg of heroin were found in his blood, three times a fatal dose.

Through his music he had become an icon, a symbol for the young of their politics and aspirations. He made this clear in the suicide note found beside his body. " I haven't felt the excitement of listening to music along with really writing something for years now. I feel guilty beyond words about these things. The fact is I can't fool you. It's simply isn't fair to you or to me. The worst crime I could think of would be to put people off by faking it, by pretending I am having 100 per cent fun. Sometimes I feel as if I should have a punch-in time clock before I walk on stage. I still can't get out the frustration, the guilt and the empathy I have for everybody. There's good in all of us and I simply love people too much. So much that it makes me feel too f...ing sad. Too sad, a little sensitive, unappreciative, Pisces, Jesus, man." Having painted this paradox of the rock star who didn't want to be a rock star, at the same time he conformed to all rock star expectations. The note finished " So remember: it's better to burn out than to fade away". With this quotation from " Out of the Blue, Into the Black", Cobain placed himself directly in the tradition of other rock deaths. The song had been written in 1978 by Neil Young in despair following the death of Elvis Presley and the rise of punk. Ironically it was exactly by the fusion of punk with seventies rock that Cobain and *Nirvana* would transform rock music in the nineties.

There is little to Aberdeen but trailer parks and logging yards. The town gives way to endless hills of pine and spruce on one side, on the other at the mouth of the Wishkar river, to the Pacific. The highway stops here, a dead-end in a dead-end town. Last stop America, next stop China. It was here that Kurt Cobain was born on 20 February 1967. His father Donald had a good job as a mechanic at the local Chevron station while his mother Wendy kept home in the house the Cobains bought in Aberdeen 6 months after Kurt was born. The neighbourhood was not the best and the family was far from rich, but in Kurt's recollection the period stands out as one of happiness and contentment. His aunt Mary who played the guitar and sang in the bars around Aberdeen gave Kurt the *Beatles* and *Monkeys* records and a bass drum. He used to march around with it singing the *Beatles* songs. " Ever since I can remember, since I was a little kid I wanted to be John Lennon playing drums." He was an extremely happy child. He got up every day with such joy that there was another day to be had and he couldn't wait to find out what it was going to bring him. However, when Kurt was seven, his life was changed and for him an idyllic childhood ended. His parents' marriage fell apart and soon they divorced. The divorce changed Kurt completely. He became withdrawn and moody. He took against his mother's new boyfriend, " a huge mean wife-beater" and ran wild until his mother lost patience and sent him to live with his Dad. At first, the move worked well. However, in 1978 Donald remarried and Kurt felt betrayed. He began to cut school, refused to do chores at home and picked on his stepbrother. Don's response was to beat him. The one refuge for Kurt was in music. He listened to *Aerosmith*, *Led Zeppelin*, *Black Sabbath* and *Kiss*. He was inspired by the new movement from England called 'punk'. For his fourteenth birthday his uncle Chuck gave him a secondhand

electric guitar and Kurt wrote some of his own music. He left school in May 1985, six weeks before graduation.

In the winter of 1985 he slept under the bridge and at night painted the walls around Aberdeen with graffiti slogans. It was the time when he began to take drugs. To earn money Kurt formed a band to play in the bars. He played with Chris Novoselic and Aaron Burckhard and they began to make headway with Kurt's new songs like *Hair-spray Queen*, *Floyd the Barber or Downer*. They named themselves *Skid Row*, *Throat Oyster*, *Windowpane*, *Bliss* and then finally *Nirvana*.

*Nirvana's* sound was not born in a vacuum. The spirit of punk classics was fused with the purity of the seventies' rock, a style that was born in Seattle and christened *Grunge*. In January 1988 *Nirvana* made its first demo tape of ten songs and in June 1989 released their first album *Bleach*. They went on their first US tour having no road crew, no one to find them a place to eat or sleep. But to Kurt the whole thing was an adventure. He saw the United States for the first time. Later in the year they made a trip to Europe. They had to put up with the tight schedule, the poor food, the cramped bus and poor equipment. The last was due to their penchant for smashing their instruments on the stage which became a *Nirvana* ritual and a standard part of the show. In April 1990 Kurt began writing songs for the second album trying to find a blend of a heavy sound with melody, and a year later the band went to Los Angeles to record it. It was called *Nevermind* and began with 'Smells Like Teen Spirit' which Kurt saw as a song about his audience and the band in relation to it. When the album was finished, they all were pleased with the result. *Nevermind* opened at 144 on the Billboard chart and in two months reached number one, selling over 300,000 copies a week. Their lives were transformed, their audiences grew, but the change didn't agree with Kurt. His new fans got on his nerves.

At this time he began to see Courtney Love, the daughter of *Grateful Dead* roadie, who was a stripper, a singer, a movie actress and finally founded her own band, *Hole*. Kurt began to do heroin daily. He said he needed the drug to ease the pain he had in his stomach, a chronic condition that the doctors were unable to diagnose or treat. Kurt's drug use was putting a strain on the band. His moods were erratic, his behavior unreliable. Courtney was going to have a baby and they decided the time was right to get married. The ceremony took place in Hawaii on a cliff above a beach on 24 February 1992. In August their daughter Frances Bean was born.

By the time *Nirvana* began working on the next album, *Grunge* had become mainstream. The charts were dominated by the Seattle sound. In the process Grunge has lost its edge and its threat to the establishment. This dismayed Kurt. *In Utero* was released in September 1993. Kurt's lyrics was full of bitterness and rage, laying out his scorn for his fans, the record company and rock press. 'All Apologies' ends the album with Kurt sounding tired and defeated. While the record didn't create the hysterical reaction of *Nevermind*, *Nirvana* were now thoroughly established MTV darlings, the interviews, reviews and videos went ahead, their tour to promote the album sold out everywhere before they played a note. Cobain could not escape; he had become the kind of rock star he couldn't stand.

In July 1993 at the *New Music Seminar* in New York he played an acoustic set. The audience was dismayed, booing and shouting at him to play some rock music. He puzzled the audience again by appearing in the MTV

"Unplugged" series. After Christmas the band went on tour to Europe. All went well until the end of February when Kurt just seemed to come to a halt. After a concert on 1 March in Munich, he declared he had enough and wouldn't play again. On 3 March he made his first suicide attempt after his quarrel with Courtney. She came back the next morning to find him in a coma and he was saved. His second attempt on 5 April was fatal.

Being the product of a punk tradition had a high price. He wanted to be an outcast, an irritant, to be heard and understood by only a small community of believers that shared his punk ideas. Instead, *Nirvana* had become a bloated rock event and it meant going bankrupt to Cobain. He loathed himself and despised those around him. In his songs he had taunted his audience from the beginning; despite his scorn they kept listening. In his rock star death of drugs and suicide he taunted them again; there would be nothing more to listen to.

(From Andrew Grade's book *'They Died Too Young.'*)

### SMELLS LIKE TEEN SPIRIT

Load up on guns and bring your friends  
It's fun to loose and to pretend  
She's over bored and self assured  
Oh no, I know a dirty world

*Chorus:*

Hello, hello, hello, how low? (3)  
Hello, hello, hello  
With the lights out, it's less dangerous  
Here we are now, entertain us  
I feel stupid and contagious  
Here we are now, entertain us  
A mulatto, an albino,  
A mosquito, my libido  
Yeah, yeah

I'm worst at what I do best  
And for this gift I feel blessed  
Our little group has always been  
And always will until the end

*/ Chorus*

And I forget just what I taste  
Oh, yeah, I guess it makes me smile  
I found it hard, it was hard to find  
Oh, well, whatever, nevermind  
*Chorus ... Yay, a denial (9)*

### ABOUT A GIRL

I need an easy friend  
I do, with an ear to lend  
I do think you fit this shoe  
I do, but you have a clue  
I'll take advantage while  
You hang me out to dry  
But I can't see you every night free, I do  
I'm standing in your line  
I do, hope you have the time  
I do, pick the number two  
I do, keep a date with you  
I'll take advantage while  
You hang me out to dry  
But I can't see you every night free, I do  
I need an easy friend  
I do, with an ear to lend  
I do think you fit this shoe  
I do, but you have a clue  
I'll take advantage while  
You hang me out to dry

But I can't see you every night free, I do

### COME AS YOU ARE

Come as you are, as you were  
As I want you to be  
As a friend, as a friend  
As an old enemy  
Take your time, hurry up  
The choice is yours, don't be late  
Take a rest as a friend  
As an old memory ah  
Memory ah (3)  
Come doused in mud, soaked in bleach  
As I want you to be  
As a friend, as a friend as an old memory ah  
Memory ah (3)  
And I swear that I don't have a gun  
No, I don't have a gun (2)  
Memory ah (3)

### LITHIUM

I'm so happy 'cause today I found my friends  
They're in my head  
I'm so ugly, but that's ok, 'cause so are you  
I've broken our mirrors  
Sunday morning is every day for all I care  
And I'm not scared  
Light my candles in a daze  
'Cause I've found God  
Hey, hey, hey (6) Yeah  
I'm so lonely  
And that's ok, I shaved my head and I'm not sad  
And just maybe I'm to blame for all I've heard  
And I'm not sure  
I'm so excited, I can't wait to meet you there  
And I don't care  
I'm so horny, but that's ok my will is good  
Hey, hey, hey (6) Yeah  
*Chorus:* I like it - I'm not gonna crack  
I miss you - I'm not gonna crack  
I love you - I'm not gonna crack  
I killed you - I'm not gonna crack

### ALL APOLOGIES

What else should I be?  
All apologies  
What else should I say?  
Everyone is gay  
What else should I write?  
I don't have the right  
What else should I be?  
All apologies  
*Chorus:* In the sun  
In the sun, I feel as one  
In the sun, in the sun ...  
I'm married, buried  
I wish I was like you  
Easily amused  
Find my nest of salt  
Everything is my fault  
I'll take all the blame  
Aqua seafoam shame  
Sunburn with freezburn  
Choking on the ashes of her enemy  
*/ Chorus*  
All alone is all we all are (13)



## RED HOT CHILI PEPPERS

In their nearly two-decade-long career, the Red Hot Chili Peppers have demonstrated an instinct for survival that would do any rock band proud. In the face of countless problems with personnel, struggles with drugs, and even death, the band has managed to forge a style — in both music and performance — which a legion of groups try to imitate. Essentially a frat-style party band given to outrageous antics and an irresistible blend of punk, thrash, and funk, the Chilis have blazed a trail, which groups like the *Offspring* and *Sugar Ray* have followed. Moreover, to judge by the interest that accompanies the band's every move, the Chili Peppers as a musical force will continue for many years to come.

The Chili Peppers' beginnings can be traced to Fairfax High School in Los Angeles, where Michael Balzary (Flea) and Anthony Kiedis met at the age of 15. Both were California transplants: Flea was born in Melbourne, Australia, and lived in New York before moving to L.A. as a teen, while Kiedis left his mother's home in Michigan at the age of 11 to come to live with his father, who was a struggling actor. The son of jazz musician, Flea was an accomplished trumpet player who idolized Herb Alpert and Louis Armstrong. As for Kiedis's artistic aspirations, he was having sporadic luck playing small roles in films and on television.

Once Kiedis was asked to open up with something for a band at a local strip club. He and Flea came up with a song called "Out in LA", they played this song together with schoolmates Hillel Slovak (guitar) and Jack Irons (drums). The performance was meant as a joke but the audience loved it and the club manager wanted them to come back again. During their set girls were dancing round them topless. Naturally the girls got more attention than the band. When they came next time they had taken off all their clothes except for one sock ... In that way they could compete with the strippers.

In 1983 taking a name used by Louis Armstrong's jazz quintet in the 1920s, the group christened themselves the Red Hot Chili Peppers, and once again began making the rounds about the L.A. clubs. Soon they became the hottest group in L.A., and after some months they got signed by EMI.

Released in 1984, *The Red Hot Chili Peppers* and the 1985 release titled *Freaky Styley* failed to generate much interest on the part of record buyers. The band's live performances, however, were a great success. More threatening to the group than its poor record sales, however, was the fact that both Kiedis and Slovak had begun to take heroin. *The Uplift Mofo Party Plan*, released in 1987, was more commercially successful. Though the album took only No. 148 on the *Billboard* charts, the improved sales together with the Chilis' growing number of fans seemed a good base for a major breakthrough. During the tour of Europe Slovak and Kiedis supported one another's efforts to remain drug free. But after the tour Slovak returned to his old habit, with horrific consequences. One day police discovered Slovak dead from a lethal combination of cocaine and heroin.

Devastated, Kiedis decided the time had come to treat his own drug-taking habits in a serious manner, and he retreated first to Mexico, and then to a rehab center in California. Irons left the band entirely. (He subsequently became the drummer for *Pearl Jam*.) Eventually, however, Kiedis and Flea decided to carry on, and in 1989 the two set about finding replacements for Slovak and Irons. John Frusciante was a quick choice as guitarist, and, after

a series of auditions, Chad Smith was selected as a drummer.

Released in September 1989, *Mother's Milk* left no doubt that the revived Chili Peppers was a force to be reckoned with. On the strength of hits such as "Knock Me Down" and "Higher Ground" (a cover of the Stevie Wonder single), it became the band's first gold album. After signing to *Warner Brothers*, the group began work with ace producer Rick Rubin. Aided by heavy rotation on MTV, 1991's *Blood Sugar Sex Magik* broke the band in a big way, with songs like the propulsive "Give It Away" and the ballad "Under the Bridge" giving full range to the group's songwriting skills. In addition to reaching platinum status, the album, earned the Chilis their first Grammy Award.

Just as the Chili Peppers seemed at the height of their powers, however, personnel troubles once again threatened to shatter the band. On May 7, 1992, shortly after the news came that the Chilis would be headlining Lollapalooza rock festival that summer, Frusciante announced that he was quitting. With the addition of former *Jane's Addiction* guitarist Dave Navarro the Chili Peppers started work on a new album in late 1994. Released in August 1995, *One Hot Minute* went platinum in a mere two months, but the making of the album had been no easy process. Despite some splendid moments together — including a triumphant appearance at the Woodstock '94 festival and a No. 1 cover of the *Ohio Players'* "Love Rollercoaster" — the alliance between Navarro and the other Chili Peppers didn't work.

In April 1998 John Frusciante reunited with the Chili Peppers and a year later the group entered the studio to begin work on a new collection of songs. The resulting album, *Californication*, was released on June 7, 1999 to mostly favorable reviews. At September's 2000 MTV Video Music Awards they not only won two awards, but were also honored with the 2000 Video Vanguard Award for their body of work.

"Californication" melds a strong, simple melody to one of Anthony Kiedis' best (or at least most comprehensible) lyrics, creating a sad, dreamy Hollywoodland ode to sex, eternal youth, and the silver screen. Even better is the beautiful closing song, "Road Tripping." In perhaps the least affected lyric of the bunch, Kiedis celebrates the California coastline as only a native can. (*from one of the album reviews*)

"It does have some California references, yeah. I mean, we're from Hollywood, and Anthony writes the words and lyrics and stuff. The song "Californication" is his take on how he travels and sees how Hollywood and California affects the rest of the world, and how people look at the whole media thing and see how you're supposed to dress like this and act like this — and a lot of times it's pretty negative. So it's a very honest portrayal; there's a lot of good and bad things about California and Hollywood." (*from Chad Smith's interview*)



## PARALLEL UNIVERSE

Deep inside of a parallel universe  
It's getting harder and harder  
To tell what came first  
Under water where thoughts can breathe easily  
Far away you were made in a sea  
Just like me

Christ I'm a sidewinder I'm a  
California king  
I swear it's everywhere  
It's everything

Staring straight up into the sky  
Of my mind a solar system that fits  
In your eye microcosm  
You could die but you're never dead spider web  
Take a look at the stars in  
Your head fields of space kid

Christ I'm a sidewinder I'm a  
California king  
I swear it's everywhere  
It's everything (2)

Psychic changes are born in your heart entertain  
A nervous breakthrough that makes us the same  
Bless your heart girl  
Kill the pressure it's raining on  
Salty cheeks  
When you hear the beloved song  
I am with you

Christ I'm a sidewinder I'm a  
California king  
I swear it's everywhere  
It's everything (2)

## UNDER THE BRIDGE

Sometimes I feel  
Like I don't have a partner  
Sometimes I feel  
Like my only friend  
Is the city I live in  
The city of angels  
Lonely as I am  
Together we cry

I drive on her streets  
'Cause she's my companion  
I walk through her hills  
'Cause she knows who I am  
She sees my good deeds  
And she kisses me windy  
I never worry  
Now that is a lie

I don't ever wanna feel  
Like I did that day  
Take me to the place I love  
Take me all the way (2)

It's hard to believe  
That there's nobody out there  
It's hard to believe  
That I'm all alone  
At least I have her love  
The city she loves me  
Lonely as I am  
Together we cry

I don't ever wanna feel  
Like I did that day  
Take me to the place I love  
Take me all the way (2)

Under the bridge downtown  
s where I drew some blood  
Under the bridge downtown  
I could not get enough  
Under the bridge downtown  
Forgot about my love  
Under the bridge downtown  
I gave my life away

## OTHERSIDE

How long how long will I slide  
Separate my side I don't  
I don't believe it's bad  
Slitting my throat  
It's all I ever

I heard your voice through a photograph  
I thought it up it brought up the past  
Once you know you can never go back  
I've got to take it on the otherside

Centuries are what it meant to me  
A cemetery where I marry the sea  
Stranger things could never change my mind  
I've got to take it on the otherside  
Take it on the otherside  
Take it on  
Take it on

## Chorus

How long how long will I slide  
Separate my side I don't  
I don't believe it's bad  
Slitting my throat  
It's all I ever

Pour my life into a paper cup  
The ashtray's full and I'm spillin' my guts  
She wants to know am I still a slut  
I've got to take it on the otherside

Scarlet starlet and she's in my bed  
A candidate for my soul mate bled  
Push the trigger and pull the thread  
I've got to take it on the otherside  
Take it on the otherside  
Take it on  
Take it on

How long how long will I slide  
Separate my side I don't  
I don't believe it's bad  
Slitting my throat  
It's all I ever

Turn me on take me for a hard ride  
Burn me out leave me on the otherside  
I yell and tell it that  
It's not my friend  
I tear it down I tear it down  
And then it's born again

How long how long will I slide  
Separate my side I don't  
I don't believe it's bad  
Slitting my throat  
It's all I ever  
How long I don't believe it's bad  
Slitting my throat  
It's all I ever

### **CALIFORNICATION**

Psychic spies from China  
Try to steal your mind's elation  
Little girls from Sweden  
Dream of silver screen quotations  
And if you want these kinds of dreams  
It's Californication

It's the edge of the world  
And all of western civilization  
The sun may rise in the east  
At least it settles in a final location  
It's understood that Hollywood  
Sells Californication

Pay your surgeon very well  
To break the spell of aging  
Celebrity skin is this your chin  
Or is it war you're waging

*Chorus:* First born unicorn  
Hard core soft porn  
Dream of Californication  
Dream of Californication

Marry me girl be my fairy to the world  
Be my very own constellation  
A teenage bride with a baby inside  
Getting high on information  
And buy me a star on the boulevard  
It's Californication

Space may be the final frontier  
But it's made in a Hollywood basement  
Cobain can you hear the spheres  
Singing songs off station to station  
And Alderon's not far away  
It's Californication

Born and raised by those who praise  
Control of population  
Everybody's been there and  
I don't mean on vacation

*Chorus:* First born unicorn  
Hard core soft porn  
Dream of Californication  
Dream of Californication

Destruction leads to a very rough road  
But it also breeds creation  
And earthquakes are to a girl's guitar  
They are just another good vibration  
And tidal waves couldn't save the world  
From Californication

Pay your surgeon very well  
To break the spell of aging  
Sicker than the rest  
There is no test  
But this is what you're craving

*Chorus:* First born unicorn  
Hard core soft porn  
Dream of Californication  
Dream of Californication

### **ROAD TRIPPIN'**

Road trippin' with my two favorite allies  
Fully loaded we got snacks and supplies  
It's time to leave this town  
It's time to steal away  
Let's go get lost  
Anywhere in the USA  
Let's go get lost  
Let's go get lost  
Blue you sit so pretty  
West of the one  
Sparkles light with yellow icing  
Just a mirror for the sun  
Just a mirror for the sun  
Just a mirror for the sun  
These smiling eyes are just a mirror for

So much as come before those battles lost and won  
This life is shining more forever in the sun  
Now let us check our heads  
And let us check the surf  
Staying high and dry's  
More trouble than it's worth  
In the sun  
Just a mirror for the sun  
Just a mirror for the sun  
Just a mirror for the sun  
These smiling eyes are just a mirror for

In big surf we take some time to linger on  
We three hunky dories got our snakefinger on  
Now let us drink the stars  
It's time to steal away  
Let's go get lost  
Right here in the USA  
Let's go get lost  
Let's go get lost  
Blue you sit so pretty  
West of the one  
Sparkles light with yellow icing

Just a mirror for the sun  
Just a mirror for the sun  
Just a mirror for the sun  
These smiling eyes are just a mirror for  
These smiling eyes are just a mirror for  
Your smiling eyes are just a mirror for

## DANI CALIFORNIA

Gettin' born in the state of Mississippi  
Papa was a copper and mama was a hippie  
In Alabama she would swing a hammer  
Price you gotta pay when you break the panorama  
She never knew that there was anything more than poor  
What in the world does your company take me for?

Black bandana, sweet Louisiana

Robbin' on a bank in the state of Indiana

She's a runner, rebel and a stunner

On her merry way sayin baby whatcha gonna

Lookin' down the barrel of a hot metal forty five

Just another way to survive

California rest in peace

Simultaneous release

California show your teeth

She's my priestess, I'm your priest, yeah, yeah

She's a lover, baby and a fighter

Shoulda seen her coming when it got a little brighter

With a name like Dani California

Day was gonna come when I was gonna mourn ya

A little loaded she was stealin' another breath

I love my baby to death

California rest in peace

Simultaneous release

California show your teeth

She's my priestess, I'm your priest, yeah, yeah

Who knew the other side of you?

Who knew what others died to prove?

Too true to say good bye to you

Too true to say, say, say...

Push the fader gifted animator

One for the now and eleven for the later

Never made it up to Minnesota

North Dakota man was a gunnin' for the quota

Down in the badlands

she was savin' the best for last

It only hurts when I laugh

Gone too fast ...

California rest in peace

Simultaneous release

California show your teeth

She's my priestess, I'm your priest, yeah, yeah



John Frusciante + Anthony Kiedis+ Chad Smith + Michael Balzary (Flea)